<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Starter unit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations and symbols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Learning</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. I can talk about vocabulary learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I can describe my progress and aims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I can understand a learner’s dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I can talk about English punctuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>People</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I can talk about appearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I can talk about character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I can describe my feelings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. I can talk about relationships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I can talk about families</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. I can talk about weddings and funerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The world around us</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. I can describe the universe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. I can talk about rivers and the sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. I can describe the climate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. I can describe natural disasters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. I can describe animals and insects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily life</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. I can describe a range of food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. I can talk about diets and cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. I can talk about money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. I can talk about sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. I can talk about injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. I can talk about cars and driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. I can describe travel problems and accidents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. I can talk about clothes and fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Getting things done</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. I can describe a visit to the dentist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. I can describe hospital procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. I can explain household tasks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. I can describe housework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. I can talk to a hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Describing things</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. I can describe urban life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. I can describe parts of a building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. I can describe objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. I can describe the senses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. I can describe a painting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. I can describe actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Contents

## Social and political issues

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 107

## Media and entertainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 126

## Work and study

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 139

## Business

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 150

## Social English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 165

## Language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 188

## Styles of English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review** 200

- Vocabulary building tables 202
- Answer key 203
- Answer key to review units 223
- List of spotlight boxes 232
- Word list/Index 233
- Acknowledgements 254
Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

*Oxford Word Skills* is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears.

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. money, health issues, relationships
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. giving opinions, making arrangements to meet
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prefixes and suffixes, link words.

There is an emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, but also vocabulary from different types of written text, e.g. job advertisements, magazine articles, web pages, and warning signs. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items, more idiomatic language, and a wide range of collocations.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. *don't bother, I haven't a clue*, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. *a filling* at the dentist's.
We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration, a glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should also be aware that nouns may be countable in some senses and uncountable in others. They should refer to an appropriate learner’s dictionary for information on other meanings and structures and on countability. (See ‘How to learn new words’ in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of ‘spotlight’ boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5–10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals, glossaries, or tables and test themselves. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings ‘About you’ or ‘About your country’. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner’s answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.
A How to use a unit

Study the new words. They are in **bold** type.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the **word list** (page 233) to find out how to say the words.

**A glossary** explains the new words.

**A ‘spotlight’** tells you about important words.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the **answer key** (page 203).

**Use the vocabulary to write or speak about yourself in ‘ABOUT YOU’ or ‘ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY’**.

Use the **cover card** to test yourself.

There’s more practice in the **review** units and on the **CD-ROM**.
B How to learn new words

- Repeat the words and phrases two or three times to help you remember them.

- Write down new words in a notebook, with the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.

- Write down any other important information about a word or phrase, e.g. words that often go together (a serious relationship) or constructions with verbs (regret the fact that). Write your own example sentences.

- Use a pencil for the exercises. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.

- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. 'The world around us').

- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (page 202).

- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for more useful materials and more practice.

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The Oxford Wordpower Dictionary (Oxford University Press) is very good for intermediate learners.

---

Perfect Weekend Channel Five
Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now they have nothing in common, while Tom regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith, who didn't go to university, and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Dan, and John stops speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning.

Glossary
get to know sb meet
become friends
one another each other
get together (of two)
social reasons
"going wrong" used when there's a situation or relationship that's not going well
realise sth begin to know before
have nothing in common interests that are different
regret sth doing it or doing sth
Abbreviations and symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>usu</th>
<th>usually</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>countable noun (A countable noun can be used with a/an and can have a plural form.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ</td>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>uncountable noun (An uncountable noun cannot usually be used with a/an and usually has no plural form.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADV</td>
<td>adverb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPP</td>
<td>opposite (for example, modest is the opposite of arrogant)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYN</td>
<td>synonym (a word that means the same as another word; for example, drawback is a synonym of disadvantage)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>informal (If a word or phrase is informal, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FML</td>
<td>formal (If a word or phrase is formal, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know well, or in written English.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING</td>
<td>singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vowels

| i   | see       | /si/ |
| i   | happy     | /ˈhæpi/ |
| i   | sit       | /sɪt/ |
| e   | ten       | /ten/ |
| æ   | hat       | /hæt/ |
| o   | father    | /ˈfɑːðə(r)/ |
| o   | got       | /ɡɒt/ |
| ɑ   | saw       | /sɔː/ |
| o   | put       | /pʊt/ |
| u   | casual    | /ˈkæʒuəl/ |
| uː  | too       | /tuː/ |
| ʌ   | cup       | /kʌp/ |
| ə   | about     | /əˈbaʊt/ |
| ei  | say       | /siː/ |
| oʊ  | go        | /ɡoʊ/ |
| ai  | five      | /feɪv/ |
| ei  | now       | /naʊ/ |
| ɔː  | boy       | /bɔɪ/ |
| əː  | near      | /nɪə(r)/ |
| ɛər | hair      | /hɛə(r)/ |
| ɔʊ  | sure      | /ʃʊr/ |

Consonants

| p   | pen       | /pen/ |
| b   | bad       | /bæd/ |
| t   | tea       | /tiː/ |
| d   | did       | /did/ |
| k   | cat       | /kæt/ |
| g   | got       | /ɡɒt/ |
| tʃ | cheap     | /tʃeap/ |
| dʒ | jam       | /dʒæm/ |
| f   | fall      | /fɔːl/ |
| v   | verb      | /vɜːb/ |
| θ   | thin      | /θɪn/ |
| ð   | this      | /ðɪs/ |
| s   | so        | /soʊ/ |
| z   | zero      | /ˈzɛrəʊ/ |
| ʃ   | shoe      | /ʃuː/ |
| tʃ  | television | /ˈtelɪvɪʒn, ˈtelɪvɪʒn/ |
| h   | hat       | /hæt/ |
| m   | map       | /mæp/ |
| n   | no        | /noʊ/ |
| ŋ   | sing      | /sɪŋ/ |
| l   | leg       | /leg/ |
| r   | red       | /red/ |
| j   | yes       | /jɛs/ |
| w   | wet       | /wɛt/ |

STARTER 9
1 I can talk about vocabulary learning

A Reading 🎧

Tips for reading
When you’re reading in a foreign language, you should try to get the gist of the text. You will meet vocabulary you don’t recognize, but you can often go through the text again. If so, try this:

- Identify the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to guess the meaning from the context, and/or use a dictionary.
- Keep a record of the words in a notebook, and, if possible, make a note of any special information. For example, is the word formal or informal? Is it used in a particular kind of construction, e.g., a verb that is often followed by a preposition?
- Write a translation if you think it helps; sometimes it isn’t necessary.

Glossary

| foreign | from a country that is not your own (a person is a foreigner). |
| gist | the general meaning of something, but not all the details. |
| text | the written part of a book, newspaper, etc. |
| recognize sb/sth | know who sb is or what sth is because you’ve seen or heard them before. recognition n. |
| go through sth | read sth carefully from beginning to end. |
| identify sth | recognize sth and decide what it is. |
| guess sth | give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts. guess n. |
| context | the words before and after the new word or phrase that help you to understand the meaning. |
| keep a record of sth | write sth down to help you remember it. record sth v. |
| make a note of sth | write sth down quickly to help you remember it. |
| construction | the way words are used together in a sentence. construct sth v. |
| translation | a text that has been changed from one language into another. translate sth v. |

spotlight formal

We use formal language to appear serious or official, or sometimes when we don’t know people well, or informal. formality n., or informality.

1 Replace the words in italics with a single word that has the same meaning.

I looked at the pictures but didn’t understand the written part. ____________
1 I understood the general meaning of the text. ____________
2 We couldn’t recognize and decide what language they were speaking. ____________
3 The way you use words together to make a sentence in German is different. ____________
4 He is from another country. ____________
5 You can guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word. ____________
6 There was a text which I had to change from one language into another. ____________

2 Complete the dialogues.

Is ‘How do you do’ ____________? ~ Yes, we usually just say ____________.
1 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had to ____________.
2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the ____________ of it.
3 Did you ____________ everyone? ~ There were one or two people I didn’t know.
4 Were there many ____________? ~ No, all the people were from this country.
5 Did you understand the text? ~ Yes, but can we ____________ through it again?
6 Do you make a ____________ of new words? ~ Yes, I keep a ____________ in my notebook.
B Speaking and listening

- In a conversation, you can often ask someone to repeat words or phrases you don’t understand, and explain the meaning to you.
- Repeat new words to yourself, so you know how to pronounce them.
- Look for opportunities to practise them when you’re speaking. Don’t be afraid to experiment with new language, and don’t worry about making mistakes.
- It’s important to revise new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn’t a correct method of learning vocabulary. Do what works for you.

Glossary

- Repeat sth: say sth again. repetition N.
- Explain sth: make sth clear or easy to understand. explanation N.
- Pronounce sth: make the sound of a word or letter. pronunciation N.
- Opportunity: a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do. synonym: chance.
- Experiment with sth: try sth to see what result it has. synonym: chance.
- Make mistakes: not do mistakes.
- Revise sth: study sth again (you do revision).
- Method: a way of doing sth.
- Work: get or have the result you want.

3 What nouns are formed from these verbs?

1. Repeat
2. Pronounce
3. Explain
4. Revise
5. Chat

What are the meanings?

4 Circle the correct answer.

- If you explain something, you make it easy to say/stud y.
- If you revise something, you say it again/study it again.
- If something works, it is successful/difficult.
- If you experiment with something, you try something/find something.
- You can make a mistake.
- A method is an opportunity to do something/a way of doing something.
- A chat is a formal/informal conversation.

5 Complete the sentences.

- We had a conversation on the phone last night.
- We had a serious discussion in class today about politics.
- My brother’s got an opportunity to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
- I saw Joelle in town and we had a quick chat. She told me about the wedding.
- I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really worked well. You must try it.
- Do you think we’ll have a chance to go shopping when we’re in Milan?

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
I can describe my progress and aims

A Making progress

When I started learning English, I was very enthusiastic and motivated, but I found the pronunciation difficult and people couldn't always understand me. After a while, my pronunciation improved and I was able to express basic ideas quite effectively. It was obvious that I was getting better, and that was very encouraging. But at intermediate level, I made slower progress. There were so many new words and phrases, but also words that I could understand but couldn't use accurately. I think I was more aware of my mistakes, which was good — but also frustrating.

Glossary

enthusiastic = very interested in sth or excited by it. enthusiasm n.
motivated = If you are motivated, you really want to do sth. motivation n.
after a while = after a period of time.
improve = become better. syns get better, make progress, improvement n.
express sth = say or show what you think or feel.
effectively = in a way that gives you the result you want. effective adj.
obvious = easily seen and understood. syn clear.
encouraging = If sth is encouraging, it gives you hope and makes you want to continue. encourage v. encouragement n.
accurately = with no mistakes. accurate adj.
be aware of sth. = If you are aware of sth, you know about it.
frustrating = making you annoyed because you cannot do sth you want to do. frustration n.

1 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

- She did the work very _______ .
  1 He gave me a lot of _______.
  2 I think my English is _______.
  3 My mother speaks English very _______.
  4 It's _______ when you can't understand.
  5 He doesn't have much _______.
  6 I was very _______ when I started.

2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- She shows lots of interest and excitement. _______.
  1 Do you think your English is _______.
  2 I didn't worry about my mistakes after a _______.
  3 Where are you making the most _______.
  4 It's clear that he doesn't know the difference between lend and borrow. _______.
  5 She can speak French _______.
  6 I think she knows _______.
  7 I can say most of the things I need to _______.
  8 I make a lot of mistakes, which is _______.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
B Future goals

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goal</td>
<td>a thing you want to be able to do in the future. SYN aim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everyday</td>
<td>normal or usual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expand</td>
<td>become bigger or make sth bigger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a wide range</td>
<td>a large number of different things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complex</td>
<td>not simple; often difficult to understand. SYN complicated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fluent</td>
<td>able to speak a foreign language easily and well. fluently ADV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in detail</td>
<td>fully and including a lot of information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appropriate</td>
<td>right or suitable in a particular situation. ORR inappropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relevant to sth</td>
<td>useful for and connected to sth. ORR irrelevant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specialized</td>
<td>having or needing a lot of special knowledge.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight contain and include

We can often use contain or include with the same meaning.

The film contains/includes scenes of violence. Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.
The box contains magazines. (There are magazines inside the box.)
The price includes service. (Service is one part of the price.)

4 Replace the underlined words with a synonym.

1. The story is complex. ________________

   1. I speak Russian very well
   2. It's part of normal life
   3. It isn't connected to my work.
   4. The business got bigger
   5. It's not suitable here.
   6. My goal is to get to university.

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

1. Did you explain it fully? ~ No, it was ________________
   1. Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described it in
   2. It wasn't a suitable word to use. ~ I agree, it was
   3. Is it a simple problem? ~ No, it's quite ________________
   4. Is this yoghurt bad for you? ~ No it doesn't ________________ any fat.
   5. Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, it's definitely ________________
   6. Do you need any special knowledge? ~ Yes, it's very ________________
   7. Is the hotel room expensive? ~ Yes, but the price ________________ dinner.
   8. Were there many subjects? ~ Yes, quite a wide ________________ of topics.

6 ABOUT YOU Write down your learning goals, or tell another student.
3 I can understand a learner’s dictionary

How can a learner’s dictionary help you? These examples are from Oxford Wordpower Dictionary.

Different meanings of the word are given in the definitions, which are in simple English.

The dictionary helps you avoid making mistakes, and helps with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the entry.

Examples of usage are provided.

Words that are often used together (collocations) are given in bold.

It helps you with style: for instance, whether words are formal, informal, slang, offensive, etc.

Guy /gai/ noun 1 [C] (informal) a man or boy: He’s a nice guy. 2 guys [pl] (informal) used when speaking to a group of men and women: What do you guys want to eat?

Phonetic symbols help with pronunciation. You can find out which syllable is stressed.

It can teach you related words: this helps you build your vocabulary and select the correct word for your needs.

Glossary
definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means. define sth v.
avoid doing sth If you avoid doing sth, you try not to do or experience it.
idiom a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words (also expression).
entry one of a list of items included in a dictionary, list, etc. (There are three dictionary entries on this page.)
provide sth give sth to sb or make sth available for sb.
style the way sth is written or spoken (e.g. an informal style, a formal style).
for instance syn for example.

slang very informal words or phrases used in spoken language.
offensive rude and likely to upset sb. offend sb v.
symbol a letter, number, or sign that has a particular meaning (e.g. the symbol /ʃ/ is pronounced ‘sh’).
syllable a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. (Go has one syllable and prefer has two syllables.)
relate sth to sth connect sth to sth. related adj.
brighten sth make sth brighter; increase sth.
select sth syn choose sth (but select is more formal).
selection n.
spotlight: stress and emphasize

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word, or phrase with extra loudness. The related nouns are stress (on sth) and emphasis (on sth).
The stress is on the first syllable. Don't emphasize every word.
They are also used to say that sth is important.
The newspapers stressed the need for urgent action.
The emphasis is mainly on education.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.
   • The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings are very impressive.
   The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings are very impressive. S

   1 That's a useful idiom to know. That's a useful expression to know.
   2 Is that collocation correct? Is that definition correct?
   3 What she said was very rude. What she said was offensive.
   4 Does he use a lot of slang? Does he use a lot of idioms?
   5 Can you avoid mistakes? Can you define mistakes?
   6 Make sure you select the right number. Make sure you choose the right number.
   7 The stress is on the first three letters. The emphasis is on the first three letters.
   8 It doesn't give all the answers. It doesn't provide all the answers.

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.
   symbols offending related entry stress syllable instance idiom provide build collocations entry

   • In a dictionary, foreigner comes after the entry -------- for foreign.
   1 Dictionaries have many uses: for --------, to find out meaning, or check pronunciation.
   2 Does your local bookshop have a good -------- of dictionaries for sale?
   3 Some dictionaries can help you -------- your vocabulary if they -------- synonyms and opposites, or other -------- words.
   4 A dictionary can tell you which words are rude so that you can avoid -------- people.
   5 You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic -------- and noting which -------- is stressed.
   6 Good luck! is given as an -------- in the dictionary, at the end of the -------- for luck.
   7 Dictionaries often tell you which words go together. Examples of -------- are make a mistake and take a photo.
   8 In the word emphasis, the -------- is on the first syllable.

3 Now look at the dictionary entries on the left-hand page. Answer the questions.

   • Which syllable is stressed in mistake? The second syllable

   1 Which related words are given for mistake and make a mistake?
   2 How many definitions are there in the entry for guy?
   3 What style is the idiom You can't win?
   4 Is guy an offensive word?
   5 Which phonetic symbols are given for guy?
   6 Are these sentences correct?
      a) I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; I lost them.
      b) My dad wins a lot of money in his job.
4 I can talk about English punctuation

A Punctuation marks

1. full stop
2. comma
3. colon
4. semicolon
5. question mark
6. exclamation mark
7. apostrophe
8. hyphen
9. dash
10. brackets
11. slash
12. quotation marks

1. Complete the words for the punctuation marks.
   - comm . a
   - full s
   - col
   - hyp
   - bra
   - ques . t i o n m
   - excla . m
   - sem
   - apo

2. What punctuation is used in 1–8 below? You don’t need to repeat full stop each time.
   - We went home early. full stop
   - She had long, blonde hair.
   - What are you doing?
   - Congratulations!
   - It’s too late.
   - I looked in the fridge; it was empty.
   - Someone (not me) left the door open.
   - A five-minute walk – and he still took a taxi.
   - ‘It’s only me,’ he said.

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the punctuation marks. What are they?

B Punctuation rules

SOME IMPORTANT PUNCTUATION RULES

A full stop is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in abbreviations. Each new sentence must begin with a capital letter.

A comma in writing is like a pause in speech. It is used:
- to separate parts of a sentence, e.g. After we left, someone tried to phone us.
- between adjectives, e.g. A big, expensive car.
- to separate words in a list, though it is often omitted before and, e.g. I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.
- when words or phrases interrupt the normal progression of a sentence, e.g. I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.

A colon is often used to introduce further details such as an explanation or a list, e.g. The shop is full of antiques: dining tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors, and so on.

A semicolon is sometimes used instead of a full stop when two sentences are very closely connected, or to separate two main clauses, especially ones that aren’t joined by a conjunction such as and or but, e.g. I went round this morning; nobody was there.

A slash separates words or phrases that are alternatives, e.g. single/married.
Glossary

abbreviation a short form of a word (e.g. a.m. is an abbreviation meaning 'in the morning').
capital letter A B C are capital letters (a b c are small letters).
pause a short period of time when sb stops talking.
separate sb/sth keep people or things away from each other. SYN divide sb/sth.
list a series of names, items, or numbers (e.g. a shopping list, a list of countries).
omit sth OMIT. If you omit sth, you don’t include it. SYN leave sth out.
interrupt sth occur in the middle of sth and stop it continuing.
details small pieces of information about sth.
instead of sb/sth in the place of sb/sth.
connect sth put two or more things together. SYN join sth.
such as You use such as to introduce an example. SYN like.
alternative one of two or more things that you can choose between.

4) Complete the sentences.

- Sentences have to begin with a capital letter.
  1. I wrote a ______ of irregular verbs in my notebook.
  2. I would use this dictionary ______ of the other one, it’s much better.
  3. We often use and or but to ______ two parts of a sentence.
  4. In this application form, you have to give ______ of your work experience.
  5. I asked her to marry me. There was a long ______, and finally she said yes.
  6. Prep. is an ______ of preposition.
  7. You need to use more adjectives ______ as beautiful, delightful, and attractive.
  8. The teacher said we can ______ out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.
  9. You can use brackets to ______ extra information from the rest of the sentence.
 10. The director had to ______ the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.
 11. You could ______ the two sentences into one by using so.
 12. You can use a full stop, but the ______ is that you use a semicolon.

5) Find pairs of words in the box that go together for a reason. Write a sentence about them.

comma omit abbreviation join such as ü p.m. information
separate like ü leave out full stop details divide connect

- ‘Such as’ and ‘like’ mean the same thing.

6) What punctuation is missing, and where?

- We live in this house. A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence.
  1. she works in Bristol.
  2. He’s a tall thin boy.
  3. The book is in on the table. Which is correct?
  4. We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them.
  5. When we arrived we went straight to a restaurant.
  6. This is my boyfriends watch.
  7. After that fortunately we had no more problems.
  8. We couldn’t get in the door was locked.
Unit 1

1 Rewrite the sentences. Change the part of speech of the underlined words.

- Did you discuss it? Did you have a discussion about it?
1 Could you translate this, please? Could you do ...
2 I've got to revise for an exam. I've got to do ...
3 Repetition helps me remember. It helps me remember if ...
4 How did he explain it? What was ...
5 Go on — guess! Go on — have ...
6 I record new words in a book. I keep ...
7 Did you chat about it? Did you have ...
8 How do you pronounce that word? What's ...

2 Complete the text with words and phrases from the box.

make a note of go through texts ▶ translation pronounce make pronunciation gist experiment foreign guess context recognize

I've just started university and I'm studying Italian. We spend a lot of time reading ▶ texts — they're usually articles from Italian newspapers. They contain a lot of words you don't (1) ...., and to start with, you have to try to get the (2) .... of the articles to show that you understand the general idea. In class we (3) .... the texts and (4) .... any useful new words. The teacher tells us to (5) .... the meaning of new words by looking at the (6) .... they are in. We then write a (7) .... of them if we want to, and learn how to (8) .... them correctly. I often (9) .... mistakes with (10) ...., but I don't think it matters; it's important to (11) .... with language; that's the best way to make progress. Next year, I'm starting another (12) .... language: Russian. I'm really excited about that.

Unit 2

1 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ I want to learn Italian — nothing very specialized, just everyday Italian.
1 It was a very c.... story — quite hard to understand.
2 I don't know enough words, so my vocabulary needs to e.... That is my main a.... on this course.
3 I've lived in Costa Rica for five years now, and I can speak Spanish f....
4 You need to know the subject very well and talk about it in d....
5 There is now a wide r.... of evening courses that you can do at the college.
6 Does this drink c.... alcohol?
7 Some of the courses are too s.... — I don't have the knowledge to do them.
8 You have to complete each sentence with an a.... word.

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

progress aware spoke ▶ getting frustrating encouraging while accurate motivated express

When I went to live in Argentina, I spoke some Spanish but I couldn't understand people when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was very (1) .... But I was very (2) .... I worked hard at my Spanish, and after a (3) .... I could see that I was making a lot of (4) .... It was also very (5) .... when people told me that I was (6) ....
better. My problem was that I still made a lot of mistakes, and I wasn’t (7) __________ of them. Anyway, I kept trying, and after about a year, I was able to (8) __________ most things I needed to, and my Spanish was also quite (9) __________ – I only made a few mistakes.

Unit 3

1 Complete the words in the text.

When you meet a new word in a text, for example, genuine, you might want to look up the meaning in a dictionary. It’s important to look at all the (1) d __________ in an (2) e __________, and then (3) s __________ the correct one, according to the context of the sentence. For (4) i __________, if the sentence is I bought a genuine Velasquez painting, you know the meaning is ‘real’ or ‘authentic’. Genuine is a difficult word to pronounce, so it is worth looking at the phonetic (5) s __________, and note too how the word is (6) s __________; in fact, the (7) s __________ is on the first (8) s __________.

If you come across an (9) i __________ or (10) e __________ such as under the weather, you should check the meaning (it means ‘feeling slightly ill’), and then look at the (11) s __________ of the phrase: is it formal or informal? This particular phrase isn’t rude, but you certainly wouldn’t want to (12) o __________ anyone, so it’s always a good idea to check.

Unit 4

1 Read the text, then answer the questions below.

I really want to leave home, so I went to see a flat last night. It had everything: a kitchen, a living room, a bathroom, a bedroom, and a study—and it was in a great location. I realized, however, that it would be too expensive for me on my own. I rang Mr Pavlides at the agency this morning; he offered to make it a bit cheaper, so I decided to take it. My mother was really pleased. ‘You’re moving out at last! But Michael, who’s going to wash your shirts for you now?’ she said.

What punctuation is there:

1 after home in line 1 __________ a comma __________ 4 before You’re in line 4? ____________
2 after everything in line 1? ____________ 5 after last in line 5? ____________
3 after on my own in line 3? ____________ 6 in who’s in line 5? ____________
4 after this morning in line 3? ____________ 7 after now in line 5? ____________

2 Look at the text again. Complete the sentences.

1 The first sentence begins with a capital __________ letter __________.
2 There is a comma after home, which __________ the two parts of the sentence.
3 There is a colon after everything. It is often used before more __________ or a __________.
4 In the sentence beginning I realized, the word however __________ the progression of the sentence, so commas are used around it.
5 After the word morning there is a semicolon. This can be used __________ of a full stop when the two sentences are closely __________.
5 I can talk about appearance

**Male appearance**

He's got **broad shoulders** and is **well built**.

He's tall and **skinny**, but he's in **good shape**.

He's got **thick eyebrows** and **stubble**. He's **dark-skinned** or **light-** or **pale-skinned**.

He's quite **plump**, with a **fattish** face.

He's **going bald** or he's **losing his hair** or his hair's **receding**.

He's **clean-shaven** and **bald**. He has a **scar** on his head.

---

**Glossary**

**Male** Men and boys are **male**, women and girls are **female** (a person's **sex** is male or female).

**Well built** with a solid, strong body. SYN **stocky**.

**Skinny** very thin, but not in an attractive way.

**In good/bad shape** in good/bad physical condition.

**Plump** quite fat, in a nice way.

**Fattish** quite fat. (See spotlight, next page.)

**Clean-shaven** without a beard or moustache.

---

1. One letter is missing from each word. Write the words correctly.

   skinny  skinny  3. sca  6. clean-shave

   1. eyebrows  4. broad shoulders  7. in good shape

   2. fattish

2. Similar or different? Write S or D.

   fattish | plump  5. dark-skinned | pale-skinned

   1. skinny | dark-skinned

   2. in good shape | in good condition

   3. go bald | be bald

   4. stocky | well built

   5. stubble | a scar

   6. pale-skinned | light-skinned

   7. He's losing his hair. | His hair's receding

   8. male | female

3. Complete the questions. You will write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

   In your family:  5. who's well b.  6. who's sk.  7. who's dark-s.  8. who's got a s. on their body?

   ABOUT YOUR FAMILY

4. ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

5. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the descriptions?
This is my mother at 27 when she was pregnant: in fact, she was expecting me. She had a pretty, roundish face with beautiful smooth skin and long hair.

Here's Mum now: she looks tanned. She's still slim with a good figure. Her appearance hasn't changed much, but she's got a few wrinkles! She's going grey, and her hair's much shorter and neater. She wears contact lenses, and you can't tell that she's nearly 60.

**Glossary**

- **be pregnant** • Syn be expecting a baby.
- **pretty** • attractive and nice to look at (used especially about girls or young women).
- **smooth** • with a completely flat surface. Off rough.
- **skin** • Your skin covers your body.
- **tanned** • having brown skin after spending time in the sun. tan.
- **slim** • thin in an attractive way. Syn slender.
- **figure** • the shape of a woman's body.
- **appearance** • the way sb looks.
- **go grey** • become grey-haired or white-haired.
- **or white** • tidy and carefully arranged.
- **neat** • small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better.
- **contact lenses** • know or guess sth.
- **tell sth**

6 **True or false? Write T or F.**

- If your hair is neat, it's tidy. **T**
- 1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses. **F**
- 2 Skin can be rough or smooth. **T**
- 3 A tallish person is very tall. **F**
- 4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby. **F**
- 5 You get tanned sitting in the sun. **F**
- 6 Everyone has a good figure. **F**
- 7 You usually use 'pretty' to describe a man. **T**
- 8 Your hair can go white or grey. **F**

7 **Complete the sentences.**

- Does she wear contact lenses?
- 1 Her _____________ has gone grey, and it's completely changed her _________________.
- 2 She's still very slim, so you can't _______________ she's _______________ a baby in July.
- 3 I'm feeling so old these days - look at these ______________ around my eyes!
- 4 My baby's skin is so ______________ to touch, but my hands are really _______________.
- 5 She's got a beautiful figure: she's tall and ________________.
- 6 You can ______________ she's been on holiday - she's got a lovely ________________.

8 **Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?**
I can talk about character

How I see myself

Dan (33) I'm ambitious, self-confident, and generous. I'm also very impatient.

Kaz (18) I'm always cheerful. I'm easy-going, and I've got lots of energy.

Giles (45) I see myself as honest, hard-working, and generally tolerant.

How others see me

'Some people really like me; others think I'm arrogant and maybe aggressive.'

'My parents don't think I'm very responsible; my friends just think I'm crazy.'

'Other people probably think I'm a bit dull, without much sense of humour.'

Spotlight: crazy, mad, stupid

Crazy and mad mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'. Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. Stupid is always negative.

Glossary

see sb as sth - imagine or think of sb in a particular way.
ambitious - having a strong desire to do well or be successful. opp unambitious, ambition N.
self-confident - feeling sure about your own ability. opp insecure.
generous - happy to give more money and help than is usual. opp mean, generosity N.
impatient - not able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb. opp patient, patience N.
aggressive - thinking you are better than other people. opp modest, arrogance N.
cheerful - feeling happy.
easy-going - relaxed and not worried by what other people do.
energy - the ability to be very active without getting tired. energetic adj.
responsible - able to act sensibly and intelligently. opp irresponsible.
honest - always telling the truth. opp dishonest, honesty N.
hard-working - able to work with effort and for a long time. opp lazy.
tolerant - able to accept ideas you don't agree with. opp intolerant, tolerance N.
dull - boring.
sense of humour - the ability to laugh at things and see when sth is funny.

1 Positive or negative, or can it be both? Write P or N or B.

1. She's very cheerful. P
2. He's very arrogant. N
3. They're a bit dull. N
4. Both boys are very honest. P
5. She's so modest. N
6. He's very self-confident. B
7. Karen is so mean. N
8. My boss is very tolerant. P
9. My brother is absolutely mad. N

22 PEOPLE
2 Correct the spelling mistakes.
   -onest  honest  3 generos  6 aggressive
   1 energie  4 cheerfull  7 patience
   2 responsable  5 energetik  8 tolerant

3 Match 1–8 with a–i.
   - feeling sure about your own ability...  a aggressive
   1 boring  b cheerful
   2 likely to fight or argue  c self-confident
   3 thinking you are better than others  d tolerant
   4 always telling the truth  e sense of humour
   5 ability to laugh at things  f dull
   6 feeling happy  g arrogant
   7 unhappy to give money or help people  h honest
   8 able to accept ideas you don’t agree with  i mean

4 Complete the tables.
   ADJECTIVE  OPPOSITE  ADJECTIVE  NOUN
   patient impatiente  ambitious ambition
   honest  honest
   responsible  tolerant
   lazy  aggressive
   generous  arrogant
   ambitious  generous
   self-confident patient

5 Complete the words in each sentence.
   - If you disagree with Matthew, he can get a bit __________.
   1 My brother’s a bit irresponsible and does some __________ things; but he’s OK.
   2 Keiko’s a good person to share a flat with: she’s very __________.
   3 I like Zoltan; he’s got a great __________ of __________.
   4 Hamdi is a fantastic musician, but very few people realize this because he’s so __________.
   5 Since Katy got a new job and a boyfriend, she’s become more __________.
   6 My brother’s lazy, but my sisters have always been very __________.
   7 I don’t think young Andy is __________ enough to drive a car.
   8 Andrea has so much __________; she’s always doing something.

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions, or ask another student.
   1 Are you ambitious? If so, in what way?
   2 Would you say you’re hard-working or a bit lazy?
   3 Are you intolerant of anything? If so, what?
   4 When do you get impatient?
   5 How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives.
   6 Which two qualities do you think are the most important: honesty, patience, tolerance, or generosity?

7Test yourself. Cover your opposites and nouns in Exercise 4 and test yourself. Then cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What do they mean?
## 7 I can describe my feelings

### A Feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thrilled</td>
<td>He was <strong>thrilled</strong> to win and he kissed the cup.</td>
<td>very happy and excited. <strong>SYN</strong> delighted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furious</td>
<td>I lost his keys: he was <strong>absolutely furious</strong>.</td>
<td>very angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astonished</td>
<td>I was <strong>astonished</strong> to hear he was married.</td>
<td>very surprised. <strong>SYN</strong> amazed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken</td>
<td>She was <strong>heartbroken</strong> when her father died.</td>
<td>very sad and emotionally upset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrified</td>
<td>I was <strong>terrified</strong> when the plane took off.</td>
<td>very frightened. <strong>SYN</strong> scared stiff <strong>INF</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserable</td>
<td>You look <strong>very miserable</strong>. What’s wrong?</td>
<td>unhappy and depressed. <strong>SYN</strong> fed up <strong>INF</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proud</td>
<td>I felt very <strong>proud</strong> when my book was published.</td>
<td>pleased about sth you or other people have done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jealous</td>
<td>My boyfriend is <strong>jealous</strong> when I'm with other boys.</td>
<td>1 angry or sad because you're afraid of losing sb’s love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxious</td>
<td>He was <strong>anxious</strong> before he went into hospital.</td>
<td>2 angry or sad because sb has sth you don’t have. <strong>SYN</strong> envious.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upset</td>
<td>Sally was very <strong>upset</strong> because no one spoke to her.</td>
<td>sad and angry because of sth that has happened.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Complete the words and phrases.

- **amazed** 4 **thr**
- 1 **anx** 5 **broken**
- 2 **fur** 6 **scared**
- 3 **ast** 7 **ki**

### 2 Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

- **worried** **anxious** 2 **fed up**
- 1 **thrilled** 3 **scared stiff**
- 4 **astonished**
- 5 **envious**

### 3 ABOUT YOU How might you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

1. Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. **I’d be furious.**
2. You’ve just passed an important exam. **I’d be delighted.**
3. Your best friend has bought a car that you would love to have. **I’m envious.**
4. Your lovely old dog has just died. **I’m heartbroken.**
5. A man walks up to you in the street and holds a knife to your face. **I’m terrified.**
6. You’re on holiday but you can’t go out because you’ve got a bad cold. **I’m fed up.**
7. You see someone you don’t know kissing your boyfriend/girlfriend. **I’m jealous.**
8. You have been chosen to make a speech at an important event. **I’m proud.**
9. You are going somewhere by plane and you don’t like flying. **I’m scared stiff.**

### 4 Test yourself. Cover the meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

a I'm an emotional person and I like to show my feelings.
b I think I'm quite sensitive, so I try not to upset other people.
c I'm sensitive about my appearance.
d When I'm in a bad mood, I sometimes hurt people's feelings.
e In general, I think I'm quite a moody person.
f When people have personal problems, I think I'm usually very sympathetic and supportive.

Glossary

emotional having strong feelings, and often showing them. emotion N.

show your feelings express your feelings openly. or hide your feelings.

upset sb make sb unhappy.

be in a bad mood feel angry or unhappy at a particular time. or be in a good mood.

hurt sb's feelings say sth that makes sb unhappy.

moody If you are moody, you often change and become angry or unhappy for no obvious reason.

sympathetic kind and showing you understand sb's problems (sympathetic doesn't mean 'friendly' or 'nice' in English).

supportive giving help to sb who has a problem.

5 Circle the correct answer.

- Try not to hurt upset his feelings.

1 Sarah's not very emotional, and tends to show hide her feelings.
2 You can talk to Gary easily about your problems; he's very sympathetic/moody.
3 Be careful what you say to Susan because she's very sympathetic/sensitive.
4 You never know what Karen will be like because she's so moody/supportive.
5 Brian is the most emotional/insensitive man I know; he upsets everyone.
6 Love, anger, and fear are all emotions/moods.

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- Caroline is very sensitive. She seems to know when someone has a problem.

1 Keep away from Elton – he's in a bad mood today.
2 He hurt his parents because he was so rude to them.
3 My children cooked all my meals when I was ill. They were very sympathetic.
4 I broke my leg and it was really painful, but my friends weren't very supportive.
5 I'm in a really good mood today. I think it's the fantastic weather.
6 Paul tends to upset people and worry their feelings.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire, or ask another student.
I can talk about relationships

A Friendship

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendship</td>
<td>Our friendship has always been very important to us.</td>
<td>the relationship between people who are friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make friends</td>
<td>I find it difficult to make friends.</td>
<td>form friendly relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on (well) with sb</td>
<td>Do you get on well with your classmates?</td>
<td>have a good relationship with sb. or not get on with sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rely on sb</td>
<td>I can always rely on my sisters. My brother's not very reliable.</td>
<td>feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do. SYN depend on sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reliable adj</td>
<td></td>
<td>have a good relationship with sb. or not get on with sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust sb</td>
<td>You have to trust your friends.</td>
<td>believe sb is good and won't hurt you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loyal</td>
<td>He was very loyal to my father.</td>
<td>being a friend to sb, even in difficult times. or disloyal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sociable</td>
<td>She's very sociable and gets on well with people.</td>
<td>A sociable person likes the company of other people. or antisocial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep in touch</td>
<td>Simon is an old friend. We've always kept in touch.</td>
<td>(of two or more people) stay in contact by speaking or writing to each other.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Combine words in the box to make phrases.
   - rely ✓ friend get on well with someone ✓ a close keep make in touch on someone depend with someone
   - rely on someone

2. Answer the questions.
   - Another way of saying 'stay in contact with someone' is keep in touch
   1. Rely (on) is a verb. What's the adjective? sociable
   2. What's a synonym for rely on? depend on
   3. A sociable person enjoys the company of others. What's the opposite? antisocial
   4. What's the opposite of loyal? disloyal
   5. What's the relationship between people who are friends? friendly
   6. What do you call a friend you like very much? close

3. Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.
   - He's a bit antisocial. sociable. He isn't very sociable.
   1. He likes Ruben. friendly
   2. She never phones us. touch
   3. I don't have a good relationship with my father. get on
   4. I became her friend at university. make
   5. My boss is very reliable. rely
   6. I've known Donna for a long time. old

4. Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?
**Perfect Weekend Channel Five**

Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong, John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning...

---

**Spotlight: have a row / an argument**

Both phrases mean 'have an angry discussion', e.g. I had a row with Li.

The verb related to argument is argue. e.g. They argued with each other.

---

**Glossary**

- get to know sb meet sb a number of times and become friends.
- one another each other.
- get together (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.
- go wrong used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship.
- realize sth begin to understand sth that you didn't know before.
- have nothing in common (of two people) have no interests that are the same. or have a lot in common.
- regret sth / doing sth feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do.
- split up with sb stop being in a romantic relationship with sb.
- go out with sb have sb as a boyfriend or girlfriend.
- in a (serious) relationship having a long-term boyfriend or girlfriend.
- fall out with sb argue with sb and stop being friendly with them.

---

5. Circle the correct word.

- They were very happy, then something got/went wrong.
  
  1. Hana's by/in a serious relationship.
  2. Liam and Chen have fallen out/on.
  3. Shall we come/get together next week?
  4. They have lots in/on common.
  5. She got/went out with Len at university.
  6. How did you get/go to know Anya?

---

6. Complete the missing words.

- I went out with Osman for two months, then we fell out over something stupid.
  
  1. I don't get on with Dirk. We argue a lot, and last week we had a terrible row. I'd like to get to know Anders better because we have a lot in common.
  2. Karl sits up with him last week and I think she could do with a bit of support.
  3. We have nothing in common. That's why I realized I could never get on/with him.

---

7. Complete the text.

Milo and I got to know one when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in (2) and got on really well, but, unfortunately, he was in a serious (3) at the time. Then it all went (4). He and his girlfriend Inez had a big (5) and he (6) up with her. We started to (7) out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon (8) his decision to end his relationship with Inez. He (9) he was still in love with her, and that our relationship was a big mistake.
I can talk about families

A Family relationships

Marilyn Monroe was an **only child** from a **single-parent family**, but she lived with **foster parents** until she was seven, and then she was **adopted** by her mother's best friend. She got married at sixteen, and she got **divorced** three times.

Bill Clinton's father died before he was **born**. His mother, Virginia, had to find a way to **support** Bill, so she studied nursing, and Bill was **brought up** by his grandparents. When Bill was four, his mother married Roger Clinton, who became Bill's **stepfather**. Roger and Virginia had a son called Roger, who is Bill Clinton's **half-brother**.

**Glossary**

- **only child**: a child with no brothers or sisters.
- **single parent**: a mother or father who looks after their children alone.
- **foster parent**: sb who looks after another person's child in their home for a time.
- **adopt**: to take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child.
- **divorce**: to legally end your marriage. syn get a divorce.
- **support sb**: help someone live by giving them money, food, or a home.
- **bring sb up**: look after a child and teach them how to live.
- **stepfather**: a man who has married your mother but is not your father (related words: stepmother, stepson, stepdaughter, stepbrother, stepsister).
- **half-brother/half-sister**: a brother or sister who has either the same mother or the same father as you.

1. Complete the words or phrases.
   1. step________mother
   2. h________-sister
   3. f________ parents
   4. s________ father
   5. get ________orced
   6. ad________ a child
   7. s________ parent
   8. br________ somebody up

2. Same or different? Write S or D.
   - She's a single parent. | She's a foster parent. **D**
   1. He's an only child. | He hasn't got any brothers or sisters. **S**
   2. He's my half-brother. | He's my stepbrother. **D**
   3. He's my stepson. | He's my wife's son by her first marriage. **S**
   4. She was adopted as a baby. | She lived with foster parents as a baby. **S**
   5. She's my half-sister. | She's my mother's sister. **S**
   6. Our uncle supported us. | Our uncle brought us up. **D**

3. Complete the questions.
   1. Where were you b________ up?
   2. Have you got any brothers or sisters, or are you an o________ child?
   3. Do you have any h________-brothers or -sisters?
   4. Do you know anyone who is a s________ parent? If so, who?
   5. Do you know anyone who has recently got d________?

4. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
I'm related to a member of the royal family. We have ancestors who were Russian immigrants. They emigrated from Russia to Britain in the nineteenth century. I'm from London, but previous generations of my family lived in Malta. Some of my relatives were originally from China. I look like my grandmother, but I take after my father. We're both very lazy!

Glossary

be related to sb • be in the same family as sb. relative n. syn relation.
member • a person who is in a group such as a family or a club.
royal • relating to a king or queen (see picture).
ancestor • a person in your family who lived a long time ago.
immigrant • a person who comes to a foreign country to live there.
emigrate from . . . to . . . • leave your country in order to live in another.
previous • happening before the one you are talking about.
generation • all the people in a family born at about the same time.
originally • in the beginning, before other things happened.
look like sb • have the same appearance as sb.
take after sb • be like an older member of your family.

5 Circle the correct answer.

- Our ancestors were Italian immigrants/members.
1 She's one of my ancestors/relatives; she was born in 1880.
2 Janet looks like/takes after her daughter.
3 My ancestors emigrated/related to Australia a century ago.
4 Are your relations/immigrants from Italy?
5 I'm originally/previously from Rome: that's where I was born.
6 He's married to a member/generation of the royal family.

6 Complete the questions.

- What do you know about your ancestors?...
1 Are you r.___________ to anyone famous?
2 Do you have a r.___________ family in your country?
   If so, do you have a king or a q.___________?
3 Where do/did the p.___________ generations of your family live?
4 Which m.___________ of your family do you look l.___________?
5 Do you take a___________ your mother or your father? How?

ABOUT YOU

7 Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
10 I can talk about weddings and funerals

A A typical British wedding

When two people are planning to get married, they can choose to have a religious ceremony or a civil ceremony. On the wedding day, the groom is helped by a best man who brings the rings to the wedding ceremony. The bride may have one or more bridesmaids. Afterwards, there is a reception for the couple and the wedding guests. It's traditional for the best man and the groom to make speeches, and then everyone drinks a toast to the couple, and wishes them a long and happy marriage. After the reception, they usually go on their honeymoon. On the same day every year after that, the couple celebrate their wedding anniversary.

Glossary

choose sth pt chose pp chosen decide which thing you want. choice n.
ceremony a formal public event.
religious A religious ceremony takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. religion n.
civil A civil ceremony is a non-religious one.
wedding a time when a man and woman get married.
rings

wedding reception a meal and/or party after a wedding.
traditional A traditional thing is sth that people have done for a long time.
make a speech give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event.
drink a toast to sb raise a glass of wine, etc. to wish sb success or happiness.

wish sb sth say that you hope good things will happen to sb.
honeymoon a holiday for a couple who have just got married.
celebrate sth have a special meal, party, etc. to show you are happy about sth.
anniversary the date on which sth happened the previous year or in the past.

spotlight wedding and marriage; bride and groom

A wedding is the ceremony for a couple (two people who are getting married). Marriage is the relationship between a husband and wife. We went to my sister's wedding on Saturday. Jack and Dora's marriage lasted 40 years. On the wedding day, the couple are called the bride and groom. After they are married, they become husband and wife.
1. Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some words are correct.
   - marriage
   - anniversary
   - I've chosen it
   - tradicional
   - civil
   - bridgemaids
   - celebrate
   - wedding
   - honeymoon
   - speech
   - guest
   - ceremonie
   - reception
   - religion

2. Circle the correct word.
   - Jane and Mark's **wedding**/marriage is next Saturday.
   - Mark is the **groom**/best man.
   - The bridesmaid/bride is Mark's sister.
   - They have chosen/wished a religious ceremony.
   - They've invited about sixty brides/guests to the wedding.
   - The reception will be before/after the wedding ceremony.
   - The rings will be brought to the ceremony by the **couple**/best man.
   - Speeches are traditional at the reception/best man.
   - When they're on their **honey**moon, Jane and Mark will be bride and groom/husband and wife.

3. Complete the phrases using words from the box.
   - groom
ceremony
   - a speech
   - a toast
ceremony
   - a happy marriage
   - a religious ceremony
   - your honeymoon
   - anniversary
   - a wedding
   - go on
   - celebrate your
   - a religious
   - the best
   - make

4. Complete the questions with a suitable word.
   1. Can people have a religious ceremony or a ceremony?
   2. Does the groom have a man at the ceremony?
   3. Does the bride have any with her?
   4. In the ceremony, do the bride and groom put on wedding?
   5. Is there usually a after the ceremony?
   6. How many are usually invited?
   7. Is it for people to speeches?
   8. Do people usually drink a to the bride and groom?
   9. Do the traditionally go on their after the wedding?
   10. Do people usually their wedding anniversary every year?

5. **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6. **Test yourself.** Look at the picture and cover the text. Can you remember the words for the people?
The end of a life

1 graves  2 gravestone  3 mourners; the family are in mourning  4 coffin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>die</strong> (die of an illness) <strong>death</strong> N, <strong>dead</strong> ADJ</td>
<td>He died of old age. His death was very sad.</td>
<td>stop living.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>widow</strong></td>
<td>Mark's widow never remarried.</td>
<td>a woman whose husband has died.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>widower</strong></td>
<td>He's been a widower for years.</td>
<td>a man whose wife has died.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>funeral</strong></td>
<td>The funeral was at the church.</td>
<td>a ceremony after sb dies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bury sb, burial</strong> N</td>
<td>He was buried this morning.</td>
<td>put a dead body in the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cremate sb</strong></td>
<td>My grandmother wasn't buried; she was cremated.</td>
<td>burn the body of a dead person as part of a funeral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cremation</strong> N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cemetery</strong></td>
<td>He's buried in that cemetery.</td>
<td>a place where dead people are buried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>will</strong> N</td>
<td>He left his sister £10,000 in his will.</td>
<td>a document that says who will have your money or things when you die.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inherit sth</strong></td>
<td>I inherited £1,000 from my uncle.</td>
<td>receive money or things from sb when they die.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inheritance</strong> N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- ded _dead_  
- widoer _widower_  
- gravestone

3 funeral  6 deth  7 cemetery  8 cofin

8 Circle the correct words or phrases.

- We went to the coffin/cemetery/funeral yesterday.
- The old lady died/is dead/is death last Tuesday.
- My grandfather's name is on the death/will/gravestone.
- I met Jack at the funeral/burial/widow.
- My grandfather was inherited/buried/cremated when he died.
- Mrs Erikson was a widow/widower/mourner.
- My wife was standing near the grave/coffin/cremation.

9 Complete the text.

I never knew my grandfather, because he _died_ in 1960, before I was born. He died (1) _______ heart problems. My grandmother was (2) _______ mourning for a long time. She didn't marry again; she was a (3) _______ for thirty years. I was very sad at the news of her (4) _______ in 1990. I can remember her (5) _______ at our local church. She was (6) _______ in the cemetery near the park. She left my mother some money in her (7) _______ , and my uncle (8) _______ her house.

10 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
Review: People

Unit 5

1 Circle the correct answer.
   ▶ My uncle is going black [grey].
   1 Is she waiting for/expecting a baby?
   2 Do you wear contact/content lenses?
   3 Ahmed always looks very neat/plump and tidy.
   4 You can't know/tell that she's in her fifties.
   5 She goes to the gym every day; that's why she still has a great appearance/figure.
   6 Olga was very bald/tanned after her holiday in Portugal.
   7 You got a few scars/wrinkles round your eyes as you get older.
   8 My boss is in his forties but still in good shape/figure.

2 Complete the sentences.
   1 Emilio's well built, with broad
   2 My dad's completely ; now my older brother is his hair as well.
   3 He got the on his leg when he fell off his bike as a child.
   4 I don't think his has changed much in the last 20 years; he's still in good
   5 My father has always been clean—never had a beard.
   6 I wouldn't say she's fat, but she is quite

Unit 6

1 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>opp of adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ambitious</td>
<td>having a strong desire to be successful.</td>
<td>ambition</td>
<td>unambitious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g.</td>
<td>happy to give more money and help than is usual.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h.</td>
<td>always telling the truth.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t.</td>
<td>able to accept ideas you don't agree with.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>able to stay calm and wait for sth.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>thinking you are better than other people.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h.</td>
<td>able to work with effort and for a long time.</td>
<td>XXXXXX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the dialogues.
   ▶ Is he energetic? ~ No, he's got no___________.
   1 That was a mad thing to do. ~ Yes, absolutely___________.
   2 Do you find him interesting? ~ No, I think he's a___________.
   3 Do you think you're hard-working? ~ To be honest, no—I'm quite___________.
   4 He's always looking for a fight. ~ Yes, I find him very___________.
   5 She never laughs at anything. ~ I know, she's got no___________.
   6 He's such a happy person. ~ Yes, he's always very___________.

REVIEW: PEOPLE 33
Unit 7

1 Replace the underlined word with either a synonym or an opposite.
   - Is he always in such a bad mood? SYN terrible, opp good
   - Michael is usually very sensitive.
   - Why are they so miserable? SYN
   - We were amazed to see her.
   - He never shows his feelings.
   - I was terrified when it happened.
   - I was delighted with my results.

2 Are these sentences logical? If not, cross out the word that is not logical and replace it with a better word.
   - I was astonished that I passed the exam, but really miserable. delighted
   - She’s very emotional, so she tends to show her feelings a lot. This is logical.
   - He was furious with me, and I was thrilled.
   - She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous.
   - I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off.
   - I don’t know what upset her, but she was thrilled.
   - She can be very insensitive and often hurts people’s feelings.
   - I can’t talk to her because she’s insensitive and very supportive.

Unit 8

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
   - Paulo split with Simone last week.üp
   - Petros and I have nothing common.
   - How did you get to know her?
   - I like Imran; we get very well.
   - Don’t forget to keep touch.
   - You can’t rely her brother.
   - I don’t think they’re a relationship at the moment.

2 Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.
   - Being friends with Tomi is important to me. My friendship with Tomi is important to me.
   - He just likes being with people. He’s very.
   - I understand what happened now. I...what happened.
   - He’s been my friend in difficult times. He’s been very.
   - I went out for a meal with the others last week. We got...for a meal last week.
   - We share a lot of interests. We have a lot in.
   - They argue a lot. They have a lot of.
   - She’s sorry that it happened. She...that it happened.
   - I can always depend on my sister. My sister is very.

Unit 9

1 Which words are being defined?
   - a member of your family...relative
   - a person who comes from a foreign country to live in your country.
   - a woman who married your father but who is not your mother.
3 someone in your family who lived a long time ago.
4 take a child into your family and make them your child legally.
5 have the same appearance as someone.
6 be like an older member of your family.
7 end a marriage legally.
8 all the people in a family born at about the same time.

2 Complete the text.

John Lennon's ancestors were Irish (1) who came to live in Liverpool. John was an (2) child in a single (3) family. When he was five, his mother gave John to her sister, Mirri, to look after, so he was (4) up by his aunt. Lennon got married in 1962 to Cynthia, and had a son, Julian. Sadly, the marriage went wrong. The Lenmons got (5) in 1968, and Julian was brought (6) by his mother. Lennon remarried in 1969, this time marrying Yoko Ono, who already had a daughter, Kyoko, from a (7) marriage which had ended in divorce. John and Yoko had a son called Sean. Julian and Sean are (8) -brothers, and Julian and Kyoko are (9) brother and (10) sister.

Unit 10

1 Find 11 more words or phrases related to weddings in the word square.

2 Complete the texts.

When my neighbour Mr Patrick (5) recently, I went to his (1) . His wife died ten years ago, so he had been a (2) for a long time. He always wanted to be (3) in the cemetery next to his wife. There were a lot of (4) at the funeral: mostly family and old friends. His son, Malcolm, (5) his house, and I believe he's going to move back to live in it.

My cousin, Elizabeth, got married last year. She and her (6) , Martin, had to (7) whether to have a religious (7) or a (8) one. In the end, they (9) a religious wedding. She was a beautiful (10) , and Martin looked fantastic. Martin's brother, Steve, was the (11) man. It was a very traditional ceremony, and afterwards there was a (12) at a hotel near the church. Next week it will be their first wedding (13) , so the family is going to get together to (14) with a big party.
11 I can describe the universe

A The universe

- The moon is a satellite of the earth; in other words, it circles around the earth. This takes approximately 28 days.
- The earth revolves around the sun every 365 days.
- The sun is a star, but seems much larger than other stars because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately eight minutes to reach the earth.
- Nine planets revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the solar system.
- Seventy-five years ago, sending rockets into space seemed far-fetched, but now it is a fact of life and we have gained considerable knowledge of the earth’s satellite and our solar system.

Glossary
universe the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars.
satellite an object that moves round a bigger object in space.
in other words used for saying sth in a different way.
circle sth go round sth in a circle.
revolve around sth synonym.
reach sth arrive at a place.
space the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars.
far-fetched not easy to believe because it is very improbable.
gain sth get more and more of sth useful, such as knowledge or experience.
knowledge what you know and understand about sth.

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.
   - The sun circles the earth. moon
   - The planets are in the solar space.
   - The earth revolves around the moon.
   - The sun is a planet.
   - Man first walked on the sun in 1969.
   - Venus is a star.
   - We can send planes into space.
   - The stars are part of the earth.

2 Complete the sentences.
   - There are billions of stars in the universe.
   - Is it important to send rockets into ___________?
   - The earth revolves around the sun: in other ___________, earth is a planet in our solar system.
   - The Venus Express rocket took ___________ five months to ___________ the planet Venus.
   - The idea of human life on Mars is far-___________.
   - We have ___________ a lot of knowledge about the solar system in recent years.
   - The earth ___________ around the sun every 365 days.
   - My ___________ of space is very limited. I’d like to learn more about it.
   - The moon is a ___________ of the earth.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text and name everything in the picture.
B Scientific exploration

Why go to Mars?
Scientists have already sent satellites to explore the surface of Mars, and carried out experiments to see if they can discover any signs of life. So far, they haven't found any, but an analysis of rocks from Mars has confirmed that they were created by the presence of water and wind. In other words, life could have existed in the past.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scientist</td>
<td>a person who studies the physical world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science</td>
<td>n. scientific adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satellite</td>
<td>a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explore sth</td>
<td>travel round a place in order to learn about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exploration</td>
<td>n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry out sth</td>
<td>do and complete a task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experiment</td>
<td>a scientific test done in order to learn sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analysis</td>
<td>a careful study of sth in order to explain it. analyse v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confirm sth</td>
<td>say or show that sth is true or definite. confirmation n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exist</td>
<td>If sth exists, it is present in the real world. existence n.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Circle the correct word.

- There was an __________ to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
  1 These animals only __________ in South America - nowhere else.
  2 They're going to explore/analyse the area to see what they can find.
  3 The discovery/invention of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
  4 Scientists have carried out/confirmed experiments on animals.
  5 Who invented/discovered the life-saving drug penicillin?
  6 We've got the data, so now we need to __________ it.

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- Television was an incredible __________.
  1 There's a report from a group of __________.
  2 The __________ of penicillin was of major importance.
  3 We're waiting for __________ of the results.
  4 There will be an __________ of the findings in the laboratory.
  5 The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space __________.
  6 Humans are always looking for the __________ of new life forms.

6 Complete the sentences.

- The police __________ drugs inside his shoes.
  1 At the moment there is no evidence that life __________ on Mars.
  2 They left camp and went to __________ the countryside to see what they could find.
  3 With the use of __________, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
  4 Scientists believe they will have to __________ out further experiments.
  5 I don't know who first __________ the camera. Do you?
  6 We knew he was ill, but the doctors have now __________ that it's serious.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words.
Can you remember the meanings?
Rivers flow to the sea. A river can be wide (width n) and deep (depth n) or narrow and shallow. If it rains heavily, a river can burst its banks, which causes floods. If there is no rain for a long time, the river dries up.

THE SEA and OCEANS
The tide comes in (high tide) and goes out (low tide) twice a day.

Boats float on the surface of the water.

In bad weather, a boat can capsize and sink. People on the boat may be trapped underwater and may drown.

Glossary
flow move smoothly (like water).
burst break open suddenly and violently.
ocean a very big sea, e.g. the Atlantic Ocean.
tide the regular change in the sea level caused by the moon and sun.
capsize (used of boats) turn over in the water.
underwater happening or existing below the surface of the water.
drown die in water because you can’t breathe.

spotlight cause v, n
To cause something is to make something (often unpleasant) happen.
The wind caused problems for cyclists.
The cause of something is the person or thing that makes it happen.
The police don’t know the cause of the accident.
1. One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.
   - lаk ________ 6 narro ________
   - flod ________ 7 pudle ________
   - high tіd ________ 8 dron ________
   - shalow ________ 9 waterfal ________
   - fiot ________ 10 ocen ________
   - suflаce ________

2. Match 1–8 with a–i.
   - the tide ________  a capsized
   - burst ________  b to the sea
   - the river ________  c its banks
   - low ________  d dried up
   - the width ________  e in the lake
   - it flows ________  f river
   - drown ________  g of the river
   - а shallow ________  h tide
   - the boat ________  i went out ✓

3. Yes or No? Write Y or N.
   - Do streams have a tide? ________
   - 1 Is the depth of a river the same as its width? ________
   - 2 Can you have a high tide and a low tide? ________
   - 3 Do puddles form when it rains a lot? ________
   - 4 Can people float in water? ________
   - 5 Can people capsize? ________
   - 6 Can a pond dry up? ________
   - 7 Can people swim up a waterfall? ________
   - 8 Can people sit on the bank of a river? ________
   - 9 Are canals deeper than seas? ________
   - 10 Does water flow in a pond? ________

4. Circle the correct word.
   - The River Seine floats (flows) through Paris.
   - 1 The leaves floated on the surface/underwater.
   - 2 I went sailing on the pond/lake.
   - 3 The ship capsized/drowned in the storm.
   - 4 I swam across the whole depth/width of the river.
   - 5 There's a little stream/tide at the end of our garden.
   - 6 Sadly the dog drowned/sank when the ship capsized.
   - 7 You can stand up in the river here; it's very narrow/shallow.
   - 8 Our furniture got very wet during the floods/tides.

5. Complete the texts with a suitable word in the correct form.
   We had some storms with very heavy rain last summer. The river which runs through the city
   (1) ________ its banks, and (2) ________ serious floods. The water was quite
   (3) ________: it was two metres in some parts, and you could see people's possessions
   (4) ________ in the water.
   We had a terrible day sailing on a (5) ________ in the mountains last weekend. The
   wind was very strong, and suddenly our little boat (6) ________ and we ended up in
   the water. We swam to safety, but watched the boat slowly (7) ________ to the bottom.
   Later we discovered it was very dangerous there, and last year someone (8) ________.
Our local beach¹ is mainly sandy, with a few rocks² and pebbles³ down by the shore. There's a steep cliff⁴ rising above the beach, and children often play in the caves⁵ there. At the end of the bay there's a small harbour⁶. When the weather's bad, the sailing boats⁷ are protected from the waves⁸ and the rough sea. We often see large ships⁹ on the horizon¹⁰.

### Glossary

- **coast**: the area of land that is close to or next to the sea or an ocean.
- **shore**: the land along the edge of the sea, a lake, etc.
- **steep**: a steep hill or cliff goes up quickly from a low place to a high one.
- **protect sb/sth from sth**: keep sb/sth safe from sth. protection n.
- **rough**: a rough sea has big waves. calm

### Which words are being defined?

- a small stone you find on a beach ... **pebble**
- the line between the land or the sea and the sky
- a large piece of stone
- an area of sand or small stones beside the sea
- a high steep area of rock next to the sea
- a large boat often used to carry passengers
- the land at the edge of the sea where there is sand or rocks
- a place where ships or boats are tied up and protected from the sea
- a large hole in a cliff or under the ground
- the area of land next to the sea
- an area of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve

### Complete the sentences.

- It was a nice day, so we went to the beach.
- When it's stormy, the sea gets very...
- A huge... hit the boat and we capsized.
- The harbour... the little boats in bad weather.
- At one end of the beach there are rocks and pebbles, but the other end is...
- You can't climb the cliff, it's too...
- I could see a boat... the horizon.

### Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the picture. What are the words?
13 I can describe the climate  Do Units 11 and 12 first

A The weather

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/Phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pour (with rain)</td>
<td>It’s pouring outside!</td>
<td>rain heavily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soaking wet</td>
<td>It was pouring with rain and I got soaking wet.</td>
<td>extremely wet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drizzle V, N</td>
<td>It was drizzling when I left the office.</td>
<td>rain lightly, with very small drops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rainbow</td>
<td>Did you see the rainbow?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitterly cold</td>
<td>It’s bitterly cold today.</td>
<td>extremely cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chilly</td>
<td>It gets chilly in the evening.</td>
<td>a little too cold to be comfortable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mild</td>
<td>It’s been a very mild winter.</td>
<td>warmer than usual for the time of year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heatwave</td>
<td>I hate this heatwave!</td>
<td>a period of unusually hot weather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muggy SYN humid</td>
<td>It’s really muggy today.</td>
<td>warm and damp in an unpleasant way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mist N misty adj</td>
<td>You get a lot of mist in the mornings in autumn.</td>
<td>thin cloud near the ground which is difficult to see through (not as thick as fog).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frost N frosty adj</td>
<td>There was a frost last night; there’s ice on the car.</td>
<td>the weather condition when the temperature is below 0ºC and ice forms on windows, the ground, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breeze N breezy adj</td>
<td>It’s hot today, but there’s a lovely breeze.</td>
<td>a light wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gale</td>
<td>There were gales last night.</td>
<td>a strong wind.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Tick (√) the correct answer.

Which is colder?
1 Which is stronger?
2 Which is colder?
3 Which is warmer?
4 Which means more water?
5 Which is harder to see through?
6 Which means more water?

√ a chilly day
□ a mild day
□ a breezy morning
□ a foggy evening
□ I got wet.
□ I got soaked.

2 Complete the words in the texts.

While we were out, it suddenly started to pour with rain. We didn’t have an umbrella, so we got soaked. When the rain stopped, the sun came out and we could see a rainbow. It wasn’t cold; in fact, it was quite a mild day for November.

She woke up. It was bitterly cold, and she noticed the frost on the windows. By midday, though, the temperature had gone up. As she left the house, she felt a few drops of rain on her head, then it drizzled for the rest of the day.

Last summer was unusually hot; we had a heatwave which lasted for several weeks, and it was incredibly humid and unpleasant at night.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words/phrases and examples in the table and look at the meanings. What are the words?
OUR ENVIRONMENT

Global warming is the gradual increase in the average temperature of the earth's atmosphere, and is caused by harmful gases. Many environmentalists believe that most of this pollution is the result of human activities. Here are some of the effects:

- As the ice at the poles melts, sea levels could rise by almost a metre in the next century.
- There will be more extreme and unpredictable weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.
- The earth will become even warmer because the rainforests are disappearing.
- Famine and disease will spread, and this will especially affect people in poor countries.

Glossary

- climate: the normal weather conditions of a particular region.
- (the) environment: the natural world; the air, land, and water in which people, plants, and animals live (an environmentalist is sb who studies the environment).
- gradual: happening slowly over a long period of time. gradually adv.
- the atmosphere: the gases around the earth, planets, etc.
- harmful: causing damage, injury, or illness. harm sth/sb v.
- gas: a substance like air, e.g. oxygen and hydrogen.
- pollution: dirty and dangerous gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment. pollute v.
- human: connected with people.
- melt: If you heat ice, it melts: it changes from a solid to a liquid.
- rise: increase; go higher. rise n. opp fall v. n.
- extreme: much hotter, colder, or more violent than usual.
- unpredictable: If sth is unpredictable, you can't say how it will change in the future. opp predictable. predict v.
- disappear: stop existing. syn vanish.
- famine: A famine is when there is not enough food in a country.
- disease: illness in people, animals, or plants.
- spread: affect more and more people or things.
4 Complete the words.
   1. h u m a n
   2. p r i n t a b l e
   3. f i r e n e
   4. h __ r m f __ l
   5. a t m o s p h e r e
   6. d i s e a s e
   7. p l l t
   8. l _ g_u _ d
   9. d _ s s_e
   10. c l _ m _ t

5 Good or bad? Write G or B.
   1. Some kinds of animals are vanishing. __
   2. The flood water is falling. __
   3. Famine is spreading. __
   4. This liquid is harmful. __
   5. The weather is less extreme. __
   6. The earth's temperature is rising. __
   7. The ice at the poles is gradually melting. __
   8. The river is polluted. __

6 Circle the correct word.
   1. Ice is a __ liquid.
   2. How does the situation __ affect you?
   3. It's all very __ predictable/unpredictable; you never know what's going to happen.
   4. My brother studies the __ environment/an environmentalist.
   5. Global warming is caused by __ people/human activity.
   6. Eat your ice cream quickly - it's spreading/melting.
   7. Water is a __ liquid/gas.
   8. The rainforest is gradually disappearing/melting.
   9. There are harmful gases in the __ atmosphere/effect.

7 Complete the sentences.
   1. We had a lot of __ weather last year: a long heatwave and gales in the autumn. I think it's all part of __ change.
   2. If you freeze water, it changes from a __ to a __.
   3. The beach was __ with oil, which seriously __ the sea birds and animals.
   4. Environmentalists __ that there will be a __ in sea levels in the future.
   5. With __ warming, some kinds of plants and animals are __ very fast.
   6. Certain diseases __ from person to person very quickly.
   7. __ has a very __ effect on the environment.
   8. After many months without rain, there is a real danger of __ in this part of Africa.

8 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. How worried are you about global warming?
   2. Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?
   3. Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?
   4. Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?
   5. What kind of pollution is common in your country?

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
I can describe natural disasters

A Types of disaster

1. Hurricane: this word is used especially of storms in the western Atlantic. It is a violent storm with very strong winds. In other parts of the world, especially Asia, it is called a typhoon.

2. Earthquake: a sudden violent movement of the ground causing damage.

3. Tidal wave: a very large ocean wave that is caused by a storm or earthquake, and which destroys things when it reaches land.

4. Volcanic eruption: a volcano is a mountain with a hole in the top, and when it erupts, hot gases and lava are forced out into the air and onto the surrounding land.

5. Drought: a long period with no rain. Crops die, and people may starve to death.

Glossary

disaster a very bad event, causing harm or death.
violent very strong and usually causing damage. violence n.
sudden happening very quickly. suddenly adv.
ground the top part of the earth's surface that people walk on.
damage harm or injury caused when sth is broken. damage v.
destroy sth break sth completely so it can't be used again. destruction n.
erupt explode and throw out fire, burning rocks, etc.
lava hot liquid rock (see picture).
surrounding that is near or around sth. surroundings n.
crops plants that are grown for food, e.g. rice and potatoes.
starve (to death) suffer or die because you don't have enough food.

1. Combine five more pairs of words from the box to form compound words or phrases.
   - earth ✓ volcanic tidal surrounding starve land
   - eruption violent wave quake ✓ to death storm

2. What nouns are formed from these adjectives and verbs?
   - volcanic volcano 2 violent 4 surrounding
   - destroy 1 erupt 3 5 damage

3. Complete the words in the sentences.
   - When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.
     1. During the h____________, winds reached over 150 kph, and many homes were either completely d____________ or badly d____________. It was a terrible d____________ for the island.
     2. They expect a period of d___________. the c__________ will die and people could s____________.
     3. The volcano e__________ without warning and the g__________ was covered in red, hot l__________.
     4. There was a s__________ and v__________ storm. It was the beginning of the t__________.

4. Test yourself. Cover the texts and look at the pictures. Can you name each disaster and what happens?
EARTHQUAKE HITS KASHMIR

Late last night a sudden earthquake struck the region of Kashmir on the borders of India and Pakistan, and hundreds of people are thought to have lost their lives as buildings collapsed while they slept. Thousands have now been evacuated, but there are fears that many are still trapped inside their homes, so the death toll could rise. The damage has already been considerable and the next 48 hours will be crucial, not only to rescue more people but also to try to maintain supplies of water and electricity.

**Glossary**

- hit sth/sb: make sudden violent contact with sth/sb. syn strike sth/sb.
- collapse: If a building collapses, it falls to the ground. collapse n.
- evacuate sb: move sb away from a dangerous place. evacuation n.
- fear: a feeling that sth bad might happen. fear v.
- trap sb: If sb is trapped, they are inside sth and cannot get out.
- death toll: the number of people killed in a disaster, accident, etc.
- considerable: very large in size or amount.
- crucial: very important.
- rescue sb: take sb from a dangerous place to safety. syn save sb.
- maintain sth: make sth continue at a certain level.
- supply (pt. supplies): an amount of sth that you need.

5 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.
supply trap earthquake maintain strike/hit fear collapse evacuate rescue

When an earthquake (1) a city, there is always a danger that buildings will (2) and people will be (3) inside. As soon as the immediate danger has passed, the first job is to (4) people from the area, and (5) those in danger. At the same time, the government will send in (6) of food, water, and blankets to the disaster area. One of the hardest things of all is to (7) a supply of clean drinking water, and there is always the (8) that more people could die.

6 Replace the underlined words with a different word that has the same meaning.

Many people are afraid that there will be more earthquakes. **fear**
1 Many buildings fell to the ground.
2 It could be a **very important** decision.
3 The villagers have all been moved from the village.
4 There are people who are inside their homes and cannot get out.
5 Scientists believe the hurricane will reach and attack Florida within 24 hours.
6 The **number** of people killed could be as high as 2,000.
7 The storm has done a **great deal** of damage.
8 He was injured while trying to **take** his son to safety from the fire.

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
15 I can describe animals and insects

A Creatures great and small: wild animals and insects

Glossary

creature a living thing such as an animal, bird, fish, or insect.
wild living in natural conditions: not looked after by people.
insect a small animal with six legs, one or two pairs of wings, and a body in three parts.

1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

1. tier tiger
2. leopard
3. elephant
4. grilla
5. wale
6. sider
7. eale
8. sark
9. money

2 Which creature:

1. has wings? fly
2. has a tail? tale
3. has thick fur? grilla
4. has a trunk? eale
5. has stripes? tiger
6. has spots? leopard
7. has a beak and feathers? eagle

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the creatures.
Snakes
There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake. About 400 are poisonous, but more are harmless. In size, they vary enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are up to 10 metres and weigh 250 kilos. Snakes don’t need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can survive for months without eating.

Sharks
The average lifespan of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no bones in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they hunt, but only a few attack humans: more people die from bee stings than from shark attacks.

Glossary
poisonous producing a dangerous substance (poison) that can kill or harm you.
harmless not causing damage, injury, or illness. See harmful, harm, n., v.
vari (of a group) be different from each other.
up to used when saying the most an amount can be.
weight have a certain weight, which is how heavy sth is.
survive continue to live in a difficult situation. survival.
average normal or typical.
lifespan the time that sth is likely to live (for people, we say life expectancy).
bone
hunts to go after sth to catch and kill it.
attack sb/sth try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force. attack, n.
sting a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin. sting, v.

4 True or false? Write T or F.
1 The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F
2 Most snakes are poisonous. T
3 Most sharks are harmless to humans. F
4 Some snakes are longer than ten metres. T
5 Snakes can be as heavy as 250 kilos. T
6 Sharks have bones in their body. T
7 Sharks sting when they attack. T

5 Answer the questions.
1 Is attack a noun or a verb, or can it be both? Both
2 What is the noun from the verb survive? Survival
3 If animals have a lifespan, what do people have? Life
4 What is the noun from the verb weigh? Weight
5 What are the two adjectives from the noun harm, and ___________ and ___________

6 Complete the words in these animal facts.
1 Some snakes can survive for almost a year without food.
2 Nobody knows the average lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
3 People hunt sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee or wasp sting.
5 Snakes can grow up to ten metres long.
6 The size of sharks can vary from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.
7. Complete the sentences.

- A goat often has two horns on its head.
- A young cow is a ____________.
- The plural of mouse is ____________.
- Cows, sheep, and ____________ produce milk that people drink.
- A ____________ is like a small horse with long ears.
- A ____________ is like a mouse, but is larger.
- A ____________ lives in or near water, and can jump.
- A bull is the adult ____________ of the cow family.
- A ____________ is a group of cows.
- A ____________ is a large bird, similar to a chicken, that can be eaten.
- The general word for bulls and cows on a farm is ____________.

---

8. Complete these animals’ names.

- r ____________ t
- h ____________ e
- g ____________ t
- b ____________ l
- c ____________ f
- f ____________ g

---

9. ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions or ask another student.

1. Which of the animals on this page do people eat?

2. Do people keep these animals in your country? If so, why?
   - horses?
   - goats?
   - bulls?
   - donkeys?
   - mice?

---

10. Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.
Review: The world around us

Unit 11

1. Complete the questions and answers.

Space Quiz

Q How long would a rocket take to (1) Mars?
A It would take (2) 260 days.

Q Is the (3) the only (4) in the solar (5) where life (6) ?
A Yes, most (7) believe that to be true.

Q Who (8) the planet Venus?
A Most people think it was the ancient Greeks.

Q Who (9) the first American rocket to go into (10) ?
A Robert Goddard, in the early twentieth century.

Q What are 'Phobos' and 'Deimos'?
A They are two small moons or (11) which (12) the planet Mars.

Q How many stars are there in the (13) ?
A Nobody knows for sure, but some say (14) million ten thousand billion billion!

2. Complete the definitions.

- sun = the star that shines during the day
- explore = round a place in order to learn about it
- far-fetched = easy to believe
- revolve around something = go round something in a round
- experiment = a scientific in order to learn or find out about something
- scientist = a person who or teaches science
- confirm = say or show that something is or definite
- in other words: used for saying something in a way
- invent = create something that didn’t before

Unit 12

1. Circle the odd one out.

- boat (harbour) ship
- rock wave pebble
- 3 float sink drown
- 5 pond flood lake
- 2 stream river puddle
- 4 bank ocean shore
- 6 steep shallow deep

2. Complete the sentences.

- This river flows out to the sea.
- 1 The river is wide in some places but very in others.
- 2 Look! There’s something floating on the of the water.
- 3 They’re building a harbour to provide (harbour) for the boats in bad weather.
- 4 The boat in bad weather and one person nearly drowned.
- 5 Looking out to sea, there were a couple of large ships on the .
- 6 It wasn’t very nice on the boat because the sea was so
- 7 The canal is ten metres wide and the water is about two metres
- 8 We had to climb a cliff, which was very difficult.
3 One letter is wrong in each line. Cross out the word that is wrong and write the correct word at the end.

- When does the time come in this morning? tide
  1. There are large socks on the beach.
  2. They travelled by chip.
  3. There's a sleep cliff by the shore.
  4. We have a number of fish in our pony.
  5. We saw some fishing boots.
  6. Look out! There's a big cave coming.
  7. It rained heavily and we had a floor.
  8. Why did the boat pink?
  9. The river blows down to the sea here.
  10. It's a very sandy peach.

Unit 13

1 Complete the sentences.

- Cars and factories are causing a lot of pollution.
  1. It's ________________ with rain outside. The children will get very wet.
  2. What are the main ________________ of global warming?
  3. It's usually cold in January, but this winter it has been very ________________.
  4. Unfortunately, it's very hard to ________________ the future: anything could happen.
  5. It was very hot, but fortunately there was a lovely ________________ coming off the sea.
  6. Global warming is causing more ________________ weather conditions, which will ________________ people in different parts of the world in different ways.

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Pollution is damaging the air, land, and water in which we live. environment
  1. Global warming will cause ________________ to the environment.
  2. If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid.
  3. With global warming, sea levels will get higher.
  4. Famine could affect more people in a larger area.
  5. These changes may happen slowly over a period of time.
  6. Some rainforests will no longer exist.

Unit 14

1 Match two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box.

hurricane    earthquake ✓    tidal wave    volcanic eruption    drought

- Many buildings collapsed. earthquake
  1. Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain.
  2. Winds reached 150 kph.
  3. There was a huge volume of water.
  4. We've had months without rain.
  5. There was a sudden violent movement of the ground.
  6. When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach.
  7. Lava covered the surrounding villages.
  8. People are starving to death.
  9. Many trees were destroyed in the storm.
2 Match 1–7 with a–h.

1. The death
2. The school and several houses
3. They rescued
4. They need to maintain
5. People are trapped
6. The earthquake struck
7. People fear that

- There has been considerable...
a. in the early morning.
b. more people.
c. inside buildings.
d. toll could rise.
e. more will die.
f. damage.
g. collapsed.
h. supplies.

Unit 15

1. Complete the table with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Wild animals</th>
<th>Farm animals</th>
<th>Insects</th>
<th>Sea creatures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tiger</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| XX
| X
| XX
| X

2. What is the connection between each creature on the left and a word on the right?

- Tigers
- Snakes
- Leopards
- Elephants
- Eagles
- Bears
- Bees
- Goats

- Beak
- Stripes
- Trunk
- Spots
- Sting
- Horns
- Fur
- Poisonous

- Tigers have stripes.

3. Complete the crossword.

ACROSS
2. birds have these
5. [image of bone]
6. differ from each other
8. large animal, lives in the desert
9. bees can do this
10. a very intelligent animal
11. a young cow
12. how heavy something is
13. small creature with eight legs

DOWN
1. plural of mouse
3. long thin creature, moves along the ground
4. you can die if you eat or drink this
7. not causing injury or danger
9. large sea creature, can be dangerous
16 I can describe a range of food

A Fruit, vegetables, and herbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>plums</th>
<th></th>
<th>7</th>
<th>coconut</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>papaya</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>apricots</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>passion fruits</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>pomegranates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>raspberries</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>artichoke</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>sweetcorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>grapefruits</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>asparagus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>avocado</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>chickpeas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>figs</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>fennel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herbes:</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>basil</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>parsley</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>mint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>thyme</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>rosemary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the odd one out in each group.
   - fig coconut parsley raspberry
   - leek papaya artichoke asparagus
   - spinach basil mint rosemary
   - celery asparagus beetroot thyme
   - fig sweetcorn pomegranate coconut
   - stone grapefruit plum apricot

2 These vegetables are usually cooked, but which ones can you also eat raw? Write C or R.
   - spinach R artichoke __ beetroot __ fennel __ chickpeas __ celery __ broccoli __

3 Find five more fruits from the letters.
   - BARSERP Y ____________ 2 NOCUTOC ____________ 4 FRATUGERIP ____________
   - 1 MULP ____________ 3 PRTOCIA ____________ 5 DAROVAOC ____________

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
   - Do people eat these things in your country? Yes. / Yes, but not much. / No.
     - papaya ____________ coconut ____________ raspberries ____________ passion fruit ____________
     - plums ____________ basil ____________ parsley ____________ chickpeas ____________
     - asparagus ____________ artichoke ____________ sweetcorn ____________ fennel ____________

5 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
B Meat, fish, and seafood

1 veal (meat from a calf, which is a young cow)
2 calf's liver
3 kidney
4 duck
5 rabbit
6 trout
7 cod
8 sea bass
9 carp
10 salmon
11 oyster
12 squid
13 lobster
14 crab
15 clams
16 mussels

6 What's the missing letter? Write the correct word.

1 calf __d__ck __d__uck
2 __l__oster __o__bbit
3 __k__iney __t__rot
4 __s__quad __v__al
5 __t__eam __m__usels
6 __l__ive __s__amon

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Which meat do people eat most: veal, rabbit, or duck?
2 Which fish do people eat most: cod, carp, or salmon?
3 Which seafood do people eat most: crab, clams, or mussels?
4 Are there any kinds of seafood above that you never eat? Why?
5 Are there any kinds of meat above that you never eat? Why?
6 Are there any kinds of fish above that you never eat? Why?

8 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the different types of meat, fish, and seafood?
Who needs to diet?

I never go on a diet: it’s a waste of time. Diets list all the food that is good for you, but few people can keep them up. I haven’t put on weight in twenty years. Here’s why:

- I eat almost anything I like, but I don’t eat a lot. And I don’t eat junk food.
- I drink plenty of water. It’s better for you than fizzy drinks, and cheaper too.
- I avoid snacks between meals because most of them are fattening.
- I’ve cut down on the amount of food I eat in the evening.
- I get plenty of exercise.

Glossary

a waste of time a bad use of your time (also a waste of money).
good for you SYN healthy. opp bad for you / unhealthy.
keep sth up continue doing sth.
put on weight become heavier and fatter. opp lose weight.
junk food food which is not good for you (e.g. crisps).
plenty of sth as much of sth as you need.
fizzy drink a drink containing small bubbles of gas.
snack a small amount of food usually eaten between meals.
fattening making you fatter.
cut down on sth have less of sth.
exercise physical activity that keeps you healthy.

Spotlight diet

A person’s diet is the food they eat. It can be a balanced diet (all the right food the body needs), or a bad diet (too much of the wrong food). Some people diet / go on a diet, which means eating less to lose weight.

1. Good for you or bad for you? Write G or B.
   
   ➤ healthy food G
   1 junk food G
   2 fizzy drinks G
   3 plenty of water G
   4 fattening food G
   5 snacks between meals G
   6 a balanced diet G
   7 plenty of exercise G

2. Complete the sentences.

   ➤ Eat it – it’s good for you.
   1 They’re both going for a diet.
   2 She’s cut down on chocolate.
   3 I tried to diet but couldn’t keep it.
   4 That diet was a waste of time.
   5 He’s put a lot of weight.
   6 We’ve got plenty of orange juice.

3. Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

   ➤ You shouldn’t eat much cream and cheese: they’re fattening.
   1 You should drink of water: about 6 to 8 glasses a day.
   2 You should get plenty of . One good way is going to the gym.
   3 It’s difficult to down on the amount of salt you eat.
   4 Doing lots of exercise is better than going on a .
   5 I think diets are a of time and money.
   6 The problem with diets is that most people can’t them up.

4. ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write Yes or No.
Recipe for Cottage Pie

Ingredients
300 g minced beef
300 g potatoes
1 large onion
1 carrot
2–3 chopped tomatoes
300 ml beef stock
1 tablespoon of flour
butter, salt, and pepper

Peel the potatoes and boil until just cooked. Then mash them with butter.
Chop the onion and carrot. Fry the meat and vegetables quickly, then stir in the flour and cook for one minute. Add the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Then put it in a large dish, cover with the mashed potato and some butter, and bake in a hot oven for 30 minutes.

Glossary

recipe a set of instructions for cooking sth.
ingredients the food items you need to have to make sth to eat.
stock water with added flavour of meat, fish, or vegetables.
bake sth cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = roast).

Which word is being defined?
1. Remove the skin
2. Cut into many pieces
3. Put something with another thing
4. Press and mix until soft and smooth
5. Cook in water
6. Cook in oil
7. Cook in the oven without oil or fat
8. Cook in the oven with oil or fat

Complete the words in each sentence.
1. I've got a good recipe for spaghetti Bolognese, so we just need to buy the ingredients.
2. Add the meat to the vegetables and fry it for about 10 minutes.
3. The frying pan is fine, but I need a larger dish to serve the meat on.
4. You have to bake the cake in the oven for about 40 minutes.
5. If you add some flour, it will make the sauce thicker.
6. Add the sauce, then stir the rice continuously while it cooks.

Test yourself. Cover the text and say what you can see in the pictures. Then look at the food but cover the cooking instructions. How do you make Cottage Pie?
18 I can talk about money

A Buying things

1 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ If something costs €10 less than usual, it has €10 off.
   1. If you don't have enough money to buy something, then you can't afford it.
   2. If you ask to pay less than the normal price, you are asking for a discount.
   3. If the normal price is €60 and the shop sells it for €50, then it has been reduced by €10.
   4. The time when shops sell goods more cheaply than normal is called the sales.
   5. If you buy something which is a good price for the product, you can say it's a bargain.
   6. If you pay with €50 for something that costs €30, you should get €20 change.
   7. When you have paid, the shop assistant should give you a receipt.
   8. If you want your money back on a product, you can ask for a refund.

   Glossary

afford sth If you can afford sth you have enough money to pay for it.
scratch a mark on the surface of sth made by a sharp object (see picture).
discount a cut in the usual price of something.
   SYN reduction.
off If sth has €20 off, it costs €20 less than usual.
receipt a piece of paper that shows that sth has been paid for.
refund an amount of money paid back to you when you return sth to a shop.
the sales a time when shops sell things at a lower price.
reduce sth make sth less in size, quantity, or price. reduction N.
bargain sth that is a good price or is cheaper than usual.
change If sth costs €2 and you give the assistant €5, you get €3 change.

2 Complete the questions in the questionnaire.
   ▶ Do you keep the receipt when you've bought something?
   1. When you go shopping, do you always look for a bargain?
   2. If you saw a product in a shop that had a scratch on it, would you ask the shop assistant to take money off?
   3. Do you always check your change when you pay?
   4. Do you often wait and buy things in the sales? If so, what things?
   5. Do you often take things back and ask for a refund?

3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.
LOTTERY WINNER LOSES EVERYTHING!

Maria Costas was an ordinary working mum without much income until she won over €3 million on the lottery and became a very wealthy woman. She immediately bought a house worth €1 million, a car that cost a fortune, and jewellery valued at €250,000. Unfortunately, the house was a waste of money. She owned it for six months, never lived there, then had to sell it for much less than she paid for it. Maria also wasted huge amounts of money on designer clothes and foreign holidays, and within eighteen months she was completely broke. Now she owes the bank over €5,000, and has credit card debts as well.

4 Cover the text. Answer the questions.

► How did Maria become wealthy?
  1 How much was her new house worth?
  2 What was her jewellery valued at?
  3 How long did she own her new house?
  4 Why was the house a waste of money?
  5 How much does she owe the bank?
  6 Does she have any other debts?

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals.

► My boss has a lot of money. WEALTHY My boss is very wealthy.
  1 It’s a very large house. HUGE
  2 The house is worth €2,000,000. VALUE
  3 Rani hasn’t got any money. BROKE
  4 The flat doesn’t belong to me. OWN
  5 Her shoes were very expensive. FORTUNE
  6 Gisela has debts of €5,000. OWE

6 Complete the sentences.

► The watch went wrong after two months; it was a waste of money.
  1 My uncle won a huge amount of money, so he’s very rich off now.
  2 I haven’t got any money; I’m completely broke.
  3 It’s a nice flat, but it isn’t very expensive half a million euros.
  4 It’s an absolutely splendid school: there are about 2,500 students.
  5 He’s got a day job and an evening job, so he has a good income.

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

- income: the money you earn from work, plus any other money you receive.
- wealthy: rich. SYN well off.
- worth: If a flat is worth €3 million, you could sell it for €3 million (that is the value).
- cost a fortune: be very expensive.
- value sth at sth: decide what sth is worth, or what you could sell it for.
- waste of money: a bad use of money.
- own sth: If you own sth, it is yours; it belongs to you.
- huge: very large. SYN massive.
- amount: a quantity of sth; a sum of money.
- broke: SYN having no money.
- owe sb sth: have to pay money to sb for sth; they have done or given.
- debt: an amount of money that you owe sb.
19 I can talk about sleep

A Before, during, and after sleep

BEFORE: You feel sleepy, start yawning, and decide to go to bed. You might put on pyjamas or a nightie, perhaps set the alarm, and then get into bed. Soon, if you’re lucky, you fall asleep.

DURING: When you’re asleep, you have dreams and possibly nightmares. Some people snore: at this point they’re fast asleep.

AFTER: 7.30 a.m. The alarm goes off. It might wake you up, or you might be wide awake already. People without an alarm might oversleep, others might decide to have a lie-in.

Glossary

sleepy tired and ready to go to sleep.
fall asleep start sleeping. SYN go to sleep.
asleep sleeping.
nightmare a bad dream.
fast asleep sleeping deeply. SYN in a deep sleep.
wide awake.
go off ring or make a noise.
wake sb up make sb stop sleeping.
oversleep sleep longer than you should or want.
have a lie-in stay in bed later than usual.

Replace the underlined word or phrase with words or phrases with the same meaning.

I felt tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I went to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn’t fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn’t hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I felt terrible.

Complete the sentences.

1 Barry’s still in bed and he’s fast asleep. Do you want me to wake him up?
2 I felt really , so I went to bed.
3 I forgot to my alarm last night, and I’m afraid I this morning.
4 I don’t have to get up early tomorrow, so I think I’ll have a .
5 It was after midnight but I still felt wide
6 I felt really tired – I couldn’t stop .
7 My husband wears red in bed and so loudly that he keeps me awake.

Test yourself. Cover the text above. Say what you can see in the pictures.
B Sleep habits

Antonio: 'I sleep like a log wherever I am.'
Eila: 'If I eat late, I often have a restless night.'
Hiroko: 'I need a good night's sleep, otherwise I can't concentrate the next day.'
Raul: 'Lack of sleep makes me really irritable.'
Suzanna: 'I often have nightmares and wake up feeling exhausted.'
Carla: 'I've always been a heavy sleeper – nothing disturbs me.'
Nick: 'I suffer from insomnia, so I never get much sleep.'
Agnieszka: 'During the day, I often have a nap.'
Omar: 'When there are things on my mind – like exams – I sleep really badly.'

Glossary
habit a thing you do often, almost without thinking.
sleep like a log sleep very well. oor sleep badly.
have a restless night be unable to sleep well and often wake up.
concentrate (on sth) give all your attention to sth.
lack of sth a situation in which you don't have enough of sth (e.g. money, food, or sleep).
irritable becoming angry easily.
exhausted extremely tired, physically or mentally.
a heavy sleeper a person who doesn't wake up easily. oor a light sleeper.
disturb sb do sth to stop sb who is trying to sleep, work, etc.
suffer from sth have the experience of sth unpleasant.
insomnia If you suffer from insomnia, you are often unable to sleep.
have a nap have a short sleep, e.g. for half an hour.
on my mind If sth is on your mind, you're thinking or worrying about it.

4 Find six more phrases in the box.

concentrate a log insomnia a restful nap a heavy on something on night suffer from sleeper on my mind

a

c

b

d

e

f

5 Complete the sentences with suitable words or phrases.

1 I get very irritable if I don't sleep well.
2 These days I often have a __________ after lunch; it's almost become a __________.
3 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep __________.
4 I never sleep more than three hours a night – I suffer from insomnia.
5 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very __________ night.
6 I didn't sleep well last night because I've got a lot of things on my __________.
7 Nothing __________ me at night – I'm a very __________ sleeper.
8 I was absolutely __________ last night and I slept for ten hours.
9 I'm afraid I'm a bit irritable at the moment. I'm suffering from a __________ of sleep.

6 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student.
A Burns and cuts

Hold the affected area under running water for 15 minutes. Cover it with a dry, clean dressing to prevent infection. If symptoms of infection develop, see your doctor.

Wash and dry your hands thoroughly. Clean the wound under running water. Dry the area, and put a dressing over it temporarily while you clean the skin around the wound. Cover the cut completely with a dressing, or bandage it. It should heal up in a few days.

Glossary

cover sth - put sth over sth, especially to protect it.
prevent sth - stop sth from happening. prevention N.
infection - an illness caused by bacteria or a virus.
symptom - a change in your body which is a sign of illness.
develop - grow or increase.
thoughly - in a very careful and complete way.
wound - an area of damage to part of your body (especially a cut).
temporarily - for a short time only.
heal or heal up - become healthy again.

1 Complete the words.

pre v e n t
inf l e c t i o n
b a n d a g e

th...r...gh...l...
3 4

w...n d
6

s...m p t...m

p...l...y

7

d...v...l....p

8


2 Complete the texts.

I was cooking last weekend and picked up a hot pan and burnt myself. It was really painful. I held the (1) b... under (2) r... water for fifteen minutes, then I covered it (3) c... it with a dressing. I made sure it was clean because you have to (4) p... infection. Since then, it's got a lot better and I haven't had any (5) s... of infection.

I cut my hand yesterday. I cleaned the (6) w... under running water, then covered it (7) t... with a (8) d... , and washed the skin around it. I couldn't find a (9) b... , so I went to the chemist's for one. I probably didn't clean the wound (10) t... enough, as it hasn't (11) h... very well, and I think I've got an (12) i... .

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
A nasty injury

The other day I slipped and fell backwards and banged my elbow on the ground. I started to feel dizzy and then I fainted. I was unconscious for a minute or so.

When I came round, my arm was very painful. It was quite swollen and bruised, but it wasn’t bleeding. I realized it was a serious injury, so I went to hospital.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you come round, you are conscious. T
- If you bang your head, it always bleeds. F
- If you faint, you become unconscious. T
- If you lose blood, you always faint. F
- A bruised knee looks blue. T
- A nasty burn is a serious burn. T
- If you slip, you can easily fall. T
- Your elbow is at the end of your arm. T
- A swollen finger is bigger than usual. T
- Feeling dizzy is very painful. F
- Backwards is the opposite of forwards. T

Glossary

nasty very bad or unpleasant.

injury an area of damage done to sb’s body, especially in an accident. injure v.

backward(s) in the direction behind you. opp forward(s).

bang sth hit a part of your body against sth when you are moving.

dizzy feeling as if everything is turning around and you might fall.

unconscious in a state like sleep, often caused by an injury. opp conscious.

come round become conscious again. opp faint, pass out.

swollen larger than usual because of an injury.

bleed lose blood from your body.

5 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

The ball hit him next to his eye; his eye was quite the next day. bruised

1 I on the ice and fell over.
2 I know he slipped, but did he fall or forwards?
3 He fainted, and when he came he didn’t know where he was.
4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident.
5 She her head on the door and fell to the floor.
6 My finger was so I put a dressing on it.

6 ABOUT YOU Which of the following have you done or experienced? Tick them.

1 had a swollen eye.
2 fainted in a public place.
3 had a serious injury.
4 slipped and fallen into a river.
5 had a nasty burn on your arm.
6 lost quite a lot of blood in an accident.
21 I can talk about cars and driving

A The car

1. bonnet
2. windscreen wiper
3. windscreen
4. boot
5. wheel
6. tyre
7. door handle
8. wing mirror
9. number plate
10. headlights
11. engine
12. steering wheel
13. speedometer
14. ignition
15. rear-view mirror
16. gear stick/lever
17. accelerator
18. brake
19. clutch
20. horn

1. Combine words from the box to form six more compound words.
   - rear-view
   - gear
   - mirror
   - lever
   - wiper
   - handle
   - plate

   rear-view mirror

2. Outside the car or inside the car? Write O or I.
   - clutch I
   1. tyre
   2. speedometer
   3. steering wheel
   4. headlight
   5. brake
   6. rear-view mirror
   7. wheel
   8. horn
   9. windscreen wiper

3. Complete the sentences.
   - If you want to...
     - start the car, turn on the ignition
     1. stop, put your foot on the ...
     2. change gear, put your foot on the ...
     3. go faster, put your foot on the ...
     4. store luggage, open the ...
     5. look at the engine, open the ...
     6. see at night, turn on the ...
     7. turn a corner, look in your ...
     8. drive in the rain, turn on the ...
     9. warn someone, press your ...

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. How many things can you name?
Driving tips

TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always be prepared for bad road conditions and bad drivers.
- On wet roads, brake, steer, and accelerate gently to avoid skidding.
- Watch out for motorcyclists and cyclists; give them plenty of space when overtaking.
- In car parks, reverse into a parking space rather than drive into it.
- Keep to the speed limit and don’t drive too close to the vehicle in front.

Glossary

- tip: a piece of practical advice.
- be prepared for sth: be ready and able to deal with any problems.
- prepare v.
- brake: go more slowly or stop a vehicle by using the brakes.
- steer: control the direction a vehicle is moving in.
- accelerate: go faster, or slow down.
- skid: suddenly move sideways without control.
- watch out: be careful because there is a possible danger.
- overtake sb/sth: go past sb/sth that is going more slowly.
- reverse: go backwards in a car.
- rather than: instead of, in place of.
- speed limit: the highest legal speed at which you can drive on a road.
- close to sth: near sth.

**spotlight** keep

Keep often means ‘continue or stay in a particular place or condition’.

**Keep to the speed limit.** (Stay below the speed limit.)

**Keep left.** (Stay on the left.)

5 Cover the glossary, then complete the meanings.

- brake = ...stop... a vehicle
- overtake = go ...another car
- accelerate = go ...
- reverse = go ...
- tip = a piece of ...
- steer = control the ...of the vehicle
- rather than = ...of

6 Complete the sentences.

- You shouldn’t ...overtake... on a bridge.
- The weather was awful and I wasn’t really ...for it.
- I never go over the speed ...or drive too ...to the cars in front.
- He crashed into the tree after he ...on the wet road.
- There’s a school on the corner, so ...out for small children.
- Do you always ...to the speed limit?
- I parked in the street ...than the car park because it’s free.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are these useful tips, or did you know them already?
2 Do you usually brake and accelerate gently?
3 Do you usually reverse into parking spaces in a car park? Why/Why not?
4 Are there times when you don’t keep to the speed limit?
5 Do you know what to do if your car skids?
6 What do you do to prepare for bad winter weather?

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings.

What are the meanings?
22 I can describe travel problems and accidents

A Trains and planes

‘We had trouble getting to the airport because we got held up in traffic.’

‘I wanted to leave at 8.30, but my day return was only valid after 9.30.’

‘The train was due at 9.42 but it didn’t get in until 10.25.’

‘I was late because they cancelled my train without warning.’

‘The flight from Heathrow was delayed, so I missed my connecting flight to Palermo.’

‘My brother was meant to pick me up at the airport, but he didn’t turn up.’

Glossary

trouble (doing sth/with sth) a situation that causes a problem.

get/be held up If you get held up or are held up, sth has caused you to be late. syn be delayed.

day return a ticket to travel to a place and back again on the same day.

valid acceptable and able to be used.

due expected to arrive or happen.

get in (usually of a train or coach see picture) arrive.

cancel sth decide that sth that has been planned will not happen.

warning information that sth bad may happen.

connecting flight a flight that leaves soon after another one arrives.

meant to do sth If sb is or was meant to do sth, they have been asked to do it.

pick sb/sth up go to a place and collect sb/sth (usually in a car).

turn up arrive or appear (often used in the negative).

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- I got my connecting flight. G.
  1 The train was cancelled. .......
  2 The train’s due in a minute. .......
  3 They didn’t turn up. .......

4 This ticket is still valid .......

5 I couldn’t get a day return .......

6 They didn’t get held up .......

7 We were delayed .......

2 Complete the sentences.

- My husband was meant to meet me, but he didn’t turn up.
  1 They’ve just said the train is ......... in five minutes, so that’s good.
  2 The plane to Madrid was late, so I missed my ......... flight to Malaga.
  3 We had a lot of ......... at the border: we were ......... for two hours.
  4 Passengers arrived late because the train company ......... two trains this morning.
  5 I was ......... to meet them at the station, but I got ......... up in the traffic.
  6 What time does your train ......... in?
  7 He’s gone to the airport to ......... them up.
  8 There was no ......... that trains might be cancelled.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Do most trains get in on time, or are they often delayed? If delayed, why?

2 When did you last miss a train or plane? Why, and what happened?
Hi Sammy

We've just got back from a little trip to Spain. We stayed overnight in Malaga, then hired a car and drove up to Seville, stopping off at Osuna on the way. We loved Seville - you really must go there. We also went down to Cadiz, via Jerez, but the journey was a nightmare! We got stuck in a traffic jam for hours, and when we finally ended up on the outskirts of Cadiz, there was more heavy traffic because of the rush hour. Still, it was nice when we got there. We went to...
A road accident

Here is the latest travel news...

There's been a serious accident on the M3 outside Winchester. It occurred just after 7:00 a.m., when a van skidded on the wet road and collided with other vehicles. The accident has blocked two lanes of the motorway. Emergency services are at the scene of the accident, and motorists are being advised to avoid the area.

And on the M23 at Junction 9 near Gatwick, an ambulance has broken down while taking an injured driver to hospital. This is causing delays for traffic on the way to the airport...

Glossary

- serious accident: a bad or dangerous accident.
- occur: happen, especially in a way that has not been planned.
- van: a vehicle, e.g. a car, bike, bus, or lorry.
- skid: suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control.
- collide with sth: hit sth very hard while moving.
- vehicle: a part of a wide road marked by painted white lines.
- lane: emergency services: the police, ambulance, and fire services.
- road, etc.: avoid sb/sth: stay away from sb/sth.
- ambulance: break down: (of a vehicle) stop working.
- injured: hurt physically.

8. One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- injured
- serious
- emergency
- occur
- block
- lane
- break down
- injured

9. Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- Was it a bad accident? serious
-Fortunately the driver wasn't hurt.
-There are too many cars, vans, and lorries on the road.
-The van crashed into another car.
-The car went sideways out of control on the icy road.
-The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes.
-The accident happened late last night.

10. Complete the sentences.

- The car was hit by a big van.
- We couldn't get by because there was a fallen tree on the road.
- I think the driver must have skidded on the ice.
- There was an accident last week when a woman was nearly killed.
- You should move into the outside lane to overtake another car.
- The car collided with other vehicles on the way to the airport and had to ring for help.
- Several people were injured, and they were taken to hospital.

11. Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.
A Clothes

1. cap
2. cotton blouse/shirt
3. belt
4. waistcoat
5. denim skirt
6. high-heeled leather boots
7. earrings
8. bracelet
9. silk dress
10. short sleeves
11. collar
12. tights
13. necklace
14. ring
15. V-neck sweater
16. button
17. suede shoes
18. pocket

Spotlight: jewellery and material
Necklace, bracelet, ring, and earrings are all examples of jewellery.
Cotton and silk are types of material.
Syn: fabric.
Leather and suede are materials made from animal skin.

Underwear:
1. bra
2. knickers
3. slip
4. underpants
5. vest
1. Complete the words.
   - kn__c__k__e__rs
   - 1  n__d__ e__ w__ r
   - 2  m__ t__ r__ l
   - 3  s__ l__ v__
   - 4  t__ l__ t
   - 5  s__ d__ e
   - 6  n__ c__ l__ e
   - 7  b__ l__ s__ e
   - 8  e__ a__ i__ n__ s
   - 9  v__ t
   - 10  b__ t__ n

2. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.
   - Amy's wearing a necklace. __F__
   - Amy's wearing a belt. __
   - Gavin's wearing a ring. __
   - Beth's wearing tights. __
   - Beth's dress has got two buttons on it. __
   - Gavin's wearing denim jeans. __
   - Amy's blouse has got short sleeves. __
   - Beth's dress has got two pockets. __
   - Beth's wearing high-heeled shoes. __
   - Amy's wearing earrings. __

3. Complete the table with words from the box.
   - cotton  skirt  waistcoat  vest  bracelet  leather  cap
   - underpants  ✓  ring  necklace  slip  bra  blouse
   - suede  earrings  silk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Underwear</th>
<th>✓ underpants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jewellery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clothes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Complete the questions with words from the box.
   - belts  leather  cap ✓  denim  ring  neck  sleeves  silk  bracelet  material

   - Do you ever wear a cap? If so, when and why?
   - Do you wear a __________? If so, on which finger(s)?
   - Do you wear a __________? If so, on which wrist?
   - How many leather __________ have you got?
   - How many pairs of __________ jeans have you got?
   - What have you got that is made of __________ or __________?
   - Have you got any V- _________ sweaters? If so, what colour?
   - In summer, do you wear short __________ a lot?
   - Do you have a favourite __________? If so, what?

5. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the items?
Three golden rules for fashion

Fashion expert Alyson Walsh says that every stylish woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' – a timeless collection of clothes for every occasion. This includes: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, knee-length skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what suits you and your figure. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the basics (your capsule wardrobe) and don’t worry too much about fashionable clothes – you probably won’t wear them after one season.
- Choose neutral colours: black, cream, white, and dark blue. Neutrals look elegant, and are versatile and easy to match. Just think of Armani fashions, year after year.
- A simple outfit can be transformed with the latest fashion accessory, e.g. a belt.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stylish</td>
<td>attractive and fashionable. style n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suit</td>
<td>If something suits you, it looks good on you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figure</td>
<td>the shape of the body, especially that of a woman.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashionable</td>
<td>popular at the present time. opp. unfashionable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>(of a colour) not strong or bright. neutral n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elegant</td>
<td>attractive and well designed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versatile</td>
<td>having many different uses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>look good with something else. matching adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outfit</td>
<td>a set of clothes that you wear together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transform sth</td>
<td>change sth completely. usually in a positive way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latest</td>
<td>new or very recent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accessory</td>
<td>sth you wear or carry that goes with your clothes, e.g. a bag.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Circle the correct answer.
- It’s a very versatile/fashionable jacket – I can wear it on different occasions.
  1. You should buy that blouse; it suits/matches your skirt.
  2. She wore a very unfashionable/stylish jacket – it looked awful.
  3. I need to get a new figure/outfit for my brother’s wedding.
  4. This coat is the latest/neutral fashion, but I don’t particularly like the style/figure.
  5. I think that dress really matches/suits you.
  6. My mother’s got a versatile/very good figure.
  7. You can make a simple dress look great with the right outfits/accessories.
  8. I always wear neutral/bright colours, but they can be a bit boring.

8 Complete the sentences.
- She can wear tight jeans because she has such a good figure.......
  1. I bought some pink shoes and a .................. handbag; they look great together.
  2. I’d love to be like Mary; she looks so .................. whatever she wears.
  3. I want a pair of those trousers; they’re the .................. fashion.
  4. She never wears red – it doesn’t ................. her.
  5. Black is very .................. because you can wear it with almost anything.
  6. She’s got a new hairstyle and it completely .................. the way she looks.
  7. Expensive .................. such as bags and belts can have a big effect on how you look.
  8. I really like her new .................. because it all works well together.

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
Review: Daily Life

Unit 16

1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herbs</th>
<th>Fruit</th>
<th>Vegetables</th>
<th>Fish</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
<th>Meat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 17

1 Complete the definitions.

1 junk food = food which is ___________ good for you
2 cut down on food = eat ___________ food
3 healthy food = food which is ___________ for you
4 a waste of money = a ___________ use of your money
5 put on weight = become ___________

6 fry = cook in ___________
7 bake = cook in the oven ___________ oil or fat
8 chop = ___________ into small pieces
9 fattening = making you put on ___________
10 recipe = a set of instructions for ___________ something

Unit 18

1 Complete the crossword, using the clues at the top of the next page. The letters in the grey squares spell out another phrase related to money. What is it?

```
1 3 4 5
6 7 8
9 10 11 12
```
1 a piece of paper that shows that something has been paid for
2 informal phrase meaning ‘wealthy’ (two words)
3 a time when shops sell things at a lower price (two words)
4 a bad use of something, e.g. money or time
5 If something costs €15, you give the shop assistant €20 and you get €5
6 haven’t got enough money to do something (two words)
7 informal word for having no money
8 a very good price for something you are buying
9 the amount of money that you owe someone
10 a lower price than before
11 the total sum of money
12 massive

The letters in the grey squares make the phrase

Unit 19

1 Complete the text with suitable words.

**Insomnia: how to get a good night’s sleep**

Many people suffer from insomnia. They may not be able to (1)______ asleep. Others may wake up during the night and not (2)______ back to sleep again: or they may wake up too early in the morning.

Is it a serious problem?

No, not really, but if you suffer from a (3)______ of sleep, it can make you feel tired, depressed, and (4)______

It can also make it hard to (5)______ on your work during the day.

How much sleep do I need?

Adults need 7–8 hours a night. If you feel (6)______ during the day, you aren’t getting enough sleep at night.

However, sleep (7)______ may change with age. For example, older people may sleep less at night but have a (8)______ during the day.

What is a sleep diary?

A sleep diary can help you understand your sleeping patterns. You have to keep a record of when you go to sleep and wake up, how often you have a restless (9)______, etc. And if you sleep badly, you can write down whether you have things on your (10)______, for example, family problems, or worries at work.

Unit 20

1 Read the definitions and complete the words.

- ban[dage] thin white cloth you tie around a cut or wound
- bl[sed] lose blood from the body
- di[lusion] feeling as if everything is turning round and you might fall
- pre[vent] stop something from happening
- sym[ptom] a change in your body which is a sign of illness
- inf[ected] an illness caused by bacteria or a virus
- inj[ured] an area of damage in the body, often caused by an accident
- dev[elop] grow, increase, or change into something
- tho[ught] in a very careful and complete way
Unit 21

1 Match 1–7 with a–h to make compound words.
   ► wing ..... g. ..... a stick
   1 steering ..... b. ..... wiper
   2 gear ..... c. ..... handle
   3 speed ..... d. ..... mirror
   4 rear-view ..... e. ..... plate
   5 door ..... f. ..... wheel
   6 number ..... g. ..... mirror
   7 windscreen ..... h. ..... limit

Unit 22

1 Tick (✓) the words that are possible in the sentence.
   ► We were stuck [✓] delayed [✓] stopped off [☐] in a traffic jam.
   1 The train was cancelled [☐] held up [☐] collided [☐].
   2 We stopped on the outskirts [☐] the rush hour [☐] the way [☐].
   3 He turned up in a lane [☐] a vehicle [☐] an ambulance [☐].
   4 They crashed into a coach [☐] a van [☐] an accident [☐].
   5 The car broke down [☐] hired [☐] crashed [☐].
   6 The passengers were turned up [☐] injured [☐] delayed [☐].
   7 I’ve got a valid ticket [☐] a day return [☐] a traffic jam [☐].
   8 The train gets in [☐] is due [☐] ends up [☐] at two o’clock.

2 Complete the phrases with a suitable verb.
   ► crash [☐] into another vehicle
   1 h. [☐] a car
   2 p. [☐] your friend up at the station
   3 t. [☐] up late for a flight
   4 g. [☐] held up in traffic
   5 s. [☐] on the ice
   6 s. [☐] off on the way for a coffee
   7 e. [☐] up in the wrong place

Unit 23

1 Circle the one which is different.
   ► blouse waistcoat sweater [☐] outfit
   1 cap style boot sweater
   2 leather bracelet suede cotton
   3 collar pocket dress sleeve
   4 cotton denim silk vest
   5 earrings button necklace ring
   6 suede fashionable elegant versatile
   7 bra knickers underpants underwear

2 Complete the sentence so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.
   ► I don’t like strong colours.
   1 You can wear this blouse with anything.
   2 Her bag’s the same colour as her shoes.
   3 Her new hairstyle looks really good on her.
   4 I need a new skirt and jacket for work.
   5 I’m going to get a necklace and some earrings.
   6 I don’t like cotton or silk.
   I like neutral colours.
   This blouse is very ................
   Her bag ................ her shoes.
   Her new hairstyle ................ her.
   I need a new ................ for work.
   I’m going to get some ................
   I don’t like these .................
I'd had toothache for a couple of weeks. When I tried to bite or chew on one of my back teeth, it was very painful. I needed to have a check-up anyway, so I rang the dental surgery and made an appointment for Friday. The dentist examined my teeth and told me I needed two fillings, and said he would have to take out the tooth which was causing the pain. I've got to go back for treatment on Tuesday, and I'm dreading it.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have toothache</td>
<td>have a pain in your tooth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite sth</td>
<td>cut sth with your teeth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chewing</td>
<td>use your teeth to break up food in your mouth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painful</td>
<td>If something is painful, it hurts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check-up</td>
<td>a medical or dental examination to see if you are healthy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dental surgery</td>
<td>a place where a dentist sees you (also doctor's surgery).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make an appointment</td>
<td>arrange a time to go to a dentist, doctor, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine sb/sth</td>
<td>look at sb/sth very carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filling</td>
<td>a mixture that a dentist puts in your tooth to fill a hole.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take out a tooth</td>
<td>remove a tooth from your mouth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause sth</td>
<td>be the reason that sth happens, often sth bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treatment</td>
<td>the things a doctor or dentist does to make you better. treat sb v.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight  dread, look forward to

If you are dreading something, you are afraid of something that is going to happen. If you are looking forward to something, you are happy or excited about something that is going to happen.

I dread going to the dentist.
My treatment finishes tomorrow; I'm really looking forward to that.

1. Complete the sentences with I, The tooth, or The dentist.

   1. _______________ needed a check-up.
   2. _______________ examined my teeth.
   3. _______________ was having a toothache.
   4. _______________ made an appointment.
   5. _______________ was dreading going to the surgery.
   6. _______________ gave me a filling.
   7. _______________ had to have some treatment.
   8. _______________ was treated at the surgery.
   9. _______________ was painful.
   10. _______________ bit on an apple and hurt my tooth.

2. Complete the questions.

   How often do you have a check-up?

   1. Do you _______________ forward to going to the dentist? Why/Why not?
   2. What's your dental _______________ like?
   3. When did you last _______________ toothache?
   4. When did the dentist last give you a _______________?
   5. Is it ever _______________ when you bite or _______________ your food?
   6. When did a dentist last _______________ out one of your teeth?

3. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4. Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
GOING INTO HOSPITAL

**Your doctor is concerned about you.**

- He sends you to see a specialist.

**You may have tests, X-rays, or scans.**

- The specialist decides how to treat you.

**You may have an operation immediately if it is urgent.**

- The surgeon explains the benefits and risks to you, the patient.

**After the operation you return to the ward, where the nurses care for you.**

- The operation is successful. When you are well enough, you can go home to recover.

---

**spotlight:** **enough**

You can use **enough** after adjectives and adverbs. It means ‘as good, well, old, long, etc. as is necessary’.

*She’s not well enough to go out.* (She needs to feel better before she can go out.)

*He’s strong enough to get up.* (He has the strength he needs to get up.)

You can also use **enough** before plural and uncountable nouns.

*There aren’t enough doctors.* (We need more doctors.)

*I haven’t got enough money.* (I need more money.)
1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- specialist  
- consultant  
- immediately  
- recover  
- patient  
- straightway  
- urgent  
- well  
- sucessful  
- benifit  
- surgeon  

2 Circle the correct answer.

- The patient/surgeon has the operation.
- The consultant/patient goes into hospital.
- The specialist/patient orders the scans.
- The consultant/patient may have to have an X-ray.
- The specialist/patient may need treatment urgently.
- The surgeon/patient explains the benefits of the treatment.
- The patient/nurse cares for the person after the operation.
- The specialist/patient gets over the illness.
- The nurse/patient works on the ward.

3 Complete the conversation with suitable words.

A Hi, Mary, how are you?
B Oh, not too bad, but I'm a bit concerned about my eye.
A I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?
B Well, I've just been to hospital to see a (1) c______ and I had some (2) t______ too, to see what was wrong. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an (3) o______ .
A Oh, dear. Is it (4) u______
B Yes, I have to have it done (5) s______ – I've got to go (6) i______ hospital tomorrow.
A Are there any (7) r______ with the treatment?
B I don't think so; it's a very simple operation, and it's usually very (8) s______ : 98 per cent of people can see better afterwards.
A And when will you be well (9) e______ to start work again?
B He said I'll need a week to (10) g______ o______ the operation. My sister is going to (11) c______ of me at home.
A Well, good luck – I hope it goes well.

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When?
2 Have you ever visited a patient in hospital? If so, when, and who was it?
3 When patients are on a ward, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too?
4 Can you see a specialist straightaway in your country, or do you have to wait? If so, how long?
5 Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a specialist?
6 Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation?

5 Test yourself. Cover the meanings in the table and look at the procedures. Can you remember the meanings of the new words?
26 I can explain household tasks

A Using tools and household objects

You use a hammer to bang a nail into a piece of wood.
You use a screwdriver to tighten or loosen a screw.
You use a drill to make a hole. A hammer, a screwdriver, and a drill are tools.

You use a needle, pins, scissors, and cotton/thread when you're sewing.
You use string, rope, or wire to tie things together.
You use Sellotape or glue to stick things together.

1 Circle the correct word.
   ▶ Stick it together with glue/cotton.
   1 Sew it with a pin/needle.
   2 Cut it with scissors/a drill.
   3 Tighten it with a hammer/screwdriver.
   4 Tie it together with rope/nails.
   5 Bang it in with string/a hammer.
   6 Make a hole with thread/a drill.
   7 Stick it together with Sellotape/wire.
   8 Loosen the screw/cotton.

2 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with Sellotape.
   1 I've got a hammer and a screwdriver, but I haven't got any other .
   2 When you make a skirt, you cut the fabric with , you hold the pieces together with pins, and then you it with a needle and .
   3 If you break the handle off a cup, you can it on with .
   4 I tied all the keys together with a piece of .
   5 If the screws on your door handle are loose, use a to them.
   6 A drill is very useful if you need to make a in a wall.
   7 Pass the hammer and I can bang this .
   8 We a long rope to the tree for the children to play on.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?
Our flat: things to do
- The lamp isn't working. Try changing the light bulb.
- The radiator's leaking. We'll have to repair it.
- The window's cracked. It needs replacing.
- The TV isn't working properly.
- The radio is faulty.
- The bedroom needs decorating.
- There's something wrong with the door. It keeps sticking.
- The lift's out of order. I hope they fix it soon.
- There's a stain on the carpet which we need to remove.

**Meaning**

If sth isn't working, it isn't functioning or it's broken.

leak allow liquid or gas to go through a hole or crack. **leak n.**

**cracked** (see picture)

replace sth exchange sth for sth that is better or newer.

**properly** correctly or well.

faulty not working well; only working sometimes.

decorate a room put paint or paper on the walls.

**wrong** causing problems or difficulties.

**stick** be in one position and difficult to move.

**out of order** If a machine or piece of equipment in a public place is out of order, it isn't working.

**stain** N, V (see picture)

remove sth take sth away.

---

**Spotlight: repair, fix, or mend sth**

**Repair sth, fix sth, and mend sth** all mean 'put sth right that is broken or damaged'.

Can you repair/fix the fridge? It took ages to repair/mend the roof.

We use **mend** and **repair**, rather than **fix**, to talk about repairing clothes.

I **mended** the hole in my pocket. I must get my shoes **repaired**.

---

**Tick (✓) the words which are possible.**

- My shoe has a hole in it. Can you repair ✓ mend ✓ remove □ it for me?
- 1 This table's broken. We need to decorate □ fix □ repair □ it.
- 2 Is the bedroom lamp OK? ~ No. It's faulty □ out of order □ not working □.
- 3 We're going to remove □ replace □ decorate □ the fridge.
- 4 We need a new lamp □ stain □ light bulb □.
- 5 The public phone is out of order □ is wrong □ isn't working properly □.
- 6 The radiator is leaking □ faulty □ sticking □.

---

**Complete the text.**

The house was in a terrible condition. The rain had come into all the bedrooms because the roof was *leaking*, and there were (1) _____________ on the walls and carpets. A builder (2) _____________ the roof for us, and after that, we had to (3) _____________ all the bedrooms. We also had to (4) _____________ several windows that were (5) _____________ . Then we realized that the central heating wasn't (6) _____________ , and it cost a lot to have it (7) _____________ . The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn't work (8) _____________ — some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, and the taps were (9) _____________ too. The previous owners had left two old cars in the garden and we had to pay someone to (10) _____________ them. It was all so expensive.

---

**Test yourself. Look at the text, and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?**
Mrs Bristow's Handy Housework Routine

Daily tasks
Make the beds and do the washing up. Clean the bathroom and kitchen. Wipe all surfaces with a soapy cloth to remove grease. Tidy up and throw away any rubbish.

Weekly tasks
Using a broom, sweep the area outside your front door to remove mud and general dirt. Wash the floors with a mop and bucket and warm, soapy water. Vacuum the carpets, and then dust or polish the furniture. Wipe the inside of the fridge.

1 Write the missing parts of speech.
   - dirty ADJ
   - dusty ADJ
   - mud N
   - greasy ADJ
   - vacuum cleaner N

2 Complete the phrases.
   - Do the daily tasks.
     1. __________ the floor to remove mud and dirt.
     2. Use a __________ to hoover the carpet.
     3. Tidy __________ the kitchen every day.
     4. Remove grease with a soapy __________.
     5. __________ the washing up.
     6. Use a __________ and __________ to wash the floor.
     7. __________ or __________ the furniture once a week.
     8. Use a cloth to __________ the kitchen surfaces.
     9. Use a broom to __________ the floor.
     10. __________ away any rubbish.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. Look again at Mrs Bristow's tasks. In your home, which do you do?

   2. Which tasks does someone else do in your home?
I'd like to **have** my hair cut / have a haircut.

I'm letting it grow long, so just trim it / give it a trim, please. I'd like to keep the fringe and the parting on the left.

I want to keep the same **hairstyle**, please. I'd like a cut and blow-dry (= dry with a hairdryer).

Could you **colour** it for me, please?

**Glossary**
- *let* allow sth to happen without trying to stop it.
- *trim sth* cut sth a little so that it is shorter and tidier. **syn** give sth a trim. **trim** n.
- *keep sth* make sth stay in a particular state or condition and not change.
- *hairstyle* the way your hair is cut and arranged.

**spotlight: have/get sth done**

If you have sth done or get sth done, you pay sb to do sth for you. Compare:

**I have my hair cut every month.** (I go to the hairdresser's.)

**I colour my hair every month.** (I do it myself.)

1. Complete the words.
   1. hair cut
   2. fr________e
   3. h____r st____e
   4. h____r d____r
   5. p____t____ng
   6. t____m
   7. c____r
   8. bl____w-d____r

2. Put the words in order, and add one more word.
   - going / I'm / hair / to / cut / have. I'm going to have my hair cut.
   1. could / colour / you / me / for / please?
   2. Sasha / her / letting / is / hair
   3. fringe / like / a / parting / I'd / and / a / right / the
   4. please / blow-dry / like / a / and / I'd
   5. want / please / hairstyle / same / I / to / the
   6. to / she's / her / trimmed / going / hair

3. **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. Are you letting your hair grow at the moment?
   2. When did you last have your hair cut?
   3. Have you got a fringe or a parting?
   4. Where do you get your hair cut?
   5. In your family, who has their hair permed or coloured?

4. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the requests?
Review: Getting things done

Unit 24

1 Read the dentist’s questions and statements. One word is missing in each one. Where from? Write it at the end.

> How long have you toothache? had
1 Is it when you bite? 
2 I will probably have to the tooth out.
3 This is the tooth which is the pain.
4 When did you last a check-up?
5 Can you come back to the tomorrow?
6 Just ask the receptionist to make an for you.
7 There’s a hole in this tooth – you need a.
8 I’m going to your teeth and then decide what you need.

Unit 25

1 Which words are being defined?

- a person who knows a lot about a subject
  - specialist
- give someone medical help to make them better
- worried about someone or something
- a doctor who operates on you
- another word for ‘immediately’
- something that has a good or helpful result
- look after someone, especially if they are ill
- become well after you have been ill
- a person who is ill and having medical treatment
- the place in a hospital where sick people stay
- a danger that something bad could happen

Unit 26

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

> I’m going to decorate the bedroom. Sandro doesn’t like the colour of the walls.
1 There’s a on the carpet. Do you know how to it?
2 Did you know the lift was order? Yes, but someone is going to it later today.
3 I’m afraid this radiator is ; there’s water on the carpet.
4 I’ve got a hole in my pocket. Could you it for me, please?
5 This lamp isn’t . Have we got any light?
6 I’m afraid there’s something the front door. We may have to get someone to it.
2 Which word is being described? Write it at the end.

- You use one when you're sewing. needle
- You use one to bang a nail in the wall.
- You use one to make a hole in the wall.
- You use one to tighten a screw.
- You use them to cut things.
- You use it to tie a boat to a wall.
- You use it to tie some sticks together.
- You use it to stick a broken bowl together.
- You use it to wrap a parcel.

Unit 27

1 Complete the sentences.

Mr Bristow's Handy Housework excuses

- I couldn't do the washing up because there was no hot water.
- I couldn't sweep the floor because I couldn't find the
- I couldn't wash the floor because there was a mop but no
- I couldn't hoover the carpets because the wasn't working.
- I couldn't away the rubbish because the bins were all full.
- I couldn't the furniture because the cloth was dirty.
- And I didn't the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anyway.

Unit 28

1 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- I like your new style of hair. I like your new hairstyle.
- I made my hair cut last week.
- I just want trim, please.
- I'd like a cutting and blow-dry, please.
- Are you leaving your hair grow?
- Can you pass me the scissor?
- She's got a parted on the left.
- I'm having my hair colour tomorrow.
- Can I borrow your hairdry?
A The inner city

I parked in the multi-storey car park and went the rest of the way on foot. The street lights had just come on, and I could see the pavements were filthy. At the entrance to the subway, there was an old guy begging for money. I gave him something and hurried on down. There was the usual graffiti all over the walls, and litter everywhere. I came up the other side and passed a man who was whistling quite cheerfully, but I found this part of the inner city so depressing that I wondered if my decision to walk had been a good idea.

Glossary

multi-storey car park - a large car park with several floors.
pavement - the part of the road where people walk.
filthy - very dirty.
subway - a tunnel that goes under a road or railway so people can walk to the other side.
beg - ask for food or money.
hurry - move or do sth quickly, syn rush.
graffiti - pictures or writing on a wall in a public place (often humorous or political).
litter - paper and rubbish that is dropped and left on the ground in a public place.
whistle - make a musical sound with your lips nearly closed.
inner city - the part of a large city which is near the centre and often poor.
depressing - making you feel sad and without hope.
wonder - ask yourself questions about sth.

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- hurry -> hurry
- filthy
- litter
- pavement
- graffiti
- deppresing

2 Complete the definitions.

- inner city = poor parts of a city, near the centre
- filthy = very dirt
- rush = move or do something
- pavement = place where people
- litter = paper droppped on the

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- My dog comes back to me when I whistle.
- I hate people who drop in the street. Why can't they put it in a bin?
- It's a dangerous road, so use the to get to the other side.
- Leila says that someone in our class is getting married. I who it is.
- You've got lots of time - you don't need to to get the train.
- Two men were cleaning the off the walls in the subway.
- The street was filthy and it was pouring with rain. It was very

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
The **area** where I live is **ideal**. It’s a **suburb** not far from the centre and it’s quite **lively**, but there’s still a feeling of **space**, and my block of flats is **surrounded by** trees. It’s also a **handy** place to live because there are good **local** shops, and a bus service that gets me into the centre in 15 to 20 minutes. The only **disadvantage** is that with the **growth** in the population, it’s gradually becoming more **built-up** than it used to be, which is a **shame**.

---

**Glossary**

- **suburb** an area outside the centre of a town, where a lot of people live.
- **ideal** perfect; the best possible.
- **lively** full of interest, and with things to do.
- **space** a place or area that is empty and not used.
- **surrounded by sth** if a building is **surrounded by sth**, that thing is all around it.
- **handy** near located near to things you need, syn **convenient**.
- **local** located in the area where you live.
- **disadvantage** a situation or thing that is not good or causes problems. syn **drawback**.
- **growth** an increase in size or number.
- **built-up** with a lot of buildings.
- **a shame** a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed. syn **a pity**.

---

**5 Same or different? Write S or D.**

- One of the **suburbs/areas** outside the centre. **S**
  1. The ideal/perfect place to live. _____
  2. A mountainous area/region. _____
  3. We need more growth/space. _____
  4. It was a pity/shame. _____

**6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.**

- There used to be lots of space, but now it’s a really **built-up** area.
  1. I live in a __________ about two kilometres from the centre.
  2. Unfortunately, the whole area is __________ by factories, which is a ____________.
  3. There are a few ____________ shops just round the corner.
  4. It’s very ____________ because it’s close to my children’s school and the place where I work.
  5. It’s a nice area with great shops; the only ____________ is that the bus service is terrible.
  6. We’ve found our ____________ house: it has absolutely everything we want.

**7 ABOUT YOUR AREA Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1. Is your area built-up, or is there a feeling of space? 
2. What is your home surrounded by? 
3. What local shops do you have? 
4. Is it a handy place to live for you? 
5. What are the disadvantages?
A substantial and impressive semi-detached house full of original features, and just a short walk from the town centre.

Inside, the hall leads to two spacious reception rooms and an enormous kitchen. Upstairs there are four bedrooms and two bathrooms on the first and second floors, with a narrow staircase to a further bedroom in the attic. There is also a basement which could be converted into a separate one-bedroom flat, and a cellar currently used to store things.

Outside, the house has pretty shutters either side of the front windows. There is a lawn at the front, and a drive provides plenty of parking. There is also a small walled garden at the back.

**Glossary**

- **substantial**: large and/or strong.
- **impressive**: (of a building) large and very good to look at.
- **semi-detached**: joined to one other house, forming a pair of houses.
- **original**: existing from the time when sth was first made or done.
- **feature**: an important part of sth, and often a part that you notice.
- **lead**: if sth leads to a place, you can go along it to that place.
- **spacious**: large, and having a lot of space.
- **enormous**: very large. Sx: huge, or tiny.
- **staircase**: a set of stairs.
- **attic**: the space or room under the roof of a house.
- **basement**: a room or part of a building that is partly or completely below ground level.
- **convert sth into sth**: change sth from one form or use to another.
- **separate**: not connected or together.
- **cellar**: an underground room without windows, where things are often kept.
- **currently**: at the moment (not actually).
- **store sth**: keep sth in a place for future use. storage n.
- **lawn**: an area of grass in a park or garden.
- **drive**: a wide path for cars that leads to the front door of a house.
- **walled**: if a garden or other area is walled, it has a wall around it (a wall is usually made of brick or stone).

**spotlight passage, corridor, hall**

A passage is a long, narrow way with walls on both sides that leads somewhere, e.g. an underground passage.

A corridor is a passage in a large building or on a train. A hall is a room or small passage just inside the entrance to a house.

1. Correct the spelling mistakes.
   - staircase _staircase_  
   - impersive _impressive_  
   - starcase _staircase_  
   - seperat _separate_  
   - atick _attic_  
   - kellar _cellar_  
   - basement _basement_  
   - featur _feature_
2 Circle the correct word.
   a. The flat is **substantial**/impressive, but not very attractive.
   b. I'm on the ground floor and my sister lives downstairs in the **cellar/basement**.
   c. There were no seats on the train, so I had to stand in the **hall/corridor**.
   d. There's a very wide **hall/corridor** in our flat.
   e. He parked his car in the **attic/drive**.
   f. Just after the newsagent's, there's a little passage/hall that leads to the High Street.
   g. We've got a small **field/lawn** in the garden where we sit in the summer.

3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.
   a. There's a **large** living room. **spacious**.
   b. The living room is absolutely **huge**.
   c. Where do you **keep** your garden furniture in the winter?
   d. They've got a **very small** garden.
   e. There's a very elegant **set of stairs** up to the first floor.
   f. The back door goes into the garden.
   g. We could **change** that room into a bathroom.

4 Complete the words in the text.
   My brother has just bought a very **substantial** six-bedroom house. It's a 1930s semi-
   **(1) d________** house, and **(2) c________** it is in terrible condition, but it will be very nice
   when he has done some work on it. As you approach it, there's a long **(3) d________** up to the
   front door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the hall **(4) l________** to the living
   room, dining room, and kitchen, and from the kitchen there are stairs down to a **(5) c________**
   **(6) s________** wine and other things. At the back there's a **(7) h________**
   garden, big enough for a football pitch, and around the garden there's a high stone
   **(8) w________**. There are two garages, and they might **(9) c________** one into a study.

5 Complete the sentences.
   a. At the back, there's a garden with a **huge** **lawn**.
   b. One of the main **c________** of the building is the beautiful windows.
   c. Can you see the smoke coming out of the **c________**?
   d. It's an old house and it still has the **c________** windows and fireplaces.
   e. There's a big cupboard in the hall which is useful for **c________**.
   f. I need about 100 **c________** to finish the low wall at the front.
   g. I'll have to go up on the **l________** to repair the chimney.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
   1. Have you got shutters at your windows? If so, are they on the outside or inside?
   2. Have you got a garden with a lawn? If so, what do you use it for?
   3. Is there an attic in your building? If so, what's in it?
   4. Have you got a basement or cellar? If so, what are they used for?
   5. Is there a drive outside your building?
   6. Would you describe any rooms in your home as spacious or tiny?

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
31 I can describe objects

A What's it made of? 🎧

A rubber tyre 
A woollen blanket / a blanket made of wool
Plastic toys
A metal ladder
A wax candle
A silver candlestick
A gold medal
A cardboard box
A steel pipe
A concrete bridge
Iron railings
A wooden fence / a fence made of wood

1 Circle the most logical word.
   ▶ a table made of wood/wool
   1 a rubber boot/book
   2 a concrete/cardboard wall
   3 a rubber ladder/tyre
   4 a wooden/woollen sweater
   5 a wooden/silver fence
   6 a silver/woollen medal
   7 a wax/wooden candlestick
   8 a plastic/concrete toy
   9 wax/gold earrings
   10 a plastic blanket/pipe
   11 concrete/metal railings

2 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ A sweater is often made of wool.
   1 Jewellery is usually made of silver / gold.
   2 Toys are usually made of wood / plastic.
   3 Bathroom and kitchen pipes are usually made of plastic / metal.
   4 A ladder is usually made of wood / metal.
   5 A box can be made of paper / wood / cardboard.
   6 A bridge can be made of iron / steel / concrete.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the words?
### Shapes and lines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shapes</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Lines</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>round, circular</td>
<td></td>
<td>straight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>square</td>
<td>square</td>
<td></td>
<td>curved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rectangle</td>
<td>rectangular</td>
<td></td>
<td>parallel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triangle</td>
<td>triangular</td>
<td></td>
<td>vertical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oval</td>
<td>oval</td>
<td></td>
<td>horizontal</td>
<td>diagonal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Complete the words.
   - straight
   - 1 point
   - 2 L-shape
   - 3 curve
   - 4 rectangle
   - 5 vertical
   - 6 circle
   - 7 round
   - 8 circle
   - 9 triangle
   - 10 horizon
   - 11 square
   - 12 parallel
   - 13 diamond
   - 14 star-shaped

5. Complete the sentences below with words from the box.

- A diagonal line connects opposite corners in a square.
- An egg is ___________.
- A computer screen is usually ___________.
- A DVD is ___________.
- The box your CD comes in is ___________.
- A shape with three sides is ___________.
- A knife is ___________ at the end.
- A ball has a ___________ surface.
- A ruler is ___________, not curved.

6. What can you see in the pictures?
   - A heart-shaped cushion / a cushion in the shape of a heart

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and lines in the table and cover the words. Say the words.
## 32 I can describe the senses

### A Seeing and hearing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Look carefully, and you can see the bridge over the river. From here it looks very small.</td>
<td>look 1 turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it. see know or notice sth using your eyes. look 2 seem from what you can see.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We watched TV for an hour.</td>
<td>watch sth look at sth for some time to see what happens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He appears to be very happy. A dog appeared from behind a tree.</td>
<td>appear 1 seem. appear 2 If sth appears, you suddenly begin to see it. OFF disappear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The children stared at the man with the long red hair.</td>
<td>stare at sb/sth look at sb/sth for a long time without moving your eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jay always notices what I’m wearing. He’s very observant.</td>
<td>notice sth see sth and be aware of it. observant good at noticing things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He glanced at me and smiled.</td>
<td>glance at sb/sth look quickly at sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I can hear something. B It sounds like a child crying.</td>
<td>hear sth receive sounds with your ears without trying. sound like sth make a noise that is like sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She listens to the radio a lot.</td>
<td>listen pay attention to sth you hear, often for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I overheard them in the bank.</td>
<td>over hear sb hear other people’s conversation by accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m sorry, I didn’t quite catch what you said.</td>
<td>catch sth hear or understand what sb is saying; usually used when you don’t hear or understand sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Spotlight: can + sense verbs

We don’t use see, hear, smell, or taste in the continuous tenses; we often use can (as in the examples above). I can see two boats in this photo. (not See or I’m seeing two boats.)

---

1. Circle the correct answer.
   - Can you hear/listen to that noise?  
   - Did you notice/watch the colour of her eyes?  
   - I can’t see/look at anything from here.  
   - Don’t look/watch behind you.  
   - How long did you see/watch TV for?  

2. Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
   - When I told them, I noticed that they both looked very surprised.
   - She said her name but I’m afraid I didn’t what it was.
   - I hear a bird singing. It like a blackbird.
   - Why is that man at me? Have I done something wrong?
   - I spoke to him about the exam. He doesn’t to be nervous.
   - Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she ill.
   - I my watch and realized it was time to go.
   - Sally always notices if I change my hairstyle. She’s very .
   - A minute ago she was here, then she I don’t know where she is now.

3. Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the words in bold mean?
### Smelling, tasting, and touching

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>smell sth</td>
<td>I can smell lunch ...</td>
<td>notice or recognize sth using your nose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell like sth</td>
<td>... it smells like fish.</td>
<td>have a smell like the smell of sth / sth else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stink inf</td>
<td>This towel stinks. I must wash it.</td>
<td>have a horrible smell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flavour</td>
<td>They sell 30 flavours of ice cream.</td>
<td>the sensation of sth in your mouth (e.g. a chocolate/orange/flavour).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td>Try this wine. It tastes very strange.</td>
<td>have a particular flavour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salty</td>
<td>The soup is very salty.</td>
<td>having the taste of or containing a lot of salt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bland</td>
<td>This cheese is quite bland.</td>
<td>without much flavour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch sth</td>
<td>When I touched the back wall ...</td>
<td>put your fingers on sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>... it felt a bit damp (= a little wet).</td>
<td>give a sensation of or like sth when touched (e.g. it feels hot, it feels like wood).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel like sth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>press sth</td>
<td>If you press that button, you get a ticket.</td>
<td>put your hand or finger on sth firmly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grab sth</td>
<td>He grabbed my mobile and ran off.</td>
<td>take sth with a sudden movement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap sb/sth</td>
<td>Someone tapped me on the arm.</td>
<td>touch sb/sth quickly with your hands or feet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub sth</td>
<td>I rubbed the book with a soft cloth to get the dirt off.</td>
<td>move your hand firmly backwards and forwards over the surface of sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Most cities **such as** London have a traffic problem. **lik**
  1. This blanket **has** a horrible smell.
  2. My towel still **feels** a little wet.
  3. The soup is **without** much flavour.
  4. The film was **similar** to his others.
  5. I put my hand on the radiator and it felt cold.
  6. She moved her hand firmly over her leg.

5 Complete the sentences.

- You don’t need salt. It’s already very **salty**.
  1. The persimmon is a strange fruit. It looks like a tomato but doesn’t taste like one.
  2. They were both like their feet to the music.
  3. **Tapped** the button if you want the receptionist to come.
  4. Be careful - don’t **touch** the door. The paint is still wet.
  5. He **grabbed** me on the shoulder and asked me to move my head.
  6. The policeman **rubbed** the thief’s arm and pushed him to the ground.
  7. When I came downstairs, I could **smell** the steak frying; it was wonderful.
  8. You had ice cream, didn’t you? What **taste** did you have? - Strawberry, but it didn’t taste like strawberry.

6 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
This painting, *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat, illustrates a typical scene of 19th-century leisure and the developing industry in this suburb of Paris. In the foreground, a group of workmen are relaxing by the river; in the distance you can just see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and ignoring each other, even the little dog in the bottom left-hand corner. We can sense the warmth of the summer's day in the bright sunlight, light colours, and shadows.

**Glossary**

- **Illustrate sth**
  - explain sth in a picture or diagram. *Illustration N.*

- **Scene**
  - a view you can see in a picture or from the place where you are.

- **Leisure**
  - time when you do not have to work.

- **Industry**
  - the production of goods in factories. *Industrial ADJ.*

- **In the distance**
  - far away from you.

- **Just**
  - If you can just see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.

- **Ignore sb/sth**
  - pay no attention to sb/sth.

- **Even**
  - used for emphasizing sth that is surprising.

- **Sense sth**
  - get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear.

- **Warmth**
  - a pleasant heat.

- **Bright**
  - having a lot of light. *Opp. Dark. Brightness N.*

**Spotlight: Painting and Drawing**

*Bathers at Asnières* is a painting. Seurat was a painter or artist. (Artist is a more general word).

*Paint v.*

A drawing is a picture made with a pencil or pen, but not paint.

*Draw v.*

I paint a lot of portraits. I can't draw faces very well.
1 Look at the big picture on page 90. Write your answers to the questions.
   - Where is the man in the red swimming costume sitting? In the middle of the picture.
   1 How many people are there in the foreground?
   2 Are the boats in the foreground or the background?
   3 Are the men sitting in the shade?
   4 Is the dog in the bottom left-hand corner?
   5 Can you see the dog's shadow?
   6 Is the picture a drawing or a painting?
   7 Where are the factories?
   8 On which side of the picture is the boy in the river?
   9 Are the colours dark or bright?
   10 On which side is the man wearing the light-coloured hat?

2 Cover the glossary on page 90. Complete the definitions.
   - even = used to emphasize something that is ___________
   1 ignore = pay _______________ attention to someone or something
   2 leisure = time when you don't have to
   3 sense = have a ____________ about something that you can't see or hear
   4 shade = a place which is ____________ and cool because the sun doesn't shine there
   5 scene = a view you can ________________ in a picture or from the place where you are
   6 bright = having a lot of

3 Put the words in order. Use contractions, e.g. it's, they're.
   - dog / foreground / the / in / is / the. The dog's in the foreground.
   1 the / it / you / see / in / can / distance
   2 bottom / the / corner / he / is / in / lying / left-hand
   3 of / right-hand / is / on / the / it / side / the / painting?
   4 they / the / centre / drawing / of / are / in / sitting / the
   5 in / left-hand / some / there / corner / are / trees / top / the

4 Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>warm/warmth</th>
<th>bright/brightness</th>
<th>just/even</th>
<th>illustrate/illustration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>industry/industrial</td>
<td>painter/painting</td>
<td>shade/shadow</td>
<td>just/even</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   - This painter often uses dark colours, not ____________ ones.
   1 He painted many ____________ scenes of factories and factory workers.
   2 The paintings ____________ the friendship between the three women.
   3 You can feel the ____________ of the sun shining down on you.
   4 You can see the ____________ on the wall in the art gallery.
   5 People go swimming in the river, ____________ in winter when it is cold.
   6 It's so hot! Shall we go and sit in the ____________?

5 ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1 What's the name of the artist who painted it?
   2 Do you know when it was painted?
   3 What does the painting illustrate?
   4 What do you like about the painting?
   5 Do you do any painting or drawing yourself? If so, what do you do?
I can describe actions

A Using your hands

Don’t squeeze the **tube** in the middle!
She’s **tearing** the letter **up**.
He **dragged** the **cabinet** across the floor.
He **knocked** on the door.
He **scratched** the **lid** of the box.
**Shake** the bottle before opening it.
The thief **smashed** the window.
She **folded** the paper **in half / in two**.
She **sprayed** the leaves with water.

1. Can you do these things? Write Yes or No.
   1. smash a tube of toothpaste  **No**
   2. fold a sheet in half  **Yes**
   3. scratch coffee  **Yes**
   4. drag a suitcase along a path  **Yes**
   5. spray perfume on yourself  **Yes**
   6. squeeze a wet jumper to get water out  **Yes**
   7. knock on water  **Yes**
   8. tear up a cabinet  **Yes**
   9. shake a tin of paint  **Yes**

2. Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

   spray  knock  scratch  drag  smash  fold  tear up  shake  squeeze

   I was woken up by someone  **knocking** on my window.
   1. The boat was incredibly heavy so we had to  **drag** it down the beach to the sea.
   2. I  **folded** all my old bank documents and threw them away.
   3. He  **threw** his scarf and put it on the table.
   4. Don’t  **shake** that bottle of sparkling water before you open it.
   5. He kicked the ball hard and unfortunately  **knocked** the neighbour’s window.
   6. You’ll need to  **smash** about six oranges to make a glass of juice.
   7. My little brother took a nail and  **poked** the side of the car. My dad was furious.
   8. She put on her make-up and  **smelled** perfume behind her ears.

3. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?
### B Making noises 🎫

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shout</td>
<td>Don’t shout! I can hear you.</td>
<td>speak in a loud voice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whisper</td>
<td>He whispered ‘I love you’ in her ear.</td>
<td>speak very quietly so that other people can’t hear you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry</td>
<td>The baby next door cried all night.</td>
<td>tears: drops of liquid that come out from your eyes when you cry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scream</td>
<td>The plane dropped suddenly and we screamed.</td>
<td>cry out in a high voice because you are in pain, upset, frightened, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst into tears</td>
<td>He sat down and burst into tears.</td>
<td>start crying suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst out laughing</td>
<td>I walked into the room and they all bust out laughing.</td>
<td>start laughing suddenly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe (in/out)</td>
<td>Breathe in, count to ten, and then breathe out.</td>
<td>take air into your lungs and let it out again. breath n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigh</td>
<td>He sat down and sighed: it had been a hard decision.</td>
<td>let out a long deep breath that shows you are sad, bored, relieved, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneeze</td>
<td>I’ve got a terrible cold; I’ve been sneezing all day.</td>
<td>sneezing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight:** **Loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence**

Loud means ‘making a lot of noise’. one silent. silence n.
The radio’s too loud. We worked in silence.
If you speak out loud (syn aloud) you speak so that people can hear you.
I read the letter out loud / aloud to my father.

### 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- If you shout angrily at a child, they might ________.

  1. When you have a cold, you might __________ a lot.
  2. If you eat onions, your __________ might smell.
  3. If something is incredibly funny, you might __________.
  4. If your nose is blocked, you have to __________ and out through your mouth.
  5. If you don’t want to be heard when you’re speaking to someone, you should __________.
  6. If you are very relieved that something has gone well, you might __________.
  7. If you suddenly get some very sad news, you might __________.
  8. If your friend isn’t looking and a car is coming, you would __________ to him.
  9. If all the class wanted to hear a short story you’ve written, you could read it __________.
  10. The room was completely __________; no one said a word.
  11. If you upset her, she will burst into __________.
  12. You can’t speak in an exam; you must work in __________.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. When did you last...

1. hear someone screaming? Who was it, and why? __________
2. burst out laughing? Why? __________
3. whisper to someone? Why? __________
4. read something out loud? What was it? __________
Review: Describing things

Unit 29

1 True or false? Write T or F.
   ▶ You have to pay to go through a subway. F.
   1 The suburbs of a city are the areas where people with very little money live. ......
   2 It's depressing if your home is surrounded by litter. ......
   3 A multi-storey car park has only one floor. ......
   4 The pavement is where people walk. ......
   5 The inner city is often quite built-up. ......
   6 Having local shops near your home isn't very convenient. ......

2 Complete the text.
   ▶ The district where I live now is very clean – not like the area I used to live in, which
     was (1) f_______________. It's also quite (2) l______________ because there are several cafés and
     restaurants round the corner, but there isn't a supermarket nearby, which is a (3) p_______________.
     Not far away, there's plenty of open (4) s_____________ to go for walks, and it's also very
     (5) h_____________ because I'm close to the station, so I can get to work easily. Where I lived
     before, you used to see lots of (6) g_____________ on the subway walls, and people sitting on the
     pavement (7) b_____________ for money. But there is one (8) d_____________ to where I live now:
     my friends live in the older part of town, so I see them less often.

Unit 30

1 Write a sentence linking a word on the left with a word on the right.
   windows ✓      front door
   semi-detached   storage
   chimney         house
   cellar          garden
   lawn            shutters ✓
   drive           roof

   ▶ Windows may have shutters on the inside or outside.

Unit 31

1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.
   iron   woollen   wax   rubber   wooden   gold   steel ✓   concrete   cardboard

   ▶ a steel pipe
   1 a woollen fence
   2 a wooden tyre
   3 a rubber candle
   4 a iron medal
   5 a wooden blanket
   6 a steel box
   7 a concrete railings
   8 a cardboard bridge
2 Answer the questions.
   ➤ What shape is a triangle? _triangular_.
   1 What shape is a tyre?  
   2 How many sides does a rectangle have?  
   3 When people sleep are they vertical or horizontal?  
   4 What shape has four equal sides? _a_  
   5 What kinds of lines always have the same distance between them? _lines_  
   6 What kind of line doesn’t have curves? _a_  

Unit 32

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.
   ➤ pay attention to something you hear  
   1 look at something or someone quickly  
   2 notice something using your nose  
   3 put your hands or fingers on something  
   4 touch something quickly with your hands or feet  
   5 have a particular flavour  
   6 look at something or someone for a long time  
   7 become impossible to see or find  
   8 hear someone’s conversation by accident  
   — a touch  
   — b stare at  
   — c listen to  
   — d tap  
   — e overhear  
   — f smell  
   — g taste  
   — h glance at  
   — i disappear

Unit 33

1 Complete the text with the words from the box in the correct form.
   distance scene painting yes shade artist ignore hand foreground just
   The _painting_ by a French (1) illustrates a (2) of peace and happiness. There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the (3), and in the background an older woman is watching them. Behind her, you can (4) see one side of a garden gate, and in the (5) an old house, perhaps where they all live. It’s obviously a warm day, but they are playing in the (6), to protect the small child from the hot sun. Finally, in the bottom (7) corner of the painting, there is a man. He’s (8) the mother and daughter, and seems much more interested in what is happening on his right – but that is outside the picture, so we’ll never know what fascinates him.

Unit 34

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.
   ➤ Did you hear someone _stream_? _scream_  
   1 The police had to stash the door open.  
   2 Don’t bear up that paper – we can use it again.  
   3 If you sold that in two, you can put it in this envelope.  
   4 He strayed us with water.  
   5 The little girl was crying because her dog had disappeared.  
   6 He burnt into tears for no reason at all.  
   7 She signed nosily and left the room.  
   8 Don’t snake that – it might explode!  
   9 I saw her bragging an enormous box along the street.
35 I can talk about crime

A What is crime?

Crime is activity which is against the law; for example, if you steal someone's property, you are committing a crime and breaking the law. Some offences are only minor, e.g. illegal parking; but for more serious and especially violent crimes, e.g. killing or attacking someone, a person could go to prison for a long time.

| Glossary |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| against the law             | against the rules of a country, syn illegal, opp legal. |
| steal sth                  | take sth belonging to sb else without permission. |
| PP stolen                   | property |
| commit a crime              | sth that belongs to you (e.g. a computer, jewellery). |
| break the law               | do sth illegal. |
| offence                     | do sth illegal/against the law, opp obey the law. |
| minor                       | an illegal activity, syn crime. (The person is an offender / a criminal.) |
| violent                     | not important, opp serious. |
| kill sb                     | using force to hurt sb physically, violence N. |
| attack sb                   | make sb die. |
| go to prison                | start fighting or hurting sb. |
|                            | go to a place where criminals have to stay after committing a crime, syn go to jail. |

1 Circle the verbs below. Don’t circle the other words.

offence minor kill violentlaw steal crime prison commit illegal serious attack criminal offend obey

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- steal | take something belonging to someone without permission _S_.
  1 illegal | against the law _S_.
  2 an offence | a crime _D_.
  3 legal | illegal _D_.
  4 kill someone | attack someone _D_.
  5 criminal | offender _S_.
  6 commit a crime | break the law _S_.
  7 prison | jail _S_.
  8 minor crime | serious crime _S_.

3 Complete the sentences using a word from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

violent serious against break property steal jail minor violence go attack

- She did something terrible, and I heard that she went to prison.
  1 There is a lot of _D_. in the centre of town at night.
  2 A group of boys _S_. the man, but fortunately he wasn’t badly hurt.
  3 The young man _S_. my bike and sold it in the market.
  4 _D._ was stolen from several houses in the street last night.
  5 It was a very _D_. crime; several people had to go to hospital.
  6 He committed a _D_. crime, and he’ll probably go to _D_. for a long time.
  7 I’ve never _D_. the law.
  8 He parked in the wrong place; it was only a _D_. offence, but it’s still _D_. the law.

4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
## Types of crime

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crime</th>
<th>The crime of ...</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Criminal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>theft</td>
<td>... taking something which belongs to someone else without permission.</td>
<td>He steals cars and sells them.</td>
<td>thief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robbery</td>
<td>... stealing from a person or place, often using violence.</td>
<td>They were planning to rob the bank.</td>
<td>robber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burglary</td>
<td>... entering a building illegally and stealing things from it.</td>
<td>They broke into the house and stole some jewellery.</td>
<td>burglar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoplifting</td>
<td>... stealing things from a shop.</td>
<td>She stole a skirt from the supermarket.</td>
<td>shoplifter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mugging</td>
<td>... attacking someone in a public place in order to steal from them.</td>
<td>He mugged people for their money late at night.</td>
<td>mugger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assault</td>
<td>... hurting someone physically.</td>
<td>He assaulted/attacked a man. He stabbed him.</td>
<td>attacker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder</td>
<td>... killing someone deliberately (= you wanted or planned to do it)</td>
<td>He murdered his neighbour. Why did he shoot him?</td>
<td>murderer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight: steal and rob**

You steal money or things, but you rob a person or place.

Someone has stolen my bike. Thieves stole €2000 from the shop.

I was robbed at the football match. They robbed the museum last night.

### 5 One word in each sentence is wrong. Cross it out.

1. Rob, steal, murder, and attacker are all verbs.
2. Theft, mug, robbery, and assault are all crimes.

### 6 Complete the sentences.

1. Two robbers .................................................. into the museum and .................................................. three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and .................................................. him in the chest.
2. The driver killed a man, but it wasn’t murder, because he didn’t do it ...................................................
3. Someone .................................................. me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would .................................................. me if I didn’t give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
4. He will be in prison for the rest of his life for .................................................. his wife. He bought a gun and .................................................. her while she was asleep.
5. A .................................................. broke into our house and took our jewellery and cameras.
6. The three men .................................................. that bank because it was in a very quiet area.

### 7 Test yourself. Look at the crimes, and cover the other three columns. Can you remember the meanings and the verbs?
A police investigation

A crime is reported to the police, usually by the victim.

The police investigate it. The victim and witnesses tell the police what they know.

The police may take fingerprints, or take photos where the crime took place.

If possible, they catch the suspect and arrest him.

If there is enough evidence, they will charge the suspect and he will go to court.

Glossary

report sth  give information that sth has happened.
victim     a person who has been robbed, injured, etc.
investigate sth  try to find out about sth.
witness    a person who sees sth happen (e.g. a crime or an accident).
may        we use may to say that sth is possible. SYN might.
take place  happen.
catch sb p.t caught  find and hold sb.
PP caught
suspect    a person who the police think has committed a crime.
evidence   facts, signs, or objects that make you believe sth is true.
charge sb  (of the police) say officially that they believe sb has done sth illegal.

1 Circle the correct word.

When a robbery has taken place reported, someone will (1) investigate report it to the police.
(2) Victims/Suspects and witnesses will tell the police what they saw. After that, the police will begin to (3) investigate charge the crime. They may take photos and take (4) fingerprints/suspects where the robbery took place/caught. They (6) will/may catch the (7) suspect/victim; if they do, they will (8) report/arrest him. If they have enough (9) evidence/victims, they will (10) catch/charge the suspect, and he will have to go to (11) court/police station.

2 Answer the questions. One question has more than one answer.

Who has to find the evidence? The police  5 Who is caught?
1 Who takes fingerprints?  6 Who usually reports the crime?
2 Who is charged?  7 Who is arrested?
3 Who investigates the crime?  8 Who sees the crime take place?
4 Who is hurt by the crime?  9

3 Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder are tried by a judge and jury. At the trial, the prosecution aims to prove that the accused (or defendant) has committed the crime; the defence aims to prove he is innocent. At the end, the jury decides whether the defendant is guilty or not guilty. If he is guilty, he is sentenced by the judge. He may get a fine or a prison sentence.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

1. The prosecution defends the accused. ________
2. The defendant is sentenced by the judge. _______
3. If the jury decides the defendant is innocent, he may go to prison. ________
4. With serious crimes, the jury decides what the sentence will be. _______
5. The defence aims to prove that the accused did not commit the crime. _______
6. If the accused is guilty, he may get a fine. _______
7. The judge has to prove whether the defendant is guilty or not. _______
8. Trials take place in a court. _______

5 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

1. The accused is ____________ by the judge and jury.
2. The defence must ____________ that the accused is innocent.
3. The ____________ has to show that the accused committed the crime.
4. If the ____________ is guilty, he may go to prison.
5. The guilty person is ____________ by the judge.
6. A ____________ takes place in court.
7. A person who is guilty may be ____________ a sum of money.

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

Glossary

- **try sb**: ask questions and listen to evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- **trial**: an examination of evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- **the prosecution**: the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has committed a crime. **prosecute sb v**.
- **prove sth**: give evidence to show that sth is true. **proof n**.
- **the defence**: the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has not committed the crime. **defend sb v**.
- **innocent**: if you are **innocent**, you have done nothing wrong, or **guilty**.
- **sentence sb**: tell sb who is guilty what they will have to do, e.g. go to prison. **sentence n**.
- **fine**: a sum of money you have to pay if you break a law. **fine sb v**.
A Diseases common among younger people

Nowadays fewer children **suffer from infectious diseases**, but the number of children around the world with **asthma** has **increased**. Doctors believe that the **breathing difficulties** of asthma sufferers are often caused by **allergies** to smoke, food, or pollution. There has also been a **dramatic increase in obesity** in young people in the last 20 years. Amongst other things, it can **lead to heart attacks, diabetes, and depression**.

1. **Write the related adjective.**
   - infection
   - allergy
   - obesity
   - depression
   - diabetes

2. **Circle the correct word.**
   - Breathing problems can be caused by **asthma/depression**.
   1. Diabetes/Asthma is related to sugar in the blood.
   2. She has a food allergy/asthma.
   3. Diseases/Asthma can be infectious.
   4. Instances of asthma have increased/decreased.
   5. The increase is dramatic/infectious.
   6. He had a heart/lung attack.

3. **Complete the sentences.**
   - If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from **asthma**.
   1. I can eat most things, but I’m ____________ to seafood. It makes me really ill.
   2. So many children eat junk food; we have a big problem with ____________ in our country.
   3. My uncle had a heart ____________ last year, but he’s fine now.
   4. He lost his job and became very ____________, but he’s happier now.
   5. More people ____________ from asthma than in the past.
   6. He’s ____________, so he has to test his blood sugar levels regularly.
   7. When you ____________ in, your ____________ fill with air.
   8. Obesity can ____________ to a number of serious ____________.
   9. Fortunately there has been a small ____________ in numbers of children suffering from infectious diseases.

**Glossary**

- **suffer from sth** have the experience of sth bad.
- **infectious** An infectious disease passes easily from person to person. **infection** n.
- **disease** an illness (e.g. skin disease, kidney disease).
- **asthma** a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe.
- **increase** get larger in number or amount. **increase** n. **reduce** v., n.
- **breathe (in/out)** take air into your lungs (see picture) and let it out again.

- **allergy** a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat, or breathe sth that doesn’t normally make other people ill. **allergic** adj.
- **dramatic** sudden and surprising.
- **obesity** the state of being so fat that you are unhealthy. **obese** adj.
- **lead to sth** cause or have sth as a result, often sth bad.
- **heart attack** When sb has a heart attack, their heart (see picture) suddenly stops working normally.
- **diabetes** a disease in which your body can’t control the level of sugar in the blood. **diabetic** adj.
- **depression** a feeling of being very unhappy (this can also be an illness). **depressed** adj.
B Diseases common among older people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>disabled</td>
<td>My sister is disabled; she can't walk.</td>
<td>not able to use a part of your body properly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disability N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td>My uncle is going blind.</td>
<td>not able to see.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go or be blind</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYN lose your sight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deaf</td>
<td>I'm a bit deaf, so please speak up.</td>
<td>not able to hear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go or be deaf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(have a) stroke</td>
<td>She had a stroke, but she's able to walk again now.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart disease</td>
<td>He suffers from heart disease.</td>
<td>a serious long-term condition causing problems for your heart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer</td>
<td>He got lung cancer from smoking.</td>
<td>a very serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g. skin cancer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arthritis</td>
<td>I can't walk very far because of my arthritis.</td>
<td>a disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arthritic ADJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memory loss</td>
<td>She suffers from memory loss: she forgets things easily.</td>
<td>a condition in which you lose your ability to remember things.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Complete the words.

- lung cancer
- m, a, r, t, c
- b, l, e

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- If someone has heart disease, the problems started some time ago. T
- Arthritis means your fingers, feet, etc. may be painful. T
- If you are going deaf, you can't see very well. F
- If you lose your sight completely, you go blind. F
- People with cancer often have a tumour in their body. T
- Heart disease is the same as a heart attack. F
- If you suffer from memory loss, you can remember things. F
- A stroke attacks the lungs. F
- Being deaf and blind are disabilities. F

6 Complete the text.

Elderly people usually become more disabled as time goes by. My grandmother, for example, suffers from (1) a______________ and she can't walk very easily. Last year she started to go a bit (2) d______________, but fortunately she hasn't lost her (3) s______________, so she can still enjoy the TV. Sadly, she suffers from (4) m______________ loss, but that's very common with people of her age. No one in our family has suffered from either (5) c______________ or (6) h______________ disease, however.

7 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
38 I can talk about politics

A The British political system

In the United Kingdom (the UK), elections are held every five years. The UK is divided into 646 political areas, called constituencies, and in each constituency people vote for one person representing the political party they want to see in power. The politician with the most votes becomes the Member of Parliament (known as an MP) for that area. Parliament, therefore, consists of 646 MPs, and the party with the majority of MPs forms the government. The leader of that party also becomes prime minister.

Glossary

- election: the time when people choose individuals to speak for them and act for them. elect v.
- hold sth: organize an event such as an election.
- constituency: one of the areas into which the country is divided for voting in political elections.
- vote for sb/sth: choose sb/sth in an election. vote n.
- represent sb/sth: act officially for people or an organization.
- political party: a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election (e.g. the Labour Party, the Conservative Party).
- in power: in political control of the country.
- politician: a person with a job in politics.
- parliament: the group of people elected to make the laws in a country.
- consist of sth: be formed or made up of sth.
- majority: the largest number or part of sth. opp minority.
- government: the group of people in control of a country. govern v.
- prime minister (or PM): the leader of the government in some countries.

1 True or false in Britain? Write T or F.
   - The British parliament consists of 646 elected representatives. T
   1. Elections must be held every four years. .......
   2. People can only vote for one person in this election: .......
   3. Two or three people may be elected in each constituency. .......
   4. If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government. .......
   5. The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister. .......
   6. The party with the minority of elected MPs forms the government. .......

2 Complete the sentences.
   - PM is an abbreviation of prime minister.
   1. How often do you hold .......... for parliament?
   2. Parliament .......... of people from a number of different political .......... .
   3. In the UK, the Conservative Party was in ........... from 1979 to 1997.
   4. Who did you .......... for in the last election?
   5. Politicians .......... the people who elect them.
   6. She had over 50 per cent of the votes, so a .......... of the people voted for her.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. How often does your country usually hold elections? .................................................................
   2. Which political party is in power at the moment? ...........................................................................
   3. How long have they been in power? .................................................................................................
   4. What is the title of the leader of the party? ......................................................................................
   5. How many people are in parliament? ..............................................................................................
The government has announced that its first priority will be education, and today the prime minister will focus on the need for more young people to go to university.

A new transport policy will be announced today, which aims to persuade motorists to leave their cars at home.

The government will face strong opposition to their new immigration policy.

An Olympic athlete has been chosen to launch the government's new fitness campaign.

**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>objective</td>
<td>a thing you are trying to do. syns aim, goal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announce sth</td>
<td>say sth officially and in public.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priority</td>
<td>a thing that is important or that you must do before anything else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>focus on sth</td>
<td>give all your attention to sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>focus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need for sth</td>
<td>a situation in which you must have or do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policy</td>
<td>a plan to do sth. agreed by a government, company, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade sb (to do sth)</td>
<td>give reasons to make sb agree (to do sth).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face sth</td>
<td>have to deal with a difficult situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immigration</td>
<td>the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (the people are called immigrants).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>launch sth</td>
<td>start sth new, especially a campaign or product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>campaign</td>
<td>(often used in politics or business) a plan to do a number of things with a specific aim.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Circle the correct answer.

- If you persuade somebody to do something, they **do** do it.
- If you announce something, you say it in public/private.
- A priority is important/not important.
- If you face a problem, you avoid it/deal with it.
- If you launch something, you start it/finish it.
- Immigration is the process of coming/going to live in a foreign country.
- If you oppose something, you agree/disagree with it.

5 Complete the sentences.

- Helping poor people is a major **priority** for the government.
- Do you agree with the government's economic **...**?
- They've launched a **...** to educate people about the tax system.
- Some MPs already agree with the prime minister, but he still has to **...** others.
- The USA received a lot of European **...** in the early twentieth century.
- The main **...** of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
- It's clear that the **...** disagree strongly with the government's policy.
- In his speech, the prime minister will **...** on health issues.
- The government has expressed the **...** for change in their education policy.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
39 I can talk about war and peace

A Conflict

...The bomb exploded in the city centre killing at least a dozen people ...

...Soldiers fought a two-hour gun battle and captured a number of enemy fighters ...

...The army have captured the airport and are now in control of the situation. Most enemy soldiers have now surrendered.

...If the current crisis gets worse, civil war could break out at any time ...

Glossary

conflict an angry argument or state of fighting between people or countries. (War is fighting between countries or groups using guns, etc.)
bomb a container packed with materials that can burst out with force.
explode burst with force and a loud noise. syn go off. explosion n.
dozen twelve or a group of twelve (half a dozen = 6).
soldier (see picture) a person who is a member of an army.
fight pt fought When people fight, they try to hurt or kill each other (sb who fights is a fighter). fight n.
battle a fight between armies in a war.
capture sb/sth 1 catch and keep sb so they can’t leave. 2 take control of sth.
enemy the people your army or country is fighting against.
be in control of sth have the power or ability to deal with sth.
surrender stop fighting and admit you have lost. syn give up.
crisis a time of great danger or difficulty. critical adj.
civil war a war between groups of people who live in the same country.
break out (used about fighting, wars, firs, etc.) start suddenly.

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.
   ► They’re in control  
   1 The conflict  
   2 Soldiers fought  
   3 Two bombs  
   4 Soldiers captured  
   5 The soldiers  
   6 A dozen  
   a surrendered.  
   b the main port.  
   c guns were found.  
   d of the city.  
   e a long battle.  
   f exploded.  
   g lasted many years.

2 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.
   ► They were physically trying to hurt each other. fighting
   1 They were the men we fought against.
   2 It’s a dangerous and difficult period.
   3 Many fighters have given up.
   4 They took control of the city.
   5 There were a dozen soldiers.
   6 When did the bomb go off?

3 Complete the sentences.
   ► It has become a serious crisis and could end in war.
   1 Why did war break ?
   2 The exploded at 10.15.
   3 Fifty people died in the first of the war.
   4 There are 50,000 in the army.
   5 Are they in of the situation?
   6 The conflict could result in civil
### Compromise

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Word and meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The US and its European allies are both determined to find a solution.</td>
<td>ally a country that agrees to support another country. determined having a strong desire to do sth and be successful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The two countries involved are hoping they can reach an agreement.</td>
<td>involved taking part in sth or connected to sth. reach an agreement arrive at a decision that both sides agree on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaders from the two main parties are now negotiating, and there is some hope of a peace settlement.</td>
<td>leader a person who is in charge or control of sth. negotiate talk to sb in order to decide or agree on sth. peace settlement an official agreement that ends a war (peace is a time when there is no war).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The two sides have finally agreed a ceasefire.</td>
<td>side either of two or more groups who are arguing or fighting with each other. ceasefire an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If both sides are willing to compromise, there could be a settlement fairly soon.</td>
<td>willing to do sth happy and prepared to do sth. or unwilling. compromise accept less than you want in order to reach an agreement. compromise n.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4

Cover the table above. Match 1-7 with a-h.

- 1. ceasefire ______ a. taking part in something
- 2. ally ________ b. having a strong desire to do something
- 3. determined ______ c. an agreement to end a war or argument.
- 4. willing _______ d. happy and prepared to do something
- 5. negotiate ______ e. accept less than you want
- 6. compromise _______ f. an agreement to stop fighting
- 7. involved _______ g. talk to somebody in order to agree something
- 8. a country that has agreed to support you

### 5

Complete the texts.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years. 

- **Allies** ______ of the two (1) _______ in the conflict have managed to get them to agree to a temporary (2) _______ on several occasions, but they have never been able to get the two (3) _______ of the sides to negotiate a peace (4) _______. It seems they are both (5) _______ to carry on fighting to the bitter end and are completely (6) _______ to compromise. 

- The two countries (7) _______ in the conflict have finally agreed to come to the negotiating table. Neither will be willing to (8) _______ very much, but there is now at least the possibility that the two leaders could (9) _______ an agreement that will lead to a more lasting (10) _______ settlement.

### 6

Test yourself. Look at the examples in the table and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
## 40 I can talk about events in history

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1066</td>
<td>William of Normandy invaded England and then defeated King Harold in a battle.</td>
<td>invade enter a country with an army to attack and take control of it. invasion N. defeat sb win a battle, vote, game, etc. against sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1781</td>
<td>William Herschel discovered the planet Uranus.</td>
<td>discover sth find sth that nobody has found before. discovery N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>The Russian Revolution</td>
<td>revolution action taken by a large group of people to change the government, often using violence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Turkey became a republic.</td>
<td>republic a country with no king or queen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>India gained independence / became independent.</td>
<td>gain independence become free from control by another country. independent adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1957</td>
<td>The European Common Market was established.</td>
<td>establish sth start or create an organization or system. establishment N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>Prince Juan Carlos became king of Spain.</td>
<td>prince the son or grandson of a king or queen (a daughter is a princess).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1981</td>
<td>President Sadat of Egypt was assassinated.</td>
<td>president the leader of a country with no king or queen. assassination N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1981</td>
<td>Attempt to assassinate President Ronald Reagan.</td>
<td>attempt the act of trying to do sth difficult (often without success). attempt to do sth v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Nelson Mandela was released from prison.</td>
<td>release sb allow sb to be free. release N.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Cover the table above. Match 1–5 with a–f. Then write the nouns formed from each verb in the third column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>◣ discover...£...</td>
<td>a kill a famous person</td>
<td>discovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 release........</td>
<td>b enter another country with an army and attack it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 assassinate ..........</td>
<td>c find something that nobody has found before ✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 establish ..........</td>
<td>d try to do something, often without success</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 invade ..........</td>
<td>e start or create an organization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 attempt ..........</td>
<td>f allow somebody to be free</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Can you complete these sentences about other events in world history?

1. President Kennedy was .................. in 1963.
4. American forces .................. the British at the Battle of New Orleans in 1815.
5. In 1981 there was an .................. to assassinate Pope John Paul II.
6. Argentina gained .................. in 1816 and Brazil became .................. in 1822.
Review: Social and political issues

Unit 35

1. Complete the sentences. Someone who ...
   a. attacks someone physically is an _____________.
   b. commits a crime is a _____________.
   c. kills someone deliberately is a _____________.
   d. attacks someone in the street for money is a _____________.
   e. breaks into a house and steals things from it is a _____________.
   f. steals your car is a _____________.
   g. steals things from shops is a _____________.
   h. steals from a bank is a bank _____________.

2. Circle the correct word.
   a. The man __robbed/mugged__ the post office.
   b. She shot/stabbed him with a kitchen knife.
   c. You don't go to prison if you obey/break the law.
   d. People who commit/break an offence may end up in prison.
   e. The two men broke into jail/the museum and stole/robbed some paintings.
   f. It was a terrible accident. Don crashed into another car and murdered/killed the driver.
   g. You don't see much violence/violent on the streets.
   h. Murder is a very serious/minor crime.
   i. They attacked/killed the guard, and he's still in hospital.

Unit 36

1. Put the sequence in the correct order.
   a. The jury decided that the defendant was guilty. ______
   b. The police charged the suspect. ______
   c. A crime was committed. ______
   d. The suspect went to court. ______
   e. The police caught the suspect. ______
   f. The jury listened to the evidence. ______
   g. The police investigated the crime. ______
   h. The victim reported the crime. ______
   i. The judge sentenced the defendant to two years in prison. ______

2. Complete the sentences.
   a. The suspect may be guilty or _____________.
   b. The trial takes _____________. in a court.
   c. The prosecution try to _____________. that the defendant committed the crime.
   d. The defendant is also called the _____________.
   e. Often a _____________. has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
   f. If he is guilty, the defendant may get a _____________. or a prison _____________.
   g. The defendant might be guilty, or he _____________. be innocent.
   h. When the police investigate a crime, they are looking for _____________. for example, fingerprints.
   i. If the police find a suspect, they will _____________. them and question them at the police station.
Unit 37

1 What medical problem is being defined?
   ▶ A feeling of being very unhappy. depression.
   1 The condition of being too fat.
   2 A condition that makes you ill when you touch, breathe, or eat something that doesn’t affect
      other people.
   3 A sudden illness affecting the brain; you may not be able to talk afterwards.
   4 A medical condition which makes breathing difficult.
   5 A condition in which the heart stops working suddenly.
   6 A serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.
   7 A disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.
   8 A disease in which the body can’t control the level of sugar in the blood.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
   ▶ He is / and has been in a wheelchair for years. disabled.
   1 She has suffered asthma for years.
   2 He had a heart and died last week.
   3 My grandfather is going so I have to shout to him.
   4 It’s an infectious so he can’t mix with other people.
   5 The doctor told me to in deeply through my nose.
   6 She is allergic some medicines.
   7 Obesity can lead heart disease.
   8 He suffers from loss and can’t remember where he puts things.

Unit 38

1 Match 1–10 with a–k.
   ▶ I don’t belong to any political  1
   1 The announcement was made by
   2 They hold
   3 The government will face
   4 We need to launch
   5 They want to persuade
   6 I don’t know which party
   7 I wouldn’t vote
   8 She’s the Member
   9 I don’t agree with their immigration
   10 The government needs to focus
   a Ben Jones represents.
   b a campaign.
   c for that party.
   d on better health care.
   e elections every four years.
   f policy.
   g the prime minister.
   h of Parliament for Hampstead.
   i strong opposition to their plan.
   j party.✓
   k people to accept the scheme.

2 Which words are being defined?
   ▶ the time when people choose politicians to speak and act for them elections.
   1 something that you are trying to achieve
   2 disagree strongly with something
   3 something that is very important or that you must do before anything else
   4 the group of people elected to make and change laws in a country
   5 a person whose job is in politics
   6 in political control of a country
   7 be formed or made up of something of something
Unit 39

1 Answer the questions. Tick (✓) Yes or No.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✗ Is a dozen less than ten?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Is a soldier a member of the army?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Is a ceasefire at the beginning of a conflict?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 When a bomb goes off, is there an explosion?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 When two sides reach an agreement, do they usually compromise?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 If an army surrenders, does it stop fighting?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Are your enemies on the same side as you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Are your allies on the same side as you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Is a civil war between people from different countries?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- He’s one of our allies. | He’s one of our enemies. D.
- The two leaders are negotiating. | The two leaders are fighting. S.
- They arrived at a settlement. | They reached a settlement. S.
- There are two sides. | There are two leaders. S.
- There’s a crisis in the country. | The situation is critical in the country. S.
- He wanted to do it. | He was unwilling to do it. S.
- They captured the enemy leader. | They fought the enemy leader. S.
- It was a long battle. | It was a long war. S.
- The war broke out in 1993. | The war started in 1993. S.

Unit 40

1 Complete the sentences.

- Napoleon Bonaparte was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.
- In 1969, Sirhan Bishara Sirhan was sent to prison for the murder of Robert Kennedy in June 1968. He is still there and will never be释放.
- Seventy days after Ronald Reagan became president of the United States in 1981, John Hinckley attempted to assassinate him. Reagan survived the attack and lived for another 23 years.
- The French revolution started in 1789 and lasted for ten years.
- Fidel Castro established a new Communist government in Cuba in 1959.
- Marie Curie, a Polish-French scientist, discovered radium in the early part of the twentieth century. She died from exposure to radiation in 1934.
- Diana, Princess of Wales, the first wife of Prince Charles, was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.
- China became a republic in 1912 after two thousand years of imperial rule.
- Zimbabwe gained independence in 1980.
A Newspaper publishing

**Glossary**

- **whole**: complete; with no parts missing. syn entire.
- **journalism**: the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. (a person who does this is a *journalist*).
- **editor**: the person in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. *edit* v.
- **daily**: You can get a daily (newspaper) every day, except Sunday.
- **publish sth**: prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc. *publishing* n.
- **several**: more than two, but not many.
- **national**: connected with all of a country (*international* = involving two or more countries).
- **headline**: the title of a newspaper article (*see* next page).
- **current affairs**: important political or social events happening now.
- **section**: one of the parts into which sth is divided.
- **cultural**: activities involving art, literature, music, etc.
- **decline**: become weaker or smaller. *decline* n.
- **press**: newspapers and the journalists who work for them.

1. Circle the adjectives. Don’t circle the verbs and nouns.
   - *international*, *whole*, *editor*, *press*, *declined*, *daily*, *journalism*, *entire*, *culture*, *section*, *national*, *cultural*.

2. Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.
   - She edits the newspaper. | She’s the editor. **S**.
   - 1 I didn’t understand the article. | I didn’t understand the headline. ........
   - 2 Which section do you read first? | Which part of the paper do you read first? ........
   - 3 I’m interested in current affairs. | I’m interested in cultural events. ........
   - 4 The number of journalists has declined. | The number of journalists has gone up. ........
   - 5 She read the entire paper. | She read the whole paper. ........
   - 6 She’s worked there for several years. | She’s worked there for many years. ........

3. Complete the sentences.
   - The article is in the sports *section* on page 34.
   - 1 I always turn to the section on *current affairs* first to read about the latest films and books.
   - 2 My son reads all the papers and is fascinated by the *给了* . He wants to be a *journalist*.
   - 3 The paper is *published* in Denton and sold everywhere in the region.
   - 4 I spent the *morning* reading the news about the *international* situation.
   - 5 Newspaper sales are going up in China, but they’re *declining* in Europe.
   - 6 Do you buy a *daily* newspaper?

4. **Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?**
B Headlines

**FOOTBALL FANS CLASH WITH POLICE**
clash with sb: light or disagree seriously with sb about sth. clash n.
axe sb/sth: cut numbers of people, jobs, etc. by a large amount (an axe is a large tool used for cutting wood).
protest say or show that you don’t agree with sth, especially in public. protest n.

**200 AXED CAR WORKERS PROTEST IN CITY CENTRE**
scare a situation in which many people are afraid or worried (e.g. bomb scare, health scare, food scare).
demonstrate: take part in a public protest for or against sth.
syn protest, demonstration/protest n.
threaten a statement that sb may kill, hurt, or punish you if you don’t do what they want. threaten v.
claim sth or claim that: say that sth is true without having proof. claim n.
promise (to do) sth: say definitely that you will do sth, or that sth will happen. syn make a promise. promise n.
pension: money paid regularly by the government or a company to sb who has stopped working because of old age (sb who receives a pension is a pensioner).
pledge sth: make a formal promise to do or give sth. pledge n.
aid: money, food, etc. that is sent to a country or to people to help them (aid v. past means ‘give help’).

5 Circle the correct word.

- She **claimed/promised** to work hard.
  - There was a health **scare/aid** last week.
  - Twenty workers were **protested/axed**.
  - Police **clashed/aided** with protesters.
  - They took part in a demonstration/pledge.
  - She **claimed/promised** she was French.
  - I receive a company **pension/pensioner**.
  - There was a threat/clash to kill him.

6 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

- She went to the **public protest** demonstration.
  - The company **made a formal promise** to improve services.
  - He **says** that he is the tallest man in the country.
  - We’re sending money and food to the **earthquake zone**.
  - I had a **frightening situation** last night – I saw a snake in the garden.
  - You should act with others to say that you disagree about price rises.
  - My brothers **disagreed seriously** with the organizers over the arrangements.
  - The man said he would **hurt me**.
  - I made a **spoken agreement** and I won’t break it.

7 Test yourself. Look at the headlines and cover the meanings. Can you explain the headlines?
I can talk about films

A Film awards

The BAFTAs are the British equivalent of the Oscars. The highest award, the Academy Fellowship, is a prize given for an individual's work and achievements during their career. Previous winners include Hitchcock and Fellini. There are awards for the outstanding film of the year, and for special achievement by a British director, writer, or producer in their first film. There are also awards for best actor and actress in a leading role and in a supporting role. Achievements are also recognized in editing, lighting, and so on.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>equivalent</td>
<td>sth that has the same value, amount, meaning, or importance as sth else. equ[ivalent adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>award</td>
<td>You get or win an award when you do very well in a competition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prize</td>
<td>sth of value that you get when you are successful in a competition, race, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>individual</td>
<td>one person who is seen separately from others or a group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>achievement</td>
<td>sth you have done successfully that was difficult. achieve v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winner</td>
<td>a person who wins a competition, game, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outstanding</td>
<td>extremely good; excellent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director</td>
<td>the person who tells actors what to do in a film, play, etc. direct v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>producer</td>
<td>the person who is responsible for the business side of a film, play, etc. produce v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leading role</td>
<td>the most important role (or part) in a film or play (a supporting role is the next most important role).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>role</td>
<td>the part an actor plays (e.g. the role of Julius Caesar).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>editing</td>
<td>the process of deciding which parts of a film to show and in which order. edit v.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Complete the words.

   outstanding 1. e________e________lent 3. p________ting 6. a________e________e
   equivalent 2. d________e 4. i________idual 7. w________n________er

2. True or false? Write T or F.

   A producer plays the leading role in the film. F
   1. An actor directs the film. F
   2. An outstanding film is very bad. F
   3. A BAFTA winner gets an award. T
   4. A leading role is always a man's role. T
   5. An individual is one person. T
   6. A producer edits films. T
   7. It's an achievement to win an award. T
   8. A role is what an actor wears. F
   9. A producer organizes the film's finances. T
   10. A director tells actors how to act. T

3. Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

   Who was the business manager of the film? producer

4. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
Love it or hate it?

An **extraordinary** and moving **performance** by a great leading actor.

A **gripping** and entertaining **thriller**, and full of **drama** — I loved it.

I'm usually a **fan** of Jan Loos, but this **movie** had such a weak **plot**. Very **disappointing** indeed.

Very violent and too much **swearing** — totally **unsuitable** for children. **Disgusting**!

---

**Glossary**

- **extraordinary** very unusual or much better than usual. **syn** **incredible**. **opposite** **ordinary**.
- **moving** causing strong feelings, especially of sadness.
- **performance** the act of playing a role in a film or play.
- **gripping** very exciting; holding your attention.
- **entertaining** interesting and fun.
- **drama** exciting things that happen; an exciting event.
- **dramatic** **adj**.
- **fan** sb who really likes and is enthusiastic about a person or an activity.
- **movie** (especially in US English) a film.
- **plot** the series of events that form the story of a film, novel, etc.
- **disappointing** not as good as you had hoped.
- **swearing** rude language that may upset people. **swear** v.
- **unsuitable** **(for sth/sb)** not right or appropriate for sth/sb. **opposite** **suitable**.
- **disgusting** very unpleasant.

---

5. Are the adjectives positive or negative? Write P or N.
   1. extraordinary **P**  2. ordinary **N**  3. gripping **P**  4. unsuitable **N**  5. disappointing **N**  6. moving **P**

6. Circle the correct word.
   1. It's very funny **extremely**/indeed.
   2. The **plot/performances** is about three men who have to look after a baby.
   3. The **drama/movie** is on at the Odeon cinema.
   4. It was an **ordinary/extraordinary** film — I really loved it.
   5. That film won't be **suitable/disgusting** for you — it's much too violent.
   6. Her **performance/fan** was really gripping — you must see it.

7. Complete the words in these sentences.

   1. ‘**Casino Royale**’ is a really enter ____________ ____________ film.
   2. Forest Whitaker gave an extra ____________ ____________ in ‘**The Last King of Scotland**’.
   3. I thought ‘**Snakes on a Plane**’ was very ____________ ____________ ____________.
   4. I’m a ____________ of Cate Blanchett.
   5. ‘**The Pianist**’ was very mov ____________.

---

8. **ABOUT YOU** Replace the underlined names and titles with your own examples of films and actors in the ‘About you’ column. Compare with another student if you can.
43 I can talk about art and photography

A Painting and drawing 🎨

At an art exhibition, a variety of paintings and drawings may be on display: for example, portraits, landscapes, and still lifes (note the plural here is lifes, not lives). Some artists work in oils (oil paints), while others use watercolours.

Styles vary too: some works of art are realistic, others are abstract. Skilled artists use a range of techniques to create different sorts of effects.

Glossary

exhibition a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public.
n variety a number of different types of the same thing.
 vary v.
 drawing a picture made with a pencil, pen, etc., but not paint.
on display being shown in a place where people will see it. syn on show.
 style the way that sth is painted, drawn, built, etc.

work of art a very good painting, drawing, book, etc. (a really great work of art, e.g. Mona Lisa by Leonardo da Vinci, is a masterpiece).
realistic showing things as they are. realism n.
skilled having the ability and experience to do sth well. syn expert.
technique a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills.
create sth cause sth new to happen; produce sth new.
sort a type or kind.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.
   1 a drawing | a painting D
   2 on display | on show S
   3 realistic | abstract S
   4 create | make something new D
   5 a sort | a type D
   6 a portrait | a painting S
   7 a still life | a landscape S
   8 skilled | expert S
   9 a work of art | a painting D

2 Complete the text.

Picasso is a great artist who worked in a variety of different (1) s, some realistic and others (2) a. He developed a wide range of painting (3) t. He usually painted using (4) o, but he liked to (5) v things and sometimes used (6) w. He loved to paint people, and produced a beautiful (7) p of his mother. Many people believe that his real (8) m was Guernica, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. In the past, the painting was on (9) d all over the world, but it is now permanently in Madrid.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the words?
Word | Example | Meaning
---|---|---
out of focus | The photos are out of focus. | not showing things clearly, opp in focus.
focus on sth | I focused on the girl's face. | change the camera until the image is clear.
transfer sth (from... to...) | I transferred the photos from the camera to a laptop. | move sth from one place to another.
develop a film | Could I have this film developed, please? | make pictures from a piece of film using chemicals.
automatic | With an automatic camera, photos are usually in focus. | able to work by itself without direct human control.
studio | She has a studio where she does fashion photography. | a room where a photographer or artist works.

4 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

Photographer camera flash a film focus ✓ album of film focus lens

1 in focus
2 digital
3 zoom
4 amateur
5 develop
6 roll
7 built-in
8 photo

5 Write the words in the correct order to form sentences.

1 / film / please / roll / have / a / could / of Could I have a roll of film, please?
2 can / studio / in / films / develop / she / her
3 frame / the / put / photo / I / the / in
4 negative / two / please / of / can / prints / have / I / this?
5 the / focused / the / in / he / girl / foreground / on
6 photographers / automatic / often / cameras / amateur / buy
7 you / computer / to / can / the / transfer / pictures / the

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are you interested in photography? If so, why?
2 What kind of camera have you got?
3 What features does it have?
4 What kinds of problems do you have when you take pictures?
44 I can talk about music

A Musical instruments and musicians

1 trumpet  2 saxophone  3 flute  4 organ  5 keyboard

6 piano  7 violin  8 cello  9 guitar

Franz Liszt was a composer but also a great pianist.
Chris Martin is the lead singer and main songwriter in the rock band Coldplay.
Mark Elder is the conductor of the Hallé Orchestra.

Glossary

musical instrument a thing that is used for playing music.
musician a person who plays a musical instrument.
composer a person who writes music. compose v.
lead singer the main singer in a band.
songwriter a person who writes the words and music for a song.

band a number of people who play music together. syn group.

1 Complete the words for the musical instruments, then write the person who plays them.

1 piano / pianist / ________
2 or / ____________
3 tr / ____________

2 Complete the words in the sentences.

1 They both play in a rock band.
2 Noel Gallagher plays the guitar in the rock band ‘Oasis’, and his brother Liam is the lead singer.
3 Do you play a musical instrument?
4 I don’t like modern classical music such as Bartók and Stockhausen.
5 Paul Simon sings and plays the guitar but is most famous as a songwriter.
6 Mike’s playing guitar, but who is the keyboard player?
7 There are five in the band and they’re all good musicians.
8 Sir Georg Solti was the conductor of several wonderful orchestras.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the instruments?
Who do you admire?

Music questionnaire

1. Write the name of a modern band or solo artist that you admire.
2. Has their music been influenced by anyone/anything?
3. Do they write and record their own music or play other people's?
4. Do they often do live concerts? Have you seen them play live?
5. What was the last album they released?
6. Why does their music appeal to you? Is it because of:
a great voice / talented musicians / lovely melodies / good lyrics?

Glossary

solo artist a singer or musician who is not part of a band.
admirer sb like sb and think they have achieved a lot. admiration
influence sb/sth make a change to the way sb thinks. influence
record sth put music, a film, etc. onto a CD or tape. recording
album a collection of songs (often eight or ten).
release sth put an album onto the market so people can buy it. release
appeal to sb be attractive or interesting to sb. appeal
voice the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.
talented having a lot of ability. talent
melody a series of musical notes in a particular order. tune
lyrics the words of a song.

4. Circle the correct answer.

2. I like the tune but not the lyrics/melody.
3. Is he a solo/single artist?
4. I've never seen the band live/alive.
5. Katie Melua has a great tune/voice.
6. He's one of the best living/alive songwriters.
7. The song has a beautiful melody/voice.
8. His music appeals/influences to me.

5. Complete the text with words from the box.

albums influenced talented release appeals solo recorded admire recording

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most talented songwriters. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was influenced by the bossa nova style of João Gilberto, but he didn't release his first album, Louvraçao, until 1967. He travelled in the 1970s, recorded an album in English, and, in 1980, introduced reggae to Brazil with his release of the Bob Marley song, 'No woman, no cry'. He has played with many musicians, while continuing his career as a solo artist. In all he has produced over 40 albums. His music appeals to people because of the rhythm and melodies, but people also admire him for his work in politics and for social causes.

6. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.
45  I can talk about people and places in sport

A People 🎧

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>referee</td>
<td>The referee gave out five yellow cards.</td>
<td>the official person in control in some sports (in tennis this is an umpire).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linesman</td>
<td>The linesman put his flag up for offside, but I think he was wrong.</td>
<td>a person who helps the referee in some sports. SYN referee’s assistant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manager</td>
<td>José Mourinho has been manager of Porto and Chelsea.</td>
<td>the person in control of a football team (also coach in some countries).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coach</td>
<td>Andy Murray has a new tennis coach.</td>
<td>a person who gives practical teaching to make sb better in a sport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>captain</td>
<td>Fabio Cannavaro was the Italian captain in the 2006 World Cup.</td>
<td>the player who is leader of the team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectators</td>
<td>Spectators ran onto the pitch (= the area where the game is played).</td>
<td>people who watch a game (also the crowd).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supporters</td>
<td>Many football supporters travel all over Europe to see their team.</td>
<td>people who regularly watch a team play. SYN fans. support v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commentator</td>
<td>I thought the commentator was talking rubbish.</td>
<td>a person who describes a game on TV or the radio.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.
   - football_ footballer
   - golf
   - athletics
   - boxing
   - motor racing
   - rugby
   - skiing
   - gymnastics

2. Circle the correct answer.
   - They have a special manage coach to improve their fitness.
   - 1. The captain/manager wears an armband during the game.
   - 2. The referee/umpire gave him a red card.
   - 3. I lead/support Real Madrid, and go to most of their home games.
   - 4. In the men’s singles final at Wimbledon, they had a Portuguese referee/umpire.
   - 5. There were 40,000 in the ground, of which about 5,000 were Arsenal spectators/supporters.

3. Complete the words in the text.

   ‘There was trouble at last week’s game. Our captain got a red card in the second half for arguing with the (1) r_ , and then the other team scored a goal in the last minute, although the (2) l_ had his (3) f_ up for offside. Even the (4) c_ on the radio thought it was offside, but the ref gave the goal. At the end of the match, some (5) f_ who were in the (6) c_ then ran onto the (7) p_ , and the referee had to have a police escort. In the press conference after the game, our (8) m_ was still very angry.’
The Camp Nou Stadium, the ground of Barcelona football club, is the largest stadium in Europe with a capacity of 98,800 spectators.

Hochenheim is a motor-racing circuit where the German Grand Prix sometimes takes place. One lap of the track is 4.574 kms.

The Centre Court at Wimbledon is famous worldwide. Now they have constructed the new roof, the All England Championship won't be interrupted because of rain.

A standard Olympic swimming pool is 50 metres long, 25 metres wide, and has a minimum depth of two metres.

GLOSSARY

**stadium** a large structure where people sit and watch sport.

**ground** an area of land where a game is played and people watch.

**club** A football club is the team, the management, and the ground.

**capacity** the amount or number that a space or container will hold.

**circuit** an area of land, often in a circle, where a race takes place. Syn track.

**lap** one journey around a track.

**court** a place where tennis, basketball, or badminton are played.

**worldwide** everywhere in the world. Syn all over the world.

**construct** sth build or make sth. **construction** n.

**championship** a competition to find the best player or team in a sport.

**interrupt** sth stop the progress of sth for a short period of time.

**standard** normal; average.

**minimum** smallest possible or smallest allowed. Opp maximum.

4. Complete the sentences.

   1. Worldwide means **all over the world**.
   2. A synonym for circuit is **track**.
   3. The noun from wide is **width**.
   4. The opposite of **minimum** is **maximum**.
   5. The noun from **deep** is **depth**.
   6. The noun from **construct** is **construction**.
   7. One journey round a track is a **lap**.

5. Complete the words in each text.

   1. Liverpool Football Club is planning to c__________ a new football stadium, with a capacity of over 60,000.
   2. The Chinese Grand Prix is raced over 56 l__________ of the Shanghai International C__________.
      It's the most expensive t__________ ever c__________, costing $240m.
   3. The French Open Tennis C__________ at Roland Garros is famous worldwide as the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on clay c__________.
   4. Unfortunately we don't have a s__________ Olympic swimming pool. The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres l__________ and 15 metres w__________.
      The minimum d__________ is one metre, and the maximum is two metres.
A The Olympics

- The first games took place in 776 BC with one competition, a race of about 192 metres.
- The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 competitors taking part in nine sports: athletics, cycling, fencing, gymnastics, weightlifting, shooting, swimming, tennis, and wrestling. By 2004, there were over 11,000 people competing in 28 sports.
- Gymnast Larissa Latynina holds the record for the most Olympic medals (18).
- Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where professionals are not allowed to compete.

Glossary

- take place (used about a meeting or an event) happen.
- competition a situation in which two or more people are trying to win sth or be better than sb (a person trying to win is a competitor).
- compete v. competitive adj.
- race a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins.
- take part in sth join with other people in an activity, see participate.
- medal a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.
- professional a person who plays a sport for money as their job. opp amateur.

Spotlight record

A record is the best performance in something, especially sport.
She holds the record for the long jump.
(He has the record.)
He broke the record in the 100 metres.
(He set a new record.)

1. Complete the words for sports.
   - shooting 2. weight
   - gym 3. fen
   - cyc 4. wre
   - ath 5. 

2. Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.
   - It's a long race medal.
   - It was a hard race competition.
   1. How many people took place/took part?
   2. Anyone can take part/participate.
   3. He broke the record/competition.
   4. The race takes place/takes part on Tuesday.
   5. Did she win a race/medal?
   6. Does she hold/carry the record?

3. Complete the sentences.
   - How many sportsmen and women took part in the last Olympics?
   1. The 2012 Olympics will place in London.
   2. It's hard for poor countries to against rich countries in certain events.
   3. A Russian gymnast holds the for the most Olympic medals won.
   4. There are a few Olympic amateurs, but now most of the are .
   5. The marathon (just over 42 kms) is the longest on foot at the Olympics.
   6. My uncle won a silver in the shooting at the 1984 Olympics.

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the sports?
In a very one-sided contest, Roger Federer defeated Andy Roddick 6–4, 6–0, 6–2 in the semi-final of the Australian Open to go through to his tenth grand slam final. Federer won the first set quite easily, then broke Roddick’s resistance in the second with some brilliant tennis. Afterwards, Roddick was very critical of his own performance, but praised his opponent for some outstanding tennis. Federer is now clearly the favourite to take his third Australian Open, and tenth grand slam overall. This would put him just one behind Rod Laver, a tremendous achievement for someone who is still only 25.

Glossary

one-sided
- If a game is one-sided, one person or team is much better than the other.

contest
- an activity between two players or teams to see who is best.

semi-final
- one of two games to decide who plays in the final.

final
- the last game or match in a competition.

resistance
- the action of trying to stop sth happening or stop sb doing sth. resist v.

brilliant
- very good, clever, or skilful. SYN outstanding.

critical of sth/sb
- saying what is wrong with sth/sb. criticize sth/sb v.

performance
- the way in which sb plays or does sth. perform v.

praise sb/sth
- say that sb/sth is very good. praise n.

opponent
- a person who plays against you in a sport or competition.

favourite
- the person or team who is expected to win. opp outsider.

overall
- including everything; in total.

achievement
- a thing that you have done successfully through hard work or skill. achieve sth v.

5 Complete the sentences.

1. The noun related to perform is _________.
2. The noun related to achieve is _________.
3. The verb related to critical is _________.
4. The noun related to praise is _________.
5. Outstanding is a synonym for _________.
6. An outsider is the opposite of a _________.
7. Beat sb is the same as _________.

6 Complete the sentences.

1. We were ________ in the semi-final, which was very disappointing.
2. Nadal won the match in the end, but it was a great ________ between them.
3. He was the winner in 1998, 2003, and again in 2008, so that’s three titles _________.
4. Bjorn Borg won Wimbledon five times, which is a fantastic _________.
5. He was the ________, so we expected him to win, but it was a very one-_______ contest.
6. Tiger Woods aims for perfection and is always very ________ of his own performance.
7. Who will her ________ be in the final? – I don’t know. It depends on the other ________-final.

Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
47 I can talk about books

A Types of book

I read a huge amount. As an editor, I’m always using reference books such as dictionaries, encyclopedias, manuals, catalogues, and so on. But I read a lot for pleasure too, and I particularly like poetry. At home all my books are arranged in alphabetical order (I know that’s a bit strange!). I’ve got loads of novels, murder mysteries, science fiction, etc. But there is non-fiction as well; I read quite a lot of biographies. My husband says I’m book-crazy.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reference book</td>
<td>a book you use to find a piece of information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encyclopedia</td>
<td>a book or set of books that gives information about many different subjects, arranged in alphabetical order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manual</td>
<td>a book that tells you how to do or use sth such as a car or a computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catalogue</td>
<td>a complete list of things you can buy or see somewhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasure</td>
<td>a feeling of enjoyment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poetry</td>
<td>poems in general (a poem is a piece of writing arranged in short lines which express thoughts and feelings through sound and rhythm).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alphabetical</td>
<td>listed in the same way as the alphabet: A, B, C, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novel</td>
<td>a book that tells a story about people or events that are not real.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mystery</td>
<td>a story in which the events are only explained at the end (e.g. a murder mystery).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science fiction</td>
<td>books about events that take place in the future, often involving travel in space. (syn sci-fi inf.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-fiction</td>
<td>books about real facts, people, events, etc. (see fiction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biography</td>
<td>the story of sb’s life written by someone different (an autobiography is the story of sb’s life written by that person).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fiction</th>
<th>Non-fiction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>catalogue ✓</td>
<td>murder mystery ✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences.

- A dictionary is arranged in alphabetical order.
- 1 If you don’t know the date of the French Revolution, look it up in an __________.
- 2 Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful __________.
- 3 Dictionaries are a kind of __________ book.
- 4 What kind of books do you read for __________ in the evenings?
- 5 Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I’m reading a murder __________ at the moment.
- 6 What’s the tenth letter of the __________? ~ It’s ‘J’.
- 7 Did David Beckham write his life story himself? ~ Yes, it’s his __________.
- 8 If you don’t know how your camera works, you should look in the __________.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

122 MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT
B Choosing a book

Booksellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read?

The title and front cover just attracted my attention.

I was browsing in a bookshop. I just picked up a paperback that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very readable and well written.

It was a gift, but I like the author so I was really pleased.

I looked through the first chapter – it looked fascinating.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>title</td>
<td>the name of a book, play, film, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover</td>
<td>the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attract sb's attention</td>
<td>If sth attracts your attention, it interests you so that you want to look at it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>browse</td>
<td>spend time pleasantly in a shop looking at things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paperback</td>
<td>a book with a thick paper cover (a hardback has a hard cover).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>readable</td>
<td>easy or interesting to read.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gift</td>
<td>a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their birthday. syn present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>author</td>
<td>the writer of a particular book, play, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look through sth</td>
<td>read sth quickly. syn skim sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chapter</td>
<td>one of the parts into which a book is divided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fascinating</td>
<td>very interesting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending.

- Who is the author ✓ gift □?
  1. The cover attracted my chapter □ attention □.
  2. The author was well known □ well written □.
  3. I read the second title □ chapter □.
  4. The book looked very readable □ well informed □.
  5. I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the hardback □ paperback □.
  6. I was in a bookshop the other day, just attracting □ browsing □.

5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not well known, but he's a good (1) a_____________. His book might attract a lot of (2) a_______________ because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t_______________! It's being published in hardback and (4) p_______________. I read the first (5) c_______________ about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f_______________ – I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c_______________ there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w______________.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. What kind of books do you find most fascinating?
2. What kind of reference books do you use most often?
3. Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops?
4. Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover?
5. Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why?

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT 123
**CHERRY BLOSSOM FESTIVAL, JAPAN**

Cherry blossom is the national flower of Japan. And as spring approaches, people make special trips to various viewing sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower. The trees are sometimes lit up at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, parades, folk music, religious ceremonies, and a beauty contest.

**THE RIO CARNIVAL (‘CARNAVAL’)**

One of the most spectacular entertainments in the world, Carnival is a wild four-day celebration of music, dance, and food and drink, all over Rio. The event means a lot to the people from the poorest neighbourhoods, who spend months in preparation. It is an opportunity for the whole community to go out and have fun together. It ends with the Samba Parade, for which the performers dress up in the most striking costumes.

---

**Glossary**

- **participate** (in sth) - become part of an activity. *syn take part in sth.*
- **occasion** - a time when sth happens.
- **fireworks** - objects that burn or explode in the sky with colours and noise.
- **ton** - a unit for measuring weight in Britain (one ton = 1.016 kilograms).
- **throw sth** - use your hand and arm to send an object through the air.
- **blossom** - a flower or mass of flowers especially on fruit trees in spring.
- **approach sb/sth** - come nearer to sb/sth.
- **light sth up** - make sth bright with light. *syn illuminate sth.*
- **contest** - a competition to see who is the best (e.g. a beauty contest).
- **spectacular** - very impressive; large, beautiful, and often with lots of colour.
- **entertainment** - an activity that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. theatre, film, music (the people who entertain you are entertainers).
- **wild** - exciting and enjoyable.
- **mean a lot to sb** - be very important to sb.
- **neighbourhood** - an area of a town and the people who live there.
- **community** - all the people who live in an area or town.
- **have fun** - enjoy yourself.
- **dress up** - put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event.
- **striking** - very attractive in a way that causes people to notice.
1 Find one spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.
   ▶ The event is really designed to serve the local community. ______
   1 It was really amazing to see the trees illuminated at night.
   2 Carnival takes place once a year, usually during the holiday season.
   3 As we approached the centre, we saw that the entertainment had started.
   4 It was a really espectacular evening, which we will never forget.
   5 The festival takes place every three years.
   6 The display of firework was absolutely amazing.
   7 They picked tons of grapes.
   8 Spring is the time when people make special trips to see the trees in blossom.

2 Match 1–8 with a–i.
   ▶ The trees are covered in ______
   1 Fireworks ______
   2 The crowd threw ______
   3 The festival means ______
   4 Everyone just wants to have ______
   5 People dress up in ______
   6 Lots of people want to ______
   7 There is even a beauty ______
   8 It was a very wild ______
   a contest.
   b flowers at the entertainers.
   c lit up the night sky.
   d fun together.
   e blossom.
   f take part in the event.
   g occasion.
   h a lot to the community.
   i special costumes.

3 Replace the word or phrase in italics with one which has a similar meaning.
   ▶ We had a good time watching the carnival parade. ______
   1 How many people took part in the event? ______
   2 We were going to a party so we decided to put on special clothes for it.
   3 The church is usually lit up at night. ______
   4 She was wearing a very attractive and unusual dress. ______
   5 It’s a great time because everyone goes onto the streets. ______
   6 The festival is an important event in the local area where I live. ______

4 Complete the questions.
   1 What is the most important ______ or ______ in your country?
   2 Do people ______ through the streets as a part of it?
   3 Do you have other kinds of ______ during it?
   4 Have you ever ______ ______ in a parade? If so, what did you do?
   5 Have you ever ______ ______ in a special costume for a festival?
      If so, what did you wear?
   6 Are there any special ______ when you have ______ at night?
   7 Do these different events mean ______ to you personally?
   8 Would you like to ______ ______ in any of the festivals on page 124?
      Which one(s) and why?

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6 Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Say the words.
Review: Media and entertainment

Unit 41

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.
   ➤ I spent the whose day waiting for the electrician to come. whole
   1 The president received many death threats during his life.
   2 Sales of newspapers have declined over recent years.
   3 I worry a lot about bomb stares where I live.
   4 Are you interested in currant affairs?
   5 I saw a huge demonstration today; people were protecting about the war.
   6 Do you usually get a dairy paper? ~ Yes, I get The Times.

2 One word is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.
   cultural editor pension made journalist claims headline
   ➤ I / a promise to help her, so I will do it. made
   1 I enjoy all sorts of events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
   2 I think he must receive a because he's nearly 70.
   3 I saw a strange newspaper the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
   4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the for three years.
   5 The government that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.
   6 My cousin's a newspaper; he writes articles about current affairs.

Unit 42

1 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?

1 the process of deciding which parts of a film to show.
2 film
3 the part an actor plays
4 the person who comes first in a competition
5 extraordinary; very much better than usual
6 the series of events that form the story of a film
7 not as good or interesting as you had hoped
8 rude language that may upset people
The letters in the grey squares make the word
Unit 43

1 Which words or phrases are being defined?
   1 an exhibition of paintings: a collection of paintings which are on display to the public
   2 an________ camera: one which works by itself
   3 a________ painting: a painting that shows the artist's feelings rather than showing the exact appearance of people or things
   4 ____________ focus: not able to be seen clearly
   5 a________ drawing: one that shows things as they really are
   6 a_________: a painting or drawing of the countryside
   7 a________: a type or kind
   8 a_________ artist: an artist who has a lot of ability and experience

Unit 44

1 Complete the words. Then write P next to those that are people.
   ► record ► violinist P
   1 c____ n___ d s___ ct___ r _____
   2 l___ d s___ ng___ r _____
   3 k___ y b___ r d p___ y___ r _____
   4 c___ m p___ s___ r _____
   5 f___ t___
   6 b___ n d
   7 t___ m p___ t _____
   8 m___ l___ d___
   9 f___ t___ s___ t _____
   10 g___ t___ r___ s t _____
   11 s___ x___ p___ n___
   12 s___ l___ r___ t___ s t _____

Unit 45

1 Tick (✓) the two correct words or phrases.
   ► five thousand spectators ✓ commentators □ supporters ✓
   1 a football ground □ stadium □ circuit □
   2 a tennis lap □ court □ umpire □
   3 the new spectator □ coach □ manager □
   4 a motor-racing track □ ground □ circuit □
   5 a football club □ referee □ umpire □
   6 a worldwide □ deep □ standard □ pool

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.
   ► The other members of the team chose him as their captain.
   1 They're ___________ a new stadium. It will be finished next year.
   2 The ground has a ___________ of 50,000.
   3 I watch my team every week. I've ___________ them for 25 years.
   4 Alonso completed the last ___________ of the circuit in one minute and 37 seconds.
   5 The game was ___________ for 25 minutes because the lights went out.
   6 A ___________ of 28,000 watched the last game.
   7 Who won the Drivers' World ___________ last year?
   8 The ___________ of a football pitch is about 100 metres; the ___________ is about 50.
Unit 46

1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

- It was an outstanding... f...
  1 About thirty took part  
  2 It was a very one-  
  3 He was critical  
  4 He still holds  
  5 She's the favourite  
  6 She's in the semi-  
  7 The game takes  
  8 He's a difficult  
  9 She won five titles  

  a overall  
  b of the performance.  
  c the record.  
  d place on Tuesday.  
  e in yesterday's race.  
  f to win.  
  g performance.  
  h sided contest.  
  i final  
  j opponent

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.
  1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.
  2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.
  3 A well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.
  4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.
  5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything.
  6 You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.
  7 An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else.
  8 A manual is something most people read for pleasure.

Unit 48

1 One word or phrase is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end. Use words from the box in the correct form.

| wild | festival | community ✓ | throw | mean | striking | parade | take part | neighbourhood |

- Anyone in the whole community can participate.
  1 Everyone through the main streets in the town.  
  2 The people in the where I live are very friendly.  
  3 It's a two-day, which we have every year.  
  4 It was quite a party; we had great fun.  
  5 Do you ever in parades?  
  6 I enjoy the carnival; it a lot to me.  
  7 She wore a really dress with gold flowers on it.  
  8 We all had to a ball and try to hit the moving object.
A guide to exam success

• Follow the invigilator’s instructions. Don’t take any forbidden items into the room, or try to communicate with other candidates. You will be disqualified for cheating.
• Before you start, read the paper carefully. Don’t waste time copying the questions; the examiner knows what they are.
• Planning is essential in successful writing. Devote 5–10 minutes to making notes.
• Have a positive attitude. It’s your chance to show what you know. And it will be a relief when it’s all over in a few hours.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>success</td>
<td>the achievement of sth you have wanted. succeed v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>follow</td>
<td>instructions. the person who tells you to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invigilator</td>
<td>the person watching students in the exam room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item</td>
<td>a thing or an object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicate</td>
<td>talk to or make signs to sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with sb</td>
<td>a person taking an exam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candidate</td>
<td>officially stop sb from taking part in sth because they have broken a rule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disqualify sb</td>
<td>do sth dishonest to get an advantage for yourself (a person is a cheat N).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheat</td>
<td>the written questions in an exam. It’s the person who will read and mark the candidate’s answer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper</td>
<td>if you read sth carefully, you read slowly and pay attention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>the act or process of making plans for sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examiner</td>
<td>completely necessary and important in a particular situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>planning</td>
<td>give proper time to sth/sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essential</td>
<td>the way you think, feel, or behave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devote time</td>
<td>the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sth/sb</td>
<td>relieved ADJ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attitude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the correct word.

- Read the planning (paper) carefully.
1. The examiner/invigilator watches students during the exam.
2. What’s the best way to achieve relief/success in the exam?
3. If you want to succeed/cheat, you should study hard.
4. A positive attitude/candidate will help you be more successful.
5. Students should communicate/follow the instructions they hear.
6. If you cheat, you will be disqualified/relieved.

2 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has very little success in exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a negative attitude to them. He’s so nervous that he can’t follow the instructions. He once forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket; he was accused of cheating and was disqualified for taking a forbidden item into the exam room. My mother gives him lots of advice, though; she tells him not to panic and to read the paper slowly before he writes anything, and that it’s essential that he plans his answers carefully. However, he never devotes enough time to the papers, so the exam must find his answers very difficult to understand.

In our house, it’s always such a relief if he passes an exam.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
### Academic life

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>academic</td>
<td>I enjoy academic subjects like history.</td>
<td>connected to education, especially school or university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undergraduate</td>
<td>Undergraduates usually do a three-year course.</td>
<td>a university student studying for their first degree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graduate</td>
<td>She's an Oxford graduate. He graduated last year.</td>
<td>a person who has finished their degree (when they finish, they graduate v).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tutor</td>
<td>You can ask your tutor for advice on your work.</td>
<td>sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professor</td>
<td>She's a professor of law.</td>
<td>the highest level of teacher in a university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lecture</td>
<td>I went to an interesting lecture on Italian politics.</td>
<td>a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject (the person is a lecturer n).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seminar</td>
<td>Are you going to the seminar this morning?</td>
<td>a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a tutor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debate</td>
<td>We had a great debate.</td>
<td>a formal discussion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend sth</td>
<td>You have to attend lectures.</td>
<td>go to sth, or be present at sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take notes</td>
<td>Don't forget to take notes.</td>
<td>write words quickly to help you remember sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read widely</td>
<td>Try to read widely.</td>
<td>read a lot of different kinds of books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write a thesis</td>
<td>I'm writing a thesis on global warming.</td>
<td>do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do research</td>
<td>You do research for a PhD.</td>
<td>do a long and careful study of a subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuous assessment</td>
<td>We don't have exams; it's all continuous assessment.</td>
<td>a way of judging students by looking at the work they do during the year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Tick (✓) the words that are people.**
   - professor ✓
   - assessment ✗
   - thesis      
   - graduate    
   - undergraduate 
   - seminar 
   - research 
   - lecture 
   - tutor 
   - lecturer 

2. **Complete the text.**

   If you are an undergraduate at university in Britain, you spend a lot of time studying alone, but you also have to (1) a__________ a lot of (2) s__________ and (3) l__________ and take (4) n__________. In seminars, the discussion is usually led by a (5) t__________. You have to read (6) w__________ and you may have to express your opinions on a range of (7) a__________ topics. In many courses, there is continuous (8) a__________: the marks you get for your essays go towards your final results, after which, if you are successful, you (9) g__________.

3. **Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?**
Advice for new students

- In Britain, many university students live away from home. This means you get the freedom and opportunity to meet new people. Most students choose to live in a hall of residence in their first year, where you are less likely to be homesick or lonely.

- Student life is all about learning to manage your money: tuition fees, loans, bills, accommodation fees, etc. You may be able to get a scholarship, and many students find part-time jobs to help pay the bills.

- At university, you can be flexible about when you study, but be sure to get out of bed in time for lectures, do your work on time, and plan your revision period before exams.

Glossary

| away from home | in a different place from your home. or at home. |
| freedom | the right or ability to say or do what you want. |
| opportunity | the possibility to do sth that you want to do. syn chance. |
| hall of residence | in universities a building where students live. |
| homesick | sad because you are away from home and you miss it. |
| manage sth | be in control of sth. |
| fees | money you pay for the professional advice or service of a doctor, lawyer, etc. (tuition fees are the money that you pay to be taught). |
| loan | If you take out a loan, you borrow money, usually from a bank. |
| scholarship | money that an organization gives sb to help them study. |
| flexible | able to change easily. flexibility n. |
| revision | the process of studying sth again to prepare for an exam. revise v. |

4. Complete the sentences with words from the box.

revision on time in time manage flexible freedom homesick

▷ I can see you any day this week - I can be __________Flexible________.
1. I had the ___________ to meet the president.
2. The train was ___________, fortunately.
3. I think children have too much ___________.
4. Do lots of ___________ before the exam.
5. I don't know how to ___________ my money.
6. I got there ___________ to see Joel before he left.
7. I lived abroad for a year but I was ___________ and I missed my family.

5. Complete the questions. Then write your answers, or ask another student.

ABOUT YOU

1. Do students usually live at home, or a ___________ from home?
2. Do most students live in halls of r ___________?
3. Do they have to pay t ___________ fees?
4. Do they have to take out l ___________ to pay the bills?
5. Can they get a s ___________ to help pay for their studies?
6. Would you like the c ___________ to study abroad?

6. Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?
Applying for a job with FamAid UK

Wherever you are based, you can apply for any advertised vacancy.

Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually be expected to have a valid UK work permit. For jobs outside the UK, the local FamAid office will advise you about the permit you may need.

Closing dates

Your application must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will be acknowledged automatically by email.

Selection process

If we would like you to attend an interview, we will contact you. At that time, and if required, we will also assess other skills you may have or need.

If you are not successful, we will contact you and, wherever possible, give you feedback.

If you are the successful candidate, we will offer you the position, but this is subject to satisfactory references. We shall also request confirmation that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

Glossary

apply for sth • ask for sth in writing (often a job or course). application n.
be based somewhere • If you are based in a place, that place is the centre for your work.
vacancy • a job that is available for sb to do.
work permit • an official document which says you are allowed to work.
valid • If sth is valid, it is legally acceptable and can be used.
advise sb • tell sb the best thing to do; syn give sb advice (advice n, u).
acknowledge sth • let sb know that you have received sth from them. acknowledgement n.
automatically • without any human control.

process • a series of things that are done for a particular reason.
interview • a meeting in which sb is asked questions to find out if they are suitable for a job, course, etc. (the person who asks the questions is an interviewer). interview sb v.
contact sb • phone or write to sb.
give sb feedback • decide on the quality or ability of sth/sb. assessment n.
candidate • give sb advice or criticism about how they have done sth.
reference • a person who makes a formal application for a job.
confirmation • a statement or letter which describes sb's character and ability to do a job (a person who writes this is a referee).

spotlight Formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example: attend sth (= go to/or sth), require sth (= need sth), request sth (= ask for sth), subject to sth (= depending on sth), position (= job), and shall (= will). The words in bold are more formal than the words in brackets, which we would normally use in spoken English.
1. Cover the glossary and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confirm</td>
<td>acknowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interview</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- My old boss said he would be my reference. My old boss said he would be my referee.
  1. They said they'd contact to me. They said they'd contact me.
  2. Is she applying a job? Is she applying for a job?
  3. Have you got a work permission? Have you got a work permit?
  4. The company is based on Tokyo. The company is based in Tokyo.
  5. He gave me some good advices. He gave me some good advice.
  6. She gave me feedback after the interview. She gave me feedback after the interview.
  7. I have to confirm it in writing. I have to confirm it in writing.
  8. If you apply for a job, it's quite a long processment. If you apply for a job, it's quite a long process.

3. Replace the underlined words with a more formal word or phrase with the same meaning.

- We will contact you as soon as possible. Shall we contact you as soon as possible?
  1. Has the company asked for references? Has the company asked for references?
  2. They offered me the job on Thursday. They offered me the job on Thursday.
  3. I went for an interview last week. I went to an interview last week.
  4. If you need more information, please contact me. If you need more information, please contact me.
  5. We're going to give him the job, depending on satisfactory references. Depending on satisfactory references, we're going to give him the job.

4. Complete the sentences with a single word.

- You can't use this visa any longer – it's not valid. You can't use this visa any longer – it's not valid.
  1. I work in lots of places, but I'm in Bristol.
  2. She was angry because they didn't that they had received her letter.
  3. He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven't had written yet.
  4. They said they would me by phone when they've made a decision.
  5. You don't need to ask for confirmation; they will reply.
  6. They interviewed four other for the job as well as me.
  7. Val wrote to the company for a job, but there are no at the moment.
  8. I hope they'll me feedback after the interview.
  9. He wants to for the job, but he still has to fill in the form.
  10. You have to do tests and have several interviews; it's quite a long

5. ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

1. What jobs have you applied for in the past?
2. How many interviews have you had?
3. Have any interviewers given you feedback after the interview?
4. How many times have you been the successful candidate?
5. Who were your referees?
6. Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, where?

6. Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings and other parts of speech?
A Careers

Careers 4 U advertises jobs across a range of market sectors. Register by email now and you can be first in line to apply for jobs as they appear. Just complete the following:

Please select any two sectors in which you have experience and/or qualifications.

- engineering
- military
- training
- publishing
- manufacturing
- management
- retail
- finance
- recruitment

Glossary

sector a part of the business activity of a country (public sector = controlled by the government; private sector = controlled by private companies).

experience the things that you have done in your life.

qualifications the exams you have passed or courses you have finished.

engineering the activity of designing roads, railways, bridges, etc.

military connected with soldiers, or the army, navy, and air force.

training the activity of teaching people the skills they need for a job.

publishing the business of producing and selling books, magazines, etc.

manufacturing the business of producing goods in factories.

management the control of a business or organization.

retail selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.

finance the activity of managing money.

recruitment the business of finding people for job vacancies.

1 What sector do these people work in?

- I produce books and then we sell them. publishing.
- I teach people their jobs. education.
- I'm a soldier. military.
- I sell clothes. retail.
- I design motorways. manufacturing.
- I produce cars. manufacturing.
- I'm the boss of a company. management.
- I control the money in our business. finance.
- I fill job vacancies in companies. recruitment.

2 Complete the words in the text.

I've just left university and I'm hoping to have a career in the private (1) sector, and eventually I'd like to be in (2) management and have my own business. I had a couple of jobs in small companies in my holidays, so I have a little experience. I'm hoping to work for a large company to start with; they do a lot of (3) training, and I'll be able to get some extra (4) qualifications too. My father's in the legal (5) profession, but for some reason, he wants me to have some experience in the (6) military as a soldier. I've no idea why, though.

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. Which sectors do you have experience or qualifications in?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Job</th>
<th>What does he/she do?</th>
<th>Glossary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plumber</td>
<td>installs and repairs water pipes, taps, central heating, baths, etc.</td>
<td>install sth put in some equipment so that it is ready to use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mechanic</td>
<td>repairs engines, especially in vehicles.</td>
<td>vehicle e.g. car, bus, lorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrician</td>
<td>installs, connects, or repairs electrical wiring.</td>
<td>electrical of or about electricity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpenter</td>
<td>makes or repairs parts of a building and other objects made of wood.</td>
<td>object a thing that can be seen or touched but it is not alive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nanny</td>
<td>takes care of / cares for children in their own home.</td>
<td>take care of / care for sb/sth look after sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel agent</td>
<td>makes travel arrangements for people.</td>
<td>make arrangements for sb/sth make plans or preparations for sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estate agent</td>
<td>buys and sells houses or land for people.</td>
<td>land an area of ground; an area used for a special purpose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>importer</td>
<td>imports goods.</td>
<td>import sth buy goods from another country to sell in your own country, or export sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priest</td>
<td>performs religious ceremonies in some religions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civil servant</td>
<td>works for the civil service, i.e. all government departments except the military.</td>
<td>i.e. in other words; that is (used when you are explaining or defining sth).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales rep/representative</td>
<td>travels to different places and sells the products of a particular company.</td>
<td>product a thing that people make or grow in order to sell.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Cover the table above. Are these sentences true or false? Write T or F.

- An importer exports goods to sell. **F**
- An estate agent sells holidays. **F**
- A carpenter makes wooden objects. **T**
- A civil servant works for a company. **F**
- A priest conducts religious ceremonies. **T**
- A mechanic can repair vehicles. **T**
- An electrician fixes electrical wiring. **T**
- A plumber can fix your central heating. **T**

5 Cross out one word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

- I haven’t got central heating; I need a plumber to **install** a new system. **install**
- Our estate agent made the arrangements, i.e. **buying** tickets, booking hotels. **buy**
- The estate agent sold the landing which belonged to the farm. **belong**
- What produces does that company make? **produce**
- My sister does quite a lot of training for the civil servant. **sold**
- I believe he exports silver jewellery from abroad. **exports**
- A nanny takes care for children. **for**
- Sales representants have to travel a lot. **representatives**

6 **Test yourself. Look at the jobs and cover the other columns. What do the people do?**
53 I can describe a career

A Career structure

Two years ago, I got a challenging job with good prospects in local radio. I worked hard and, as a reward, I was promoted. I was delighted. I was quickly transferred to a different department. Then things went wrong: one colleague got the sack, and another handed in his notice. After that, ten people were made redundant. I didn’t want to be out of work, so I decided to look elsewhere. I applied for a job in TV and was appointed assistant director. Amazing!

Glossary

challenging difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable. challenge n.
prospects (pl.) chances of being successful in the future.
reward sth you get because you have done sth helpful, worked hard, etc. reward sb v.
promote sb (usually passive) give sb a better job at a higher level in a company. promotion n.
transfer sb/sth (from ... to ...) move sb/sth from one place to another.
department a section of a business, university, etc.
hand in your notice say officially that you want to leave your job. syns resign, quit inf.
make sb redundant (often passive) make sb leave their job because they are not needed any more.
out of work not working and unable to find a job. syns unemployed.
elsewhere in or to another place.
appoint sb choose sb for a job.

spotlight dismiss, sack, fire

An employer may dismiss an employee if their work is not good enough or if they have done something wrong. In less formal English, you can say sack sb, give sb the sack, or fire sb. An employee can get the sack.

He was sacked. was given the sack. got the sack. was fired / was dismissed.

for being rude.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a challenge</th>
<th>a reward</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>out of work</td>
<td>unemployed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>be promoted</td>
<td>be appointed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>get the sack</td>
<td>sack someone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fire someone</td>
<td>dismiss someone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>prospects</td>
<td>chances of success</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>hand in your notice</td>
<td>resign</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>be sacked</td>
<td>be promoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>transfer sb</td>
<td>move sb to another office</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>make someone redundant</td>
<td>fire someone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences with a single word.

I was glad to be appointed to the job I have. (chosen for the job)

1 My job’s very (difficult but interesting)
2 I want to transfer to another (section of the business)
3 I have good (chances of success)
4 I’d really love to be (given a better job in the company)
5 I’m bored at work, so I’m going to look (in another place)
6 I’ve never been (out of work)
7 I’d hate to have to (dismiss)
8 If I hated my job, I would definitely (hand in my notice)

ABOUT YOU

3 ABOUT YOU Have you got a job? If so, are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false, or talk to another student who has a job.
A job with responsibility

KATE Amy, I know you work on reception at the sports centre, but what does that involve?

AMY Well, I handle all customer bookings, and answer enquiries over the phone or face-to-face. Occasionally I also have to deal with complaints from members of the public, and if there’s a problem, I’m the one who has to solve it.

KATE So it’s not just clerical duties, then.

AMY Oh, no. Some weekends I’m in charge of the whole centre, and in an emergency it’s my job to make sure that everyone is safe. I have a lot of responsibility.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>what does (your job) involve?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>handle sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enquiry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face-to-face complaint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>members of the public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve a problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clerical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in charge of sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make sure responsibility</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

= what do you have to do (in your job)?

take suitable action in a situation. SYN deal with sth/sb.
a question about sth (make an enquiry).
with and looking at sb.
a statement that you are not satisfied with sth (make a complaint). complain v.
people in general (also the public).
find an answer to a problem. SYN find a solution.
connected with office work, especially keeping records or accounts (the person who does this is a clerk).
the tasks you do when you are at work.
in a position of control over sth/sb. SYN responsible for sth/sb.
check sth so that you can be certain about it.
The fact or duty of being in control of sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong.

4 One word is missing in each line. Rewrite the sentences, adding the missing word.

- does her job involve? What does her job involve?
  1 I’d like to an enquiry about the club.
  2 I talked to her to-face.
  3 It’s very hard to deal this situation.
  4 Who’s charge of this department?
  5 You have to sure the door is locked.
  6 We’re not responsible the cleaning.
  7 Do you know how to the problem?
  8 I want to a complaint about the service.

5 Complete the texts.

A I used to have a boring office job – I was a clerk in the civil service for five years, but I couldn’t stand it and left. I’ve now got a job in a tourist information office in Liverpool and I really like it. My d include helping people to find accommodation, dealing with their e about places to visit, and finding s to their travel problems. I’m also r for the Beatles tour: I take people to John Lennon and Paul McCartney’s childhood homes. I try to make s everything goes well.

B I work in a travel agent’s, and my job organizing trips for people. I love meeting the p and I really enjoy the money side of things. Some of my work is just routine work; other times, I have a lot of r. For example, if a customer’s holiday goes wrong, I have to d with their c.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
Job questionnaire

1. Do you feel your job is stressful?
2. How much time off do you get every year?
3. Do you ever have to do shift work?
4. Do you often have to work overtime?
5. Do you normally receive an annual bonus?
6. Are you entitled to sick pay?
7. Do you have the right to join a trade union?
8. Do people in your kind of job ever go on strike?

Glossary

- **working conditions**: the arrangements made at a place of work for physical comfort and safety.
- **stressful**: making you worry a lot. n.
- **shift work**: a pattern of work in which you sometimes work during the day and sometimes at night.
- **overtime**: the time you spend working after your normal working hours (you can work overtime or do overtime). n.
- **bonus**: an extra payment that is added to what you normally receive.
- **sick pay**: money you receive when you are ill and cannot work.
- **be entitled to (do) sth**: be allowed sth or to do sth because it is the law.
- **union or trade union**: an organization of people in the same kind of work who try to get better pay and working conditions for their members.
- **go on strike**: refuse to work for a period of time as a protest for more money, better conditions, etc.

Spotlight: **time off**

If you have, get, or take time off, you are not at work, school, etc. perhaps because you're ill, or on holiday. I had a day off to go to a wedding. He's taking a month off work.

---

1. Complete the words.
   - I often do shift work.
   - I belong to a union.
   - We went on strike last year.
   - Do you get an annual bonus?
   - Our working conditions are good.
   - I often have to work overtime.
   - She took two weeks off in summer.
   - Does he suffer from stress in his job?

2. Write the words in the correct order, and add the final word.
   - you / working / have / good / do. Do you have good working conditions?
   - is / she / trade / member / a / of / a / ?
   - we / sick / are / to / entitled / ?
   - take / like / to / I'd / week / a
   - you / shift / don't / why / like / ?
   - I / left / today / time / on / didn't / I / do
   - go / why / the / on / did / workers / ?

3. **ABOUT YOU** If you have a job, write your answers to the questionnaire. If you haven't got a job, ask a student who has.

4. **Test yourself.** Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.
Review: Work and study

Unit 49

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.
   ► I'm a careful driver. CAREFULLY I drive carefully.
   1 You have to do what he tells you. INSTRUCTIONS
   2 Don't talk to anyone. COMMUNICATE
   3 The way you think and behave is important. ATTITUDE
   4 It was a relief to finish the exam. RELIEVED
   5 Spend ten minutes making notes. DEVOTE
   6 He would never do anything dishonest in an exam. CHEAT
   7 If you don't get what you want, try again. SUCCEED
   8 Do we need dictionaries? ESSENTIAL

Unit 50

1 Tick (✓) the words or phrases that are correct.
   ► At university, students have to attend lectures ✓ read widely ✓ teach professors □
   1 A tutor □ seminar □ lecture □ is a type of class at a university.
   2 Some students live and study at home □ homesick □ away from home □
   3 Undergraduates □ Professors □ Tutors □ are types of teacher.
   4 In order to have enough money, students often pay tuition fees □ take out a loan □
      try to get a scholarship □
   5 In seminars, students may have a debate □ take notes □ write a thesis □

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.
   ► I won't have enough money to live on, so I'll have to / out a loan. take
   1 Our seminar started time at 10.00.
   2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall residence.
   3 How much were the tuition for your summer course?
   4 We had to hurry but we arrived just time for the beginning of the lecture.
   5 At the moment, she's some medical research as part of her studies.
   6 I would like to have the to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
   7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous.
   8 Do you study away home?

Unit 51

1 There is a spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.
   ► Do you need a reference? reference
   1 Is there a job vacancie? vacancy
   2 Did they give you any advise? advice
   3 Did he acknowledge the application?
   4 I haven't got a valid work permit.
   5 They assess people differently.
6 Do they require more information?  
7 They reply automatically.  
8 It's a long selection process.

2 Complete the dialogue.
A You know that job vacancy. Did you (1) ________ for it?
B Yes, and I went for an (2) ________ on Wednesday.
A Wow. How did it go?
B It seemed OK, but they didn't give me any (3) ________ afterwards, so it's hard to know. They said they'd (4) ________ me by the end of the week if they were going to offer me the job.
A What about (5) ________?
B They said they'd already spoken to one of my referees.
A Oh really? And were there many other (6) ________?
B Yes, over a hundred. I'm not sure if I want the job because it's based (7) ________ Scotland. Still, at least I don't need a work (8) _________.

Unit 52

1 Tick (✓) the correct words.
   ► A plumber ✓ A nanny □ An electrician ✓ often installs things.
   1 A carpenter □ A travel agent □ A plumber □ gets his hands dirty.
   2 A nanny □ A plumber □ An importer □ looks after people.
   3 A civil servant □ A carpenter □ An estate agent □ usually works in an office.
   4 An electrician □ A sales rep □ A mechanic □ often has to repair things.
   5 A sales rep □ A civil servant □ A travel agent □ wants to sell you something.
   6 A plumber □ An estate agent □ A carpenter □ has had a lot of technical training.

2 Complete the dialogue.
   ► Miguel produces his own magazine. ~ Really? And how long has he worked in publishing?
   1 Dr Erman seems very good, but how much ________ does he have? ~ Oh, I think he's been in the medical ________ for about ten years now.
   2 Who made all the travel ________ for your last holiday? ~ My wife did, but that's her job; she's a travel ________.
   3 How long has your father been a civil ________? ~ Thirty-five years. He's spent his whole ________ in the civil ________.
   4 Did the company give you much ________ after you started? ~ Yes, they sent me on several courses, and I took exams to get extra ________.
   5 What kind of ________ does she sell? ~ Electrical stuff mostly, but she's only been a sales ________ for six months.

Unit 53

1 Complete the text using words from the box in the correct form.

clerk ✓ transfer charge responsibility involve challenging resign complaints elsewhere promote work deal

140 REVIEW: WORK AND STUDY
When I left school, I got a job as a **clerk** with an insurance company. It mainly (1) _________ filling in forms and typing lists of names, so it wasn’t very (2) _________ . After a few months, though, I was (3) _________ and they gave me a job where I was (4) _________ with the public, which was much more interesting. Eventually, I was (5) _________ to another department where I had to handle customers’ (6) _________ , which wasn’t much fun. I hated it so I decided to (7) _________ and look (8) _________ . In fact, that was rather stupid of me, because I was out of (9) _________ for several months. Anyway, in the end I got a fantastic job working in a zoo, and I’m still here. I’m in (10) _________ of the snakes, which is an enormous (11) _________ but I love it!

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?

1 choose someone for a job
2 something you get when you have been helpful or worked hard
3 if you resign, you hand in your ____________
4 out of work
5 chances of being successful in the future
6 the tasks you do when you are at work
7 connected with office work, such as keeping records and doing accounts
8 find a solution to a problem
9 deal with something or control it
The letters in the grey squares make the word ____________.

Unit 54

1 Complete the words in the sentences.

► She’s been very ill, but she doesn’t get any sick ____________.
1 He always looks worried because he has such a ____________ job.
2 Everyone has the ____________ to a lunch break – it’s the law.
3 I don’t belong to a ____________ un__________ any longer.
4 Are you ever ____________ to sick pay in your job?
5 I often have to work nights, but I don’t really like s__________ work.
6 Bus drivers have a basic 35-hour week, but many of them work o__________.
7 A lot of people get an annual b__________ in addition to their salaries.
8 Some of the workers went on s__________ last year for higher pay.
## Financial terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We need to raise capital.</td>
<td>capital the money you need to start a business (to raise capital is to find the money you need).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The company has an annual turnover of $20 million.</td>
<td>turnover the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time (annual = every year). syn sales revenue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating costs have gone up this year.</td>
<td>operating costs the amount of money that a business needs to spend to continue as a business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflation is now at 3 per cent.</td>
<td>inflation a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We paid £1 million in tax.</td>
<td>tax money you have to pay to the government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The company made a pre-tax profit of £2 million.</td>
<td>profit the money you make in a business after paying costs (pre-tax is before paying tax). syn loss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think the company has cash flow problems.</td>
<td>cash flow the movement of money into and out of a business (a cash flow problem means more money is going out than coming in).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I need a bank loan.</td>
<td>bank loan money the bank lends and sb borrows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They took out a loan.</td>
<td>take out obtain (you also take out insurance).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We pay a lot of interest.</td>
<td>interest extra money you pay when you borrow money (the interest rate is the exact cost of borrowing).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Match 1–8 with a–i.

1. annual
2. pay
3. raise
4. interest
5. take out
6. sales
7. make
8. cash

- annual
- operating
- pay
- raise
- interest
- take out
- sales
- make
- cash

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a loan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>revenue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>a profit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>turnover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>10% interest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complete the sentences.

### spotlight: finance

**Finance** can be:

1. the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business (**They need to raise more finance.**). **finance** **v**.

2. the activity of managing money in a company. **financial** adj. (**He's the new Director of Finance / Financial Director.**)

### Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the examples mean?
### Financial trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trend</th>
<th>Common verbs + examples</th>
<th>Common nouns + examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$$$\uparrow$$</td>
<td>go up, rise, increase, grow</td>
<td>rise, increase, growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prices have risen by 10 per cent.</td>
<td>We saw some growth last year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$$$\downarrow$$</td>
<td>go down, fall, drop</td>
<td>fall, drop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interest rates fell last month.</td>
<td>There's been a drop in sales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$$$\rightarrow$$</td>
<td>remain unchanged/stable</td>
<td>stability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>stay the same</td>
<td>There has been stability in the markets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$$$\downarrow$$</td>
<td>peak</td>
<td>peak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sales peaked in the third quarter. (third quarter = July to September)</td>
<td>Sales reached a peak in 2007.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$$$\sim$$</td>
<td>fluctuate</td>
<td>fluctuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sales have fluctuated all year.</td>
<td>There has been some fluctuation in prices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a slight</td>
<td>rise in costs</td>
<td>very small.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a gradual</td>
<td>rise in profits</td>
<td>slow and over a long period of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a steady</td>
<td>increase in the interest rate</td>
<td>slow but regular and continuing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a significant</td>
<td>fall in profits</td>
<td>noticeable and important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a sharp</td>
<td>fall in sales</td>
<td>very large and sudden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

4. **Complete the sentences on the right.** The meaning must stay the same.

- There has been a sharp fall in sales.  Sales have **fallen sharply**.
- 1. There was significant growth in sales.  Sales **increased significantly**.
- 2. There was a gradual rise in the price.  The price **rose gradually**.
- 3. There was a slight fall in profits.  Profits **fell slightly**.
- 4. There has been stability in costs.  Costs have remained **unchanged**.
- 5. There has been a steady rise in sales.  Sales have **risen steadily**.

---

5. **Complete the text.** Use a different word each time.

Last year started well. In the first quarter sales **increased significantly.** The second quarter was even better: sales increased **steadily** in the third quarter and reached a **peak** at 90,000. By the end of September, sales had **fallen** almost 50 per cent. In the last quarter there was a slight **drop**, but it was still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales **rose** in the first half of the year — up one month and down the next — but in the last three months they have remained **unchanged**.

---

6. **Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.**

- There was a **sight fall** in 2003.  Sales **fell slightly** in 2006.
- 1. Sales **fell sharply** in 2004.  In 2007, sales **fell sharply**.
- 2. There was a **drop** in 2005.  In 2008, sales **fell sharply**.
A Setting up a business

Setting up a business is a risk. Twenty per cent of new businesses fail within twelve months; fifty per cent go out of business in three years. It may be because of poor quality services or goods, or one of these common mistakes:

- inadequate market research
- poor control over suppliers and customers
- being over-ambitious and over-optimistic
- poor management of stock and assets
- inadequate knowledge of rivals
- employing the wrong people

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>set up a business</td>
<td>start a business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>risk</td>
<td>the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future. risky adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>(about a business) be unable to continue. syn go out of business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quality</td>
<td>the good or bad condition or character of sth compared with similar things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goods (pl.) things that are made to be sold.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inadequate</td>
<td>not sufficient; not good enough. ope adequate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>market research</td>
<td>the study of what people want to buy and why.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplier</td>
<td>a company that provides sth for another company. supply v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stock</td>
<td>everything a company has for sale at any particular time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asset</td>
<td>a thing of value that a person or company owns (e.g. a factory).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rival</td>
<td>a person or company that competes with another. syn competitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employ sb</td>
<td>give sb a job (an employer is sb who does this; an employee is sb who works for an employer). syn take sb on inf.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle things in this list that you can own or sell.

competitor business employee asset market rival goods supplier stock quality

2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

- This business is risky.
  1 When did she start the business?  This business is a risk.
  2 Why did the business fail?  When did she set?
  3 We are the main company that supplies them.  Why did they go out?
  4 Their products aren't very good.  We are their main.
  5 Do you still employ him?  Their products are of poor.
  6 When did you employ her?  Are you still his.
  7 When did you take.

3 What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences using words from the box.

rivals optimistic research assets estimates employs suppliers

- The company doesn't have effective controls over its customers or its suppliers.
  1 The company doesn't carry out adequate market.
  2 The company is poor at managing its stock and its.
  3 The company doesn't have a very good knowledge of its.
  4 The company the wrong people.
  5 The company is over- , and it over- what it can achieve.
The first years may be a struggle, but if a company can survive this difficult period, it may develop into a successful business:
- customer numbers grow and the company gains a share of the market
- turnover increases - the company breaks even
- the brand develops a reputation
- the company needs more capital and may sell shares to the public to obtain the finance
- eventually this growth may result in the company being taken over

**Glossary**

growth
- the process of increasing in size or number. **grow** v.

struggle
- a period of action to achieve sth difficult. **effort. struggle** v.

survive
- continue to exist in a difficult situation. **survival** n.

gain sth
- obtain sth. **off lose sth.**

share
- a part of sth that has been divided.

break even
- not make a profit or a loss.

brand
- the name under which one or more products are sold. e.g. 'Nike'.

reputation
- the opinion that people have about sth (it can be good or bad).

shares
- (usu pl) units of equal value that a company is divided into and which are then sold to raise money (the buyers then own part of the company).

take over a company
- take control of another company. **takeover** n.

**spotlight market**
The market is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods, e.g. There is a large market for these computers.
It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something, e.g. the European market. the teenage market.
The market leader is the company with the biggest share of a market.

4. Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

Will they continue to grow?
1. Will they take it over?
2. People say the company is very good.
3. They won't make a profit or a loss.
4. It's the biggest company in the market.
5. Are you worried they may not survive?
6. They've survived, but it's been difficult.

Will there be continued growth?
1. Will there be a takeover?
2. The company has a very good reputation.
3. They will survive.
4. It's the market.
5. Are you worried about their reputation?
6. They've survived, but it's been a difficult year.

5. Complete the sentences.

It's been a struggle, but I think the business will survive.
1. The company now has a 10 per cent share of the market.
2. I bought 1,000 shares in that company. They are now worth over £10,000.
3. People go on buying the same type of breakfast cereal because it's familiar.
4. There has been considerable growth in the soft drinks market: up 25 per cent in two years.
5. I think the company may be taken over by the end of the year.
6. It's been a good year: we've gained another 5 per cent of the market.

6. Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
GECKO HEADGEAR Ltd is a designer and manufacturer of safety helmets for use at sea. The company was founded in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling surfboards. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to diversify. Fortunately, he was able to exploit a gap in the market.

"As a surfer, I could see the potential for a light helmet that gave protection and retained heat." He made one and sold a few to other surfers. He then did some research and discovered that men who worked in lifeboats might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be adapted for their use, and for that he needed investment: he took out a bank loan and employed more staff. "A good relationship with the bank is crucial if you're developing an innovative product. In our case the process took three years."

After the contract to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and has always used customer feedback to refine the product.

Partnerships with suppliers have also been a key factor in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to keep ahead of rivals.

Glossary

manufacturer - a person or company that makes things using machines.
manufacture v. syns producer, produce v.

found sth - start an organization (the person is the founder).

diversify - introduce a wider range of products.

exploit sth - make the best possible use of sth. exploitation n.

a gap in the market - an opportunity to create a new product, which has not been produced by other companies.

potential - the ability to develop into sth or sth better in the future.

retain sth - keep or continue to have sth. retention n.

do research - do a careful study of sth to find out more information.

investment - the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result. invest in sth v.

crucial - very important.

innovative - introducing new ideas. innovate v.

innovation n.

case - a written legal agreement (a person signs a contract).

feedback - information and comments from people who have used sth.

partnership - a relationship between two people or organizations.

key factor - one of the things that influences a decision or affects a situation.

keep ahead (of sb) - stay in front of sb.

Spotlight: Verbs of change

To alter sth means to change sth, but not completely.
We've had to alter our plans.

To adapt sth means to change sth so you can use it in a different situation.
We've adapted the product for the Asian market.

To refine sth means to change sth a little to make it better.
They have refined the products over several years.
1. Answer these questions (you may need to read the text again).
   - What is Gecko Headgear? A company that manufactures safety helmets.
   - When was it founded?
   - Why did Jeff need to diversify?
   - What qualities did the helmet have to have?
     - it had to be light
     - 
     - c)
   - How did Jeff discover that men in lifeboats were potential users?
   - How did he get the money for extra staff?
   - What does he say about the relationship with a bank?
   - What information has he used to refine the products?
   - What was a key factor in his success?

2. Rearrange the letters on the left to make words. Use the definitions to help you.
   - ROTACF factor one of the things that influences a situation
   - TOCCARNT a written legal agreement
   - NATERI keep or continue to have something
   - RUCCLIA very important
   - EFKABEDD comments from people who use something
   - VIONOTA introduce new ideas
   - REDYFIVS introduce a wider range of products
   - PERITNARPH a relationship between two organizations
   - LOPENTAT the ability to develop into something

3. Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.
   - We have to keep ahead of/acquire our competitors.
   - His company has the ability to exploit/alter the market more fully.
   - They are the main producers/manufacturers.
   - It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback/potential to be very successful.
   - If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit/adapt it.
   - It was a key/crucial factor in the decision.
   - She invested/founded the company ten years ago.
   - They don't have enough money: they need more research/investment.
   - We may have to alter/adapt the product.

4. Complete the sentences.
   - We may have to alter a few things to get the product exactly as we want it.
   - They were lucky because they saw a opportunity in the market.
   - Some people take out a loan. In my circumstances, I borrowed money from my parents.
   - They are one of the leading producers of washing machines in this country.
   - If we want to find out, we'll have to do more research.
   - How much money did she have in the company?
   - Innovation helps a company to keep ahead of its competitors.
   - They can't change their minds now: they've signed the contract.
   - We must keep our most important customers. We can't afford to lose them.
   - Profit was not a big factor in my decision to invest in the company.
   - It's only one product and it's very limited; the company needs to grow.

5. Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?
A The basis of marketing

Marketing is the activity of presenting, advertising, and selling a company's products. To do that, you need to understand the company's strengths and weaknesses, and be aware of possible opportunities and threats. This is called a 'SWOT analysis':

- Strengths, e.g. specialist skills in the company
- Weaknesses, e.g. limited financial resources
- Opportunities, e.g. increased demand for a product from a particular market sector
- Threats, e.g. a downturn in the economy, reducing overall demand

Glossary

- advertising: the activity of telling people about a product to try to make them buy it. advertise v.
- strength: a good quality or feature. opposite weakness.
- opportunity: a situation in which it is possible to achieve sth.
- threat: a possible danger or problem.
- limited: small in number or amount. opposite unlimited.
- resources: (plural) the supply of sth that you need, such as money or skills.
- demand (for sth): the need for sth from a particular group of people.
- sector: a part of an economy, society, or area of activity.
- downturn: a time when an economy or industry is weaker than normal. opposite upturn.
- reduce sth: make sth less or smaller. increase sth. reduction n.

1. Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

   - Limited demand B
   1. A number of opportunities. G
   2. They have a lot of skilled workers. G
   3. There are a number of threats. B
   4. Unlimited financial resources. B
   5. A reduction in demand. B
   6. An upturn in the economy. G

2. Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word. The meaning must stay the same.

   - We only have a small number of products available at the moment. limited
   1. There is a lot of competition in this part of the market. limited
   2. There isn't much need for beach umbrellas in the winter. limited
   3. They have a number of good qualities. limited
   4. There is another company in the market, which could be a real danger. limited
   5. Do we have the money and skills to make this product? limited

3. Complete the sentences.

   - New markets in Asia could be a great opportunity for us.
   1. If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right.
   2. More people will know about the product if we it on TV.
   3. Is there still a growing for mobile phones?
   4. If there is more competition, we may have to the price.
   5. First we must analyse our strengths and.
B Developing a marketing strategy

Useful marketing tips

- Don’t assume you know what your customers want.
- Target the 20 per cent of your customers who provide 80 per cent of your profit.
- Don’t ignore the competition, and be ready to respond to it.
- Don’t try to compete on price alone; think about quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to gather reliable data to make accurate market forecasts.
- You need to have realistic objectives.
- Don’t forget to evaluate your strategy; and if something isn’t working, change it.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>term</th>
<th>definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strategy</td>
<td>a plan you make in order to achieve sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip</td>
<td>a piece of advice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assume sth</td>
<td>accept or believe sth is true without proof assumption n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target sb</td>
<td>decide on the people you want to sell to (your target market).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignore sb/sth</td>
<td>pay no attention to sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respond to sb/sth</td>
<td>say or do sth as an answer to sb/sth.  response n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gather sth</td>
<td>bring many things together, e.g. information or data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data</td>
<td>facts or information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forecast</td>
<td>a statement saying what will happen in the future. forecast v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>realistic</td>
<td>sensible, and based on what is possible in a particular situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>objective</td>
<td>sth you are trying to achieve. svx goal/aim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evaluate sth</td>
<td>study the facts then form an opinion of sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Cover the glossary, then match 1–5 with a–f.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>match 1</th>
<th>match 2</th>
<th>match 3</th>
<th>match 4</th>
<th>match 5</th>
<th>match 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>respond</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>assume</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>evaluate</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 assume</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>evaluate</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>ignore</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 evaluate</td>
<td></td>
<td>ignore</td>
<td></td>
<td>gather</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ignore</td>
<td></td>
<td>gather</td>
<td></td>
<td>target</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 gather</td>
<td></td>
<td>target</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 target</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

1 Did she know it was true? ~ No, she just assumed it.

2 Do they have a plan for this? ~ Yes, they’ve got a ____________ .

3 He doesn’t have an aim. ~ No, he needs an ____________ .

4 Has he replied to you? ~ No, there’s been no ____________ .

5 Do they have the information? ~ Yes, they’ve gathered all the ____________ .

6 Is it a sensible forecast? ~ Yes, I think it’s quite ____________ .

7 Was it good advice? ~ Yes, it was a very useful ____________ .

6 Complete the sentences.

1 They got into trouble because they ____________ all their competitors.

2 Have they given you a sales ____________ for next year?

3 We don’t know if they’re competing for this contract, but we ____________ they are.

4 The company has decided to ____________ the youth market next year.

5 We’ve ____________ all the information together. Now we need to evaluate it.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?
Review: Business

Unit 55

1 Find eleven more ‘money’ words or phrases. (You can go across and down.)

C P C O S T B C
A R L P T A A
S O O G U S N P
H F A T R H K I
F I N A N C E T
L T Y L O S S A
O T A X V D I L
W R E V E N U E
I N T E R E S T

2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- Sales went down quite a lot. Sales fell significantly.
- The price went up a little. The price
- The price went down a lot. The price
- Last year the price stayed the same. Last year the price
- Sales went down from $3 m to $2 m. Sales
- Sales went up and down. Sales
- Last year there was a very small rise. Last year there was a

Unit 56

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

- They went out of business. B
- They’re gaining a share of the market. G
- They’re struggling. B
- They’re taking a lot of risks. B
- They have valuable assets. G
- There are more rivals. B
- They’re taking people on. B
- Their shares are going up. G

2 Complete the list of company objectives using words from the box.

quality risks set up ✓ market shares growth rivals even reputation

- Set up the business by the end of the year.
- In our first year we aim to break.
- In years 2 to 5, we want to see continued in our profit.
- We don’t want to take too many.
- We have to watch our very closely.
- We want our products to be of the highest.
- Within three years we want a 10 to 15 per cent share of the.
- We want the company to develop a good.
- Within five years we would like to sell to the public.
Unit 57

1 Match verbs 1–8 with definitions a–i.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>refine</td>
<td>a. change something but not completely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retain</td>
<td>b. put money into something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manufacture</td>
<td>c. make the best possible use of something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innovate</td>
<td>d. start a business/organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invest</td>
<td>e. keep or continue to have something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter</td>
<td>f. introduce a wider range of products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>found</td>
<td>g. introduce new ideas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exploit</td>
<td>h. make things using machines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diversify</td>
<td>i. change something a little to make it better</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

You have to try to keep in front of others. ahead

The introduction of new ideas was crucial.

It was a very important decision.

We did a careful study to find the best product.

My partners were prepared to put money in the company.

They signed a written legal agreement.

I knew the product had the possibility to become better.

We try to get information and comments on our products.

They wanted to introduce a wider range of products.

Unit 58

1 Find eight more pairs of words in the box that have a similar meaning.

- small ✓  - danger
- advice ✓  - ability
- plan
- aim
- reply ✓  - data
- need ✓  - threat
- information ✓  - response
- limited ✓  - strategy
tip
- objective ✓  - skill
- demand

2 Complete the words in each sentence.

- Developing a marketing strategy.
  1 Analyse the company’s s... and w... .
  2 Analyse the o... for the company and the threats.
  3 Make sure to g... reliable market d... .
  4 Don’t a... you know what your customers want.
  5 Make sure you have realistic o... .
  6 Don’t i... your competitors.
  7 Try to make accurate and reliable f... for future sales.
  8 Remember to e... your marketing strategy to see if it is working.
Next week in the life of pessimistic Pamela, aged 15

Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday. I'll definitely see Max (the boy I fancy).

Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going. She's bound to speak to him first, and she's prettier than me, so Max is more likely to fancy her.

Tuesday: I've got nothing to wear - I doubt if he'll even notice me.

Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I expect he'll think I'm stupid.

Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday - Max might go there instead.

Friday: There's a good chance it'll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a disaster.

Saturday: Woke up with a spot on my face - I'm definitely not going.

Glossary

**pessimistic** always believing bad things will happen. or optimistic.

**definitely** certainly; for sure.

**fancy sb** inf be attracted to sb.

bound to do sth If sb is bound to do sth, they will almost certainly do it.

likely to do sth If sb is likely to do sth, they will probably do it. or unlikely to do sth.

doubt (if/that ...) If you doubt if or that sth will happen, you think it probably won't happen.

expect sth think or believe sth will happen.

might used to say that sth is possible. syn may.

a chance a possibility (a good chance is a more than 50 per cent possibility).

disaster inf If sth is a disaster, it is terrible.

spot an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin (teenagers have them).

1 Complete the definitions.

1 If something is a disaster, it is ________. terribl ...
2 If something is bound to happen, it will ________ certainly happen.
3 If something is likely to take place, it will ________ take place.
4 If something might happen, you can also say that it ________ happen.
5 If there's a chance that something will happen, it means it is ________ that it will happen.
6 If you expect something to happen, it means you ________ it will happen.
7 If you think that something is unlikely, it means it is ________ not going to happen.
8 If you doubt that something will happen, it means you ________ think it is going to happen.

8 If you are pessimistic, you always believe that ________ things will happen.

2 A friend is taking an exam next week. Will she pass? Look at the percentage (%) on the right and write sentences with a similar meaning. Don't use the verb think.

- She'll definitely pass.

1 100% yes
2 95% yes
3 75% yes
4 50% yes
5 25% yes
6 100% no

3 ABOUT YOU Use the vocabulary to write sentences about your life next week.
Labradors
In looks, Boss and Sam are almost identical except that Sam is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are similar except for their colour. The similarity between Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears. In character though, they’re not alike. Compared with Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he’s completely different from the other two. Apart from the fact that he’s greedy — all labradors are greedy given the opportunity. With the other two, the main difference is that Boss is rather quiet in comparison with Jake.

Glossary
identical without a single difference. SYN exactly the same.
except not including sb/sth (except that + clause or except for + noun).
similar (to sb/sth) like sb/sth but not the same. similarity (a similarity between things).
alike very similar (don’t use alike before a noun).
completely different different in every way.
 apart from sb/sth SYN except for sb/sth.
greedy wanting to take more than you need (usually food).
the main difference the most important difference.

1 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.
   ► Barley is like my other dog. similar to
   1 She’s very tall compared with Elena.
   2 I liked all of them except for the blue one.
   3 The two boys aren’t very similar.
   4 The most important difference is colour.
   5 Poland is very big in comparison with Hungary.
   6 The twins are exactly the same.

2 Complete the sentences.
   ► If you compare the two books, it’s amazing how different they are.
   1 She is very similar to her mother; they both laugh all the time.
   2 ________________ with his last album, the new one’s a bit boring.
   3 There is a difference between the two tables: they’re both made of the same wood.
   4 This chair is like the one in your bedroom, ________________ that this one’s a bit softer.
   5 Max always tries to eat his brother’s food as well as his own; he’s a greedy dog.
   6 Some people say my brother and I are ________________, but I think we’re ________________ different.
   7 I didn’t like the film, ________________ from the ending, which was great.
   8 The main ________________ between the two students is that Carlo has better pronunciation.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.
61 I can make arrangements to meet

A Mike, we need to talk about the project. Can we get together next week?
B Yes, sure.
A Can you make it on Monday morning, say?
B No, I’m not available then. How about Tuesday afternoon?
A I’d like to, but I’m afraid I’m tied up then. Can we make it Friday morning instead?
B I’m supposed to see Jo then, but I think I can postpone that. I’ll confirm it with you tonight.
A Great, well, I’ll wait to hear from you.

= meet
= Are you able to come?
= for instance / for example
= free to see you
= What about...?
= I’m sorry, but...
= busy
= as an alternative
= I’m meant to
= put that off
= tell you definitely / for sure

Glossary
How about...? is... suitable? SYN What about...?
instead (of sth) in the place of sth (e.g. We could take the train, or we could hire a car instead.) SYN as an alternative.
postpone sth decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time. SYN put sth off.

1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with the same meaning.
   ▶ I’ll confirm it later... tell you definitely...
   1 I’m supposed to meet him at six.
   2 He’s tied up tomorrow.
   3 How about Friday?
   4 He’s not available now.
   5 I’ll postpone it.
   6 Can you come, say, at five?
   7 Can you make it tomorrow?
   8 We must get together soon.
   9 I’m sorry but I’m busy.

2 There’s a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.
   ▶ She supposed to be here at 3.00... She’s supposed to be here at 3.00...
   1 Shall we make together for a meeting?
   2 I’ll tell you definite tomorrow.
   3 I could put the meeting out until Friday.
   4 I’m afraid but I’m tied up then.
   5 A Let’s meet at a restaurant, saying?
   B No, what about the station in place?
   6 For an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

3 Test yourself. Look at the dialogue and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meaning of each word or phrase in bold?

154 SOCIAL ENGLISH
### I can discuss my likes and dislikes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MISCHA BARON: the food king!</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm mad about food. I spend a lot of time thinking about it.</td>
<td>be mad about sth/sb <strong>inf</strong> like sth/sb very much. <strong>syn</strong> be crazy about sth/sb <strong>inf</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I adore cooking, though I'm not very keen on washing up afterwards.</td>
<td>adore (doing) sth <strong>inf</strong> love (doing) sth. be keen on (doing) sth <strong>inf</strong> (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm very fond of Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.</td>
<td>be fond of (doing) sth like or enjoy (doing) sth, especially over a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't like takeaway food at all.</td>
<td>not at all not in any way. (If you don't like sth at all, you dislike it very much.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As a child, I loathed cabbage (I hated the smell), but I've got to like it now.</td>
<td>loathe (doing) sth dislike (doing) sth very much (also loathe sb). get to like sth/sb start to like sth/sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are only a couple of things I can't stand: one is snails. The other thing I absolutely detest is yoghurt. I'd rather die than eat yoghurt.</td>
<td>can't stand (doing) sth <strong>inf</strong> strongly dislike (doing) sth. <strong>syn</strong> can't bear (doing) sth. detest (doing) sth. hate (doing) sth (also detest sb). <strong>syn</strong> loathe sth/sb. would rather... than would prefer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Spotlight Verb + -ing

Many verbs meaning 'like' or 'dislike' (= not like) can be followed by an -ing form.

### Exercise 1

1. Complete the table using the words and phrases in the box.
   
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like very much</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>dislike very much</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>can't stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>detest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mad about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fond of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>adore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>loathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>keen on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>crazy about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>can't bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>not like at all</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise 2

Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.

- I'm not keen for... I'm not keen on
1. I fond of...
2. I don't stand...
3. I loathe to cook...
4. I'm mad in...
5. I can't bearing...
6. I'm detest...
7. I adore eat...
8. I've crazy about...
9. Recently, I've got for like...
10. I'm rather eat... than...

### Exercise 3

ABOUT YOU

3. ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2. Write about food, drinks, cooking, things you like doing, etc. If possible, tell another student.
A Asking for and giving opinions

A Apparently, the government wants to increase the number of young people going to university. What do you think about that?

B Personally, I think it’s a good idea. People should have the chance to go to university.

A Maybe, but it seems to me we need more people with manual skills, not more academics. And why haven’t we got those people? It’s the government’s fault.

B You think the government is to blame for everything. But don’t you reckon it’s a good idea, in principle, for more young people to have a better education?

A Yes, I think education is an incredibly important issue, but the point is, what kind of education do we want young people to have?

Glossary
apparently based on what you have heard or read.
What do you think about . . . ? is used to ask sb’s opinion about a general topic (also How do you feel about . . . ? We usually use think of when asking about a person or thing, e.g. What do you think of his new book?)
fault responsibility for a mistake.
be to blame for sth be responsible for sth bad (e.g. He’s to blame for the accident. = The accident is his fault.)
reckon (that) sth infinitive think or have an opinion about sth.
in principle in general, but perhaps not in all the details.
syn in theory
issue a problem or subject for discussion.
the point is the most important part of what I’m saying is.

1 Write the words in the correct order.

- issue / reckon / it’s / important / I / an
  I reckon it’s an important issue.
- think / this / you / idea / do / what / of?
- it’s / think / good / personally / a / idea
- agree / in / it / principle / I / with
- choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me
- it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was

2 Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- I think it’ll be difficult.
  1 I think we should do something.
  2 What do you think about that?
  3 I think we should help them.
  4 It’s my fault.
  5 I think it’ll be a problem.

3 Complete the sentences.

- Personally . . . , I thought the film was awful.
  1 ____________ , the government made the mistake, so it’s their ____________ .
  2 As far as I’m ____________ , the most important thing is to find a new manager.
  3 I think climate change is one of the most important ____________ of the 21st century.
  4 We both think it’s important, but the ____________ is, what are we going to do about it?
  5 In ____________ , I quite like his suggestion, but I don’t know if it’ll work.
The government’s **considering** a **proposal** to increase the legal age to drive a car from 17 to 21. What do you think of this idea?

**FOR**
- Personally, I think it’s very **sensible**. Too many young people are killed on our roads.
- Yes, I’m **in favour of** it, because it would reduce the number of cars on the road.
- I would **support** it, too. I don’t think 17 year-olds are **mature** enough to drive a car.

**AGAINST**
- I’m **not in favour of** this. I reckon more young people will just drive illegally.
- I’m **against** it, too. I **believe** that if young people are old enough to vote, then they’re old enough to drive.
- I’m **opposed to** it. It’ll make teenagers more **dependent on** their parents.

---

**Glossary**

- **consider sth** think about sth carefully before making a decision.
- **proposal** a plan that is formally suggested.
- **propose v.**
- **sensible** practical and intelligent. opp **silly**.
- **in favour of sth** in agreement with sth. opp **against sth**.
- **reduce sth** make sth smaller or less in quantity or size. opp **increase sth**.
- **support sth** agree with sth and sometimes offer help. support **v.**
- **mature** acting in a sensible, adult way.
- **believe that** have the opinion that.
- **opposed to sth** believing that sth is wrong.
- **dependent on sb/sth** needing sb/sth to help you.

---

4 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- She is **not in favour of** it.
- I think it’s a **practical and intelligent** idea.
- They’re going to **think** carefully about the new plan.
- We can **make it** less.
- I **agree with** them and think they’re right.
- Do you have the opinion that he’s innocent?
- What do you think of the **plan** that was formally suggested?

---

5 Complete the dialogues.

- Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I’m going to **support** the plan.
- Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he’s __________ to it.
- Will it increase the problem? ~ No, it’ll __________ it.
- Do they like the idea? ~ No, they’re __________ to it.
- Are you going to support her? ~ Yes, I __________ that she’s right.
- Do you think it’s sensible? ~ No, I think it’s very __________.
- Are they against the idea? ~ No, they’re in __________ of it.
- Does she really need our help? ~ Yes, she’s completely __________ on us.
- Is he old enough to look after the shop? ~ Yes, he’s a very __________ young man.
64 I can talk about rules

A Rules at school

The school I went to in the 1930s was very strict. We had to wear a uniform, and the headteacher insisted that we even wore it to church on Sundays. We weren’t allowed to talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but of course nobody obeyed that rule. Smoking was banned everywhere. The teachers made us work very hard, and we were forced to stay after school some evenings to do four or five hours’ homework. One day I laughed during a test, and the teacher made me write to all 40 students in the class and apologize for my bad behaviour. How silly! I was very disobedient, and always being punished.

1 Cross out one word to make each sentence correct.
   - Will the government ban to fast food?
     1 Did she force to you to eat it?
     2 They made us to sit there for an hour.
     3 I wasn’t be allowed to eat anything.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words on the right.
   - She’s very bad; she always ______ the rules.
     1 The children ______ very well yesterday.
     2 You aren’t ______ to walk on the grass.
     3 My dog is _______; he never comes when I call him.
     4 They have ______ alcohol at football matches.
     5 What was her ______ for breaking the rules?
     6 His ______ was terrible yesterday.

3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

When you were at school at the age of 11,
   - were girls allowed ______ to wear make-up?
     1 were you an ______ child?
     2 what happened if you d ______ the rules?
     3 were the rules very s ______?
     4 what did teachers f ______ you to do that you didn’t like?
     5 did children b ______ better or worse than nowadays?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
### B Can you choose? 🎧

I'm a bus driver. In my job...

| ... wearing a uniform is **compulsory** | you must do it because of a rule or a law. |
| **obligatory** | |
| **I have no choice/option:** I have to wear one. | |

| ... smoking **is forbidden** | you mustn't do it: it's against a rule or against the law. |
| **isn't permitted** | |
| **I'm not allowed to smoke at work.** | |

| ... working at night is **optional** | you can decide or choose what to do; you needn't / don't have to do it. |
| **not compulsory.** | |
| **If I want to work at night, it's up to me.** | |
| **I have the option of working on Sunday twice a month.** | |

| My boss **lets** me go home early on Fridays. | you are allowed to go home early. |

### 5 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- He allowed me to do it. || He permitted me to do it. **S**.
  1. It's not compulsory. || It's up to you. **D**.
  2. She has no choice. || It's optional. **D**.
  3. It's his choice. || It's up to him. **D**.
  4. Is it compulsory? || Is it forbidden? **D**.
  5. It's obligatory. || It's allowed. **D**.
  6. It's optional. || It's not compulsory. **D**.
  7. He lets me do it. || He allows me to do it. **D**.
  8. It's not optional. || It's obligatory. **D**.

### 6 Complete each of the dialogues with one word.

- Do you have to wear a uniform? ~ No, it's not **compulsory**.
  1. Can you leave the building at lunchtime? ~ Yes, they **allow** you do what you want.
  2. Do you have to work at the weekends? ~ Yes, I have no **choice**.
  3. Are you **allowed** to use the phone for personal calls? ~ No, it's **prohibited**.
  4. Can he work at home some days? ~ Yes, he can; it's **up** to him.
  5. Do you have to do extra training for the job? ~ No, you don't ~ it's **optional**, but I probably will.
  6. Is today's meeting optional or **compulsory**? ~ Well, it's your **choice**, but I think you should go.
  7. There's a café at work; you're not **allowed** to eat your own food there.
  8. I have the **choice** of working in different departments if I want to move around.

### 7 Test yourself. Cover the left-hand column in the table and look at the explanations. Can you remember the words and phrases in bold?

---

**SOCIAL ENGLISH 159**
65 I can discuss hopes and plans

A Making plans 🎓

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make plans (for sth)</td>
<td>prepare for sth you want to do in the future. syn plan sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort sth out</td>
<td>organize sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be going to do sth</td>
<td>plan to do sth in the future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect sth</td>
<td>think that sth will happen because it is probable or has been planned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intend to do sth / doing sth</td>
<td>plan to do sth. intention w. prep have no intention of doing sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope to do sth</td>
<td>want to do sth and think that it is possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go smoothly</td>
<td>happen without difficulties or delays.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go wrong</td>
<td>If sth goes wrong, there is a problem and the plan might fail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to (doing) sth</td>
<td>feel happy about sth that is going to happen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

She's looking forward to seeing John. | She's expecting to see John. D

1 Did the wedding go smoothly? | Did the wedding go wrong?...

2 He plans to go to Ireland. | He intends to go to Ireland. ...

3 I live in Poland at the moment. | I live in Poland, actually. ...

4 I'm hoping to get the job. | I'm going to get the job. ...

5 I don't intend to buy the car. | I've no intention of buying the car. ...

6 Have you planned anything for tonight? | Have you made any plans for tonight? ...

2 Complete the email.

We're going to take six months off work and go travelling this winter. At the moment we're making plans and trying to decide exactly where to go. We intend to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm hoping to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. I'm not expecting anything very smart, but at the same time, I've no intention of sleeping in a tent for the whole time. At the moment we're trying to sell our car to help pay for the adventure. I just hope nothing goes wrong with the sale. In fact, if everything goes smoothly, we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fantastic; I'm really looking forward to it.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What do the words mean?
### Spoken responses

**Are you going to move house?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Responses</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓ Definitely.</td>
<td>= Yes. I'm sure it will happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ I think so.</td>
<td>= I think it will probably happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ I assume so.</td>
<td>= I think it will happen, but I have no proof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ I expect so.</td>
<td>= I think it will happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× Definitely not.</td>
<td>= No. I'm sure it won't happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× I doubt it. / I don't think so.</td>
<td>= I think it probably won't happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× I hope not.</td>
<td>= I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>× I'm afraid not.</td>
<td>= I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ I guess so.</td>
<td>= I think it will happen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4 Correct the mistakes. Write the correct sentence on the right.

1. I'm assume so. **I assume so.**
2. I doubt so. **I doubt it.**
3. I'm not afraid. **I'm not afraid.**
4. I don't think. **I doubt it.**
5. I hope so. **I hope it.**
6. I don't hope. **I hope not.**
7. I think so. **I think so.**
8. I guess so. **I guess it.**
9. I suppose so. **I suppose so.**

### 5 Complete the dialogues with the correct words or phrases.

1. Is everything going smoothly with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I **hope so.**
2. Are they going to have a party? ~ Yes, I **think so.** It's their fortieth wedding anniversary.
3. Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight? ~ I **don't think.** Mina always seems to do the cooking.
4. Is Melissa going to get married? ~ I **hope not.** I really don't like the guy she's going out with.
5. Are you going on holiday this summer? ~ I'm **afraid so.** We can't afford it.
6. Do you think Omar will get promoted? ~ I **think so.** He's the best candidate and everyone likes him.
7. Do you think they'll win? ~ I **hope not.** They're playing very badly this season.
8. Are you going to buy that CD player? ~ **Definitely no.** It's the best one on the market.
9. Are you going to take the exam? ~ Yes, I **think so.** but I'd rather wait another year.

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the responses and look at the meanings. What are the responses?
66 I can express dissatisfaction

A How to complain

- Make sure you know how you want the situation to be resolved after you complain.
- Collect as much evidence as possible, e.g. photos, guarantees, etc.
- Expressing dissatisfaction in person can be the most effective.
- Always keep calm when you complain. There is no point in losing your temper.
- Back up your claim in writing.
- Consider getting an expert’s opinion to back up your claim.

spotlight point

Point can mean ‘reason’ or ‘purpose’, and is used in several expressions:
What’s the point of doing that? (What’s the reason for doing that?)
There’s no point in doing that. (There’s no reason to do that.)

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- make sure
- a written guarantee
- lose the situation
- keep calm
- resolve the situation
- speak to someone
- ensure

a in person
b calm
c a claim

d guarantee
e the situation
f your temper
g sure

2 Complete the sentences.

- Make sure you keep your receipt.
1 We were very ............. with the slow service, and in the end we ............. about it.
2 You often get a two-year ............. with a new washing machine.
3 There’s no ............. in complaining without a good reason.
4 It helps to have someone to ............. you up when you make a complaint.
5 If you want to make a claim, you will need to back it up in .............
6 I tried to ............. calm but I’m afraid I lost my .............
7 You sometimes need to find an ............. who really knows the subject.
8 Have you ............. seeing a lawyer to get some legal advice?

3 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

Glossary

make sure
resolve sth
complain (about sth)
guarantee
dissatisfaction
in person
keep calm
lose your temper
back sth up
claim
consider doing sth
expert

- be certain
- find an answer to a problem.
syn settle sth.
- say you are not satisfied with sth, make a complaint (about sth)
- a written promise by a company that it will repair or replace sth that stops working within a specific period of time.
- the annoyed feeling you get when sth is not as good as you expected it to be. opp satisfaction, dissatisfied adj.
- speaking to sb face to face.
- stay quiet and not get excited, worried, or angry.
- be unable to control your anger. opp keep your temper.
- support sth; say or show that sth is true.
- a demand for sth, often money, that you think you have a right to, often from a company or the government. make a claim v.
- in a letter, email, etc.
- think about doing sth. consideration n.
- a person who has a lot of knowledge of a subject.
B Having a moan 🎧

A I'm fed up with the painting course this term.

B I'm not happy with it either. The room they've given us is dreadful - it's too small.

A Actually, I'm not so bothered about the room. It's the man who joined the course last month - he really gets on my nerves. He's always moaning.

B Yes, he's spoilt it for the rest of us, really. And next week someone else is starting.

A Oh what a nuisance! I don't think they should let people join the course late. I might mention it to the teacher.

Glossary

fed up with sth • bored or unhappy with sth.
happy with sth • feeling that sth is good or right.
dreadful • very bad. syns terrible, atrocious, appalling.
join sth • become a member of a group such as a class or club.
get on sb's nerves • inf irritate sb or make sb angry.
moan • inf keep saying what is wrong or bad about sth. moan n.
spoil sth pt. pp spoilt/spoiled • change sth good into sth bad or unpleasant. syn ruin sth.
nuisance • a person, thing, or situation that annoys you.
mention sth • talk about sth, usually quickly and without saying much.

spotlight - bother

The verb bother is used in several expressions:
I'm not bothered about what I wear. inf = I don't care about what I wear.
(I'm) sorry to bother you. = I'm sorry to disturb you. (Used when sb is busy.)
Don't bother to buy the milk. = Don't trouble yourself. It's not necessary.

4 Cross out one more word in this list that does not have a negative meaning.

atrocious ► join fed up ruin moan dreadful
nuisance spoil mention appalling

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

► What dreadful weather. ~ Yes, absolutely atrocious.
1 What's the matter? ~ Oh, I'm __________________ up with this essay.
2 Oh Brian, I'm sorry to __________________ you. ~ That's OK. Come on in.
3 We can't watch TV. It's not working. ~ Oh no! What a __________________ .
4 There was too much salt on the meat. ~ Yes I know. It really __________________ it.
5 Shall I close the gate? ~ No, don't __________________. Leave it open.
6 I've decided to __________________ a chess club. ~ I didn't know you played chess.
7 Do you want to go out? ~ No, I'm not __________________. Let's stay here.
8 Did you say anything about the course? ~ Yes, I __________________ it to the director.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
1 Is there anything you're fed up with at the moment?
2 Is there anything or anyone that gets on your nerves?
3 Do you moan about anything in particular?
4 Can you think of anything in your town that's dreadful?
5 Are you bothered about the level of your English at the moment?

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
67 I can understand warnings

Glossary

mind (your head, leg, etc.) used to tell sb to be careful of sth.
danger the possibility of sth happening that will injure, harm, or kill sb.
beware of sth (usually on written signs) be careful of sth.
warning a notice or statement that tells you to be careful. warn sb (of/about sth) v.
cross (sth) go from one side of sth to the other.
in case of sth if sth happens.
caution (used in notices) be careful.
swallow sth make food or drink go down your throat and into your stomach.
seek sth try to find sth or ask sb for sth.
assistance help or support.
premises (pl) the building and land around it belonging to a business.

1 Write the words in correct sentences.

- mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers Mind your fingers. That dish is hot.
- assistance / any / need / do / you / ?
- help / seek / symptoms / Caution / if / continue / medical
- beware / bites / the / of / it / dog
- is / when / don’t / the / down / Warning / cross / barrier
- building / the / fire / case / in / of / leave / immediately
- police / ring / of / case / in / the / emergency

2 Complete the sentences.

- Look out! There’s a car coming!
- If someone the liquid, take them to hospital and take the bottle with you.
- of falling rocks. In of emergency, call the police.
- the step when you leave the building.
- Watch ! There’s a big spider.
- The river was flooded, and a policeman us about the ahead.
- Be when you’re driving there. There are often low flying !
- If you need any , please ring the office.
- There are usually guard dogs on the business at night.
Unit 59

1 Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the same meaning as in the sentences on the left.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Sentence</th>
<th>Possible Completion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It’s possible he’ll go.</td>
<td>He might go...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s sure to go.</td>
<td>He’ll...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t think he’ll fancy her.</td>
<td>I... he’ll fancy her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m almost sure it’ll be a disaster.</td>
<td>It’s bound...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He might go.</td>
<td>There’s a chance...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I expect it’ll rain later.</td>
<td>It’s... to rain later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He always thinks the worst will happen.</td>
<td>He’s very...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 60

1 Complete the text.

My sisters, Lucy and Ellie, are twins. To look at they are absolutely identical, (1) ___________ for their hair: Lucy’s is long, and Ellie’s is shoulder-length. They adore being twins and they love people to know they are twins. When they go out, they make sure that their clothes are (2) ___________ the same.

In character, though, they’re not (3) ___________. Ellie is confident and optimistic (4) ___________ with Lucy, who is much more reserved and quiet. When they are at university, their behaviour is also (5) ___________ different. Ellie is friendly with everyone, but Lucy doesn’t spend much time with anyone (6) ___________ from her sister. The (7) ___________ difference between the twins and me is the way we look, of course. I’m very dark in (8) ___________ with them: they both have beautiful blonde hair.

Unit 61

1 Complete the conversation.

A Jun, we must get... together next week. Can you (1) ___________ it on Tuesday?
B I’m (2) ___________. I’m busy on Tuesday. (3) ___________ about Wednesday?
A No, I don’t think I’m (4) ___________. then. I’m supposed (5) ___________ see Chris about the computer.
B Oh dear. Wednesday’s the only day next week that I’m not (6) ___________ up. Could you possibly (7) ___________ your computer meeting until the following week?
A I’m not sure; I’ll have to talk to Chris. Can I (8) ___________ that with you tomorrow?
B OK, Jun, that’s fine. I’ll wait to hear from you.
Unit 62

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

**Things or people that I like:**
1. I’m very ______ on physical exercise.
2. I’m ______ of the people in my class.
3. I’m ______ about dancing.
4. I absolutely ______ chocolate.

**Things or people that I don’t like:**
5. I don’t like shellfish at ______.
6. I can’t ______ waiting in queues.
7. I’m not very ______ on cheese.
8. I absolutely ______ cold weather.

2 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 1? Write your own sentences or ask another student.

Unit 63

1 Which two phrases have a similar meaning? Tick (✓) them.

- I support it [✓] | personally, I think [✓] | if you ask me [✓]
- 1 not in favour of [✓] | the issue [✓] | against [✓]
- 2 is to blame [✓] | it seems to me [✓] | is his fault [✓]
- 3 in my opinion [✓] | as far as I’m concerned [✓] | I’m considering [✓]
- 4 in favour [✓] | in principle [✓] | in theory [✓]
- 5 is opposed to [✓] | is against [✓] | is mature [✓]
- 6 I believe [✓] | I reckon [✓] | I blame [✓]

2 Circle the correct word or phrase.

- It seems/reckons to me that we need this.  4. What do you think about/of my new car?
  1. Is he in favour/against of the proposal?  5. I need to consider/reckon this issue.
  2. It's not your blame/fault.  6. Do you agree in favour/in principle?
  3. Give him a key; he's quite sensible/silly.  7. Do you support/opposed to the idea?

Unit 64

1 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning should stay the same.

- Smoking isn’t allowed. **BAN** Smoking is banned.
- 1 He doesn’t do what I say. **DISOBEY**
- 2 They make us work hard. **FORCE**
- 3 You can’t eat here. **ALLOWED**
- 4 You have to wear a uniform. **COMPULSORY**
- 5 She allowed us to sit down. **LET**
- 6 The boss says we have to go. **INSIST**
- 7 The way he acts in class is terrible. **BEHAVIOUR**
- 8 He makes us suffer if we’re late. **PUNISH**
Unit 65

1 Complete the dialogue.
A You must be busy making plans for your wedding.
B Yes, I am, in fact, I seem to do nothing else.
A Are you enjoying a lot of guests?
B Oh, yes, it's going to be enormous. We've both got big families.
A And is Barry I going to come?
B Goodness, I really hope not - he's the last person I want at my wedding. Anyway, I have no idea of inviting him.
A And how about Auntie June - is she coming?
B No, I'm afraid she's not - she's not very well, actually. Her operation didn't go as expected, so she won't be able to make it. She's OK, though.
A That's a relief. And what about Grandpa - is he going to be there?
B Well, I guess so - it wouldn't be a wedding without him, would it?

Unit 66

1 Is the speaker happy or unhappy in the sentences? Write H or U.

1 The rain didn't spoil my holiday. H
2 I was really fed up with her. U
3 The weather's atrocious, isn't it? U
4 We've resolved the problem. H
5 Judi didn't lose her temper. H
6 I've got a complaint about the room. U
7 The noise doesn't bother me. H
8 That dog's a nuisance. U
9 My day's been ruined. U

2 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

1 Don't get angry. TEMPER Don't lose your temper.
2 There's no reason to go out. POINT There's no point.
3 You should speak to her face-to-face. PERSON You should speak to her.
4 I would ask someone who knows a lot about it for advice. EXPERT I would ask an expert.
5 Have you ever thought about going to live abroad? CONSIDER Have you ever considered...
6 She became a member of the tennis club. JOIN She joined the tennis club.
7 Waiting in queues really irritates me. NERVES Waiting in queues really irritates me.
8 I don't think the cost of the meal is important. BOTHER I don't think the cost of the meal is a bother.
9 Did she say anything to you about the divorce? MENTION Did she mention the divorce?

Unit 67

1 Complete the warnings.

1 LOW DOOR. YOUR HEAD.
2 Watch for thieves.
3 OF DOGS!
4 IN OF THEFT, PHONE THIS NUMBER.
5 If swallowed, seek medical immediately.
6 Broken glass on the path - please be careful.
A link between A and B is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all link one idea (A) with another idea (B).

Glossary

as a result because of sth that happened before.
SYN so.
due to sth because of sth.
what's more INF used when you are adding information in spoken English or informal written English. SYN plus INF (and see spotlight).
as used to say why sth happens, or why sb does sth. SYN since, because.
consequently because of sth that happened before. SYN therefore. (Both words are more formal than as a result or so.)

1 Circle the correct word.

- In addition I had no money, I couldn't pay.
  1. It snowed heavily, and as a result/plus, we had to stay in for two days.
  2. It was an old armchair, and because/what's more, it smelled horrible.
  3. He had to give up his job consequently/due to stress.
  4. People are richer these days and therefore/since they spend a lot more.
  5. It was a long way to the station, so/plus I had a suitcase.
  6. Since/Furthermore he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
  7. Zoltan saw a man standing in the shadows. Therefore/Moreover, he was holding a knife.
  8. The town has a good transport system. Furthermore/As a result, it is very cheap.

2 Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reason</th>
<th>result</th>
<th>addition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- I had a very bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, plus ... the room was ... hot.
  1. In winter, schools sometimes have to ________________________ due to bad weather.
  2. Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport; consequently, ________________________ fly that day.
  3. The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. Furthermore, the food ________________________
  4. As I ________________________ much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
  5. He forgot his key and therefore he couldn't ________________________ the flat.
  6. Jeans are extremely practical; what's more ________________________ expensive.
B Contrasting ideas

A contrast is a difference between two or more people or things that are being compared. The words in bold below are used to introduce an idea which contrasts with something you have just said.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contrasting two ideas in one sentence:</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We got a ticket, <strong>although</strong> / <strong>even though</strong> / <strong>though</strong> it wasn't easy.</td>
<td>The clause with although, even though, and though can come at the beginning or the end, e.g. Although it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I went to work <strong>despite</strong> feeling very unwell. <strong>in spite of</strong> the bad weather. <strong>despite the fact that</strong> I had flu.</td>
<td>Despite and syn <em>in spite of</em> are followed by an -ing form or a noun.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contrasting two ideas in two separate sentences:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The car was old. <strong>Despite that.</strong></td>
<td>In spite of <strong>that</strong>, the word that refers back to the fact that the car was old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>In spite of that.</strong> I still bought it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She didn't work hard. <strong>However.</strong> <strong>Nevertheless.</strong> she still passed</td>
<td>However and nevertheless are more formal; all the same is more informal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>All the same.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He says he's rich. I don't believe him. <strong>though.</strong> <strong>however.</strong></td>
<td>At the end of a sentence, however is more formal than though.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight still**

Still can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

She felt ill, but she still went to work.
He left an hour early, but he still missed the train.

4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- He says nice things about you. 3.
- He got the job in spite of 1.
- I saw the film last night. 2.
- He went out despite the fact that 3.
- The soup was disgusting, 4.
- We had a nice day even 5.
- He felt really cold despite 6.
- He went to bed very late. All the same, 7.
- The bike's useful. Nevertheless, 8.

5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- We had quite a nice day there. **All** the same, I wouldn't go back again.
- I could just see the house __________ the fog.
- Jun has very little money. In spite of __________, he's really generous.
- You'll find it hard to get work there. __________, it's worth trying.
- I wanted to see the exhibition. When I got there, it was closed, __________.
- There was more snow today, __________ I think it's warmer this evening.
- In __________ of leaving two hours early, we __________ missed the plane.
- I didn't feel sleepy __________ though it was very late.
- __________ the fact that we thought we knew the way, we got lost twice.
## C Other link words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word or phase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning/usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>whereas</td>
<td>I enjoy tennis, whereas my father prefers rugby.</td>
<td>used for comparing two people, things, etc. and saying there is a difference between them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the one hand</td>
<td>On the one hand, it's lovely here in summer. on the other, the winter is terrible.</td>
<td>used for showing opposite points of view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otherwise SYN</td>
<td>Put your cake on the table, otherwise the dog will eat it.</td>
<td>used to say that if sth doesn't happen or isn't true, sth else will happen, sometimes sth bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or (else)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provided (that)</td>
<td>I'll go provided you come with me.</td>
<td>only if.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYN as long as</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unless</td>
<td>I'll accept the job at the BBC unless they offer me a job at Sky.</td>
<td>used to say that sth will happen or be true if sth else does not happen or is not true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in case</td>
<td>Take a map in case you need it.</td>
<td>because sth might happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so (that)</td>
<td>He got there early so that he could speak to her before the lesson.</td>
<td>used to talk about the purpose of an action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Spotlight: purpose

A **Purpose** is a reason for doing something, or a thing that someone wants to achieve.

*What's the purpose of your trip?*

*The purpose of the meeting is to discuss the figures.*

## 6 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- He speaks German, whereas I don't. || I don't speak German, but he does. **S**
- 1 If you leave it here, someone will steal it. | Don't leave it here, or someone will steal it. **D**
- 2 I won't go to the party if Chica's going. | I won't go to the party unless Chica's going. **S**
- 3 I took some money so that I could pay. | I took some money in case I had to pay. **D**
- 4 She'll get there provided she leaves now. | She'll get there as long as she leaves now. **D**
- 5 I always put sugar in, otherwise it's not sweet. | I always put sugar in unless it's sweet. **D**
- 6 What was the purpose of his letter? | What was his reason for writing the letter? **D**

## 7 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

- whereas     - on the one hand - so that - otherwise - in case - unless - as long as

- She won't use a towel unless it's just been washed.
- The children can go out provided they don't cross the main road.
- You should get there early so that you get a good seat.
- Flying can save time, but on the other hand, it's not good for the environment.
- Teachers' salaries have gone up whereas nurses' salaries have fallen.
- Take some chocolate with you in case you're hungry on the journey.
- Plug it in, otherwise it won't work.

## 8 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?
I can use a range of adjectives

A Describing places

Hidden away in this remote part of rural France is the village of La Toque. It’s a curious, old-fashioned sort of place. There’s only one hotel, so it’s vital to book in advance, but don’t expect anything grand. The accommodation and food are very simple, but the prices are reasonable and I was impressed with the overall quality. The local people are still a bit suspicious of tourists, but I found them very polite. However, you may not meet many, as the streets are usually deserted by 10 p.m.!

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>形容词</th>
<th>同义词/反义词</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>remote</td>
<td>far away from where many people live.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rural</td>
<td>connected with the country, not the town. opp urban.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
curious | unusual or strange.|
|old-fashioned | typical of the past but not of the present. opp modern.|
vital | necessary and important. syn essential.|
grand | impressive and large or important.|
simple | including the things you need but no extra things. syn basic.|
reasonable | If prices are reasonable, they are not too high. syn fair. opp unreasonable.|
impressed with sth/sb | feeling that sth/sb is good or of a high standard.|
overall | general; considering everything.|
suspicious of sth/sb | feeling that sth/sb is dishonest and cannot be trusted.|
polite | behaving in a good or correct way. opp rude.|
deserted | empty because everyone has left. opps busy, crowded.|

1. Find seven more pairs of synonyms or opposites in the box.

- simple / SYN basic
- modern / SYN old-fashioned
- curious / SYN strange
- fair / SYN reasonable
- polite / SYN rude
- essential / SYN vital
- busy / SYN deserted

2. Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- It’s a rural area. | It’s an urban area. D.
- No one was there. | It was deserted. S.
- It’s expensive. | The price is reasonable. D.
- She’s good. | I’m impressed with her. S.
- It’s essential. | It isn’t vital. D.
- It wasn’t grand. | It was quite basic. D.
- I’m suspicious of him. | I don’t trust him. D.
- It was fair. | It was unreasonable. D.

3. Complete the words in the sentences.

- It gets very busy, so it’s vital to arrive early.
- The others found him normal, but I thought he was a c_____________ man.
- It’s a long way from town, so it’s quite a r_____________ place.
- I was s_____________ of the man when he refused to give his name.
- I like the restaurant, and what’s more, the prices are r_____________.
- I was very i_____________ with the hotel: it’s clean, comfortable, and very friendly.
- There were one or two things I didn’t like, but the o_____________ standard was good.

4. Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Say the words and their synonyms and opposites.
### Describing feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Example(s)</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>terrifying/terrified</td>
<td>It was a terrifying film. I was terrified watching that film.</td>
<td>very frightening. very frightened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappointed/disappointing</td>
<td>I was disappointed with my results. My results were disappointing.</td>
<td>feeling unhappy because sth is not as good as you hoped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amazing/amazed</td>
<td>Some of the dancers were amazing.</td>
<td>surprising and difficult to believe, often in a positive way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shocking/shocked</td>
<td>It was shocking to see so many people with nowhere to live.</td>
<td>upsetting and very surprising in a negative way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alarming/alarmed</td>
<td>When the police arrived, it was a bit alarming.</td>
<td>frightening or causing worry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgusting/disgusted</td>
<td>Last night's meal was disgusting.</td>
<td>very unpleasant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amusing/amused</td>
<td>We all thought the film was quite amusing.</td>
<td>funny in a gentle way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrassed/embarrassing</td>
<td>I was embarrassed when I got his name wrong.</td>
<td>feeling uncomfortable because of sth silly you have done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astonishing/astonished</td>
<td>It's astonishing how much she has changed in the last five years.</td>
<td>very surprising.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satisfying/satisfied</td>
<td>Cooking for others is very satisfying.</td>
<td>making you feel pleased or happy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5** Circle the correct answer.
- The beaches were really amazing/amazed.
  1. I was shocking/shocked when I saw it.
  2. He was satisfying/satisfied with the course.
  3. The hotel didn’t have a restaurant, which was rather disappointing/disappointed.
  4. It was a terrifying/terrified experience.
  5. The smell was disgusting/disgusted.
  6. José felt a bit embarrassing/embarrassed.

**6** Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- ** Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely terrified. **
  1. **Was the film funny? ~ Yes, it was quite.**
  2. **You wore jeans to a smart party! ~ Yes, it was a bit.**
  3. **He steals money from old people. ~ I know, it's absolutely.**
  4. **Was he pleased with his marks? ~ No, he was with them.**
  5. **Was the wine unpleasant? ~ Yes, it was absolutely.**
  6. **Were you surprised? ~ Yes, absolutely.**
  7. **Were you very frightened? ~ Yes, it was a bit.**
  8. **Were you happy with the work? ~ No, I wasn’t with it.**

**7** Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?
C Describing qualities

People have mixed feelings about the new city hotel. Here are some comments.

- The rooms were adequate but I didn't like the artificial flowers.
- I like the contemporary design – simple but effective.
- The bed was a bit firm for my liking.
- Most of the staff were temporary but they seemed very efficient.
- I was able to take my dog. It's rare for a hotel to allow them.
- They put champagne in our room, which was very unexpected.
- I was glad we had one of their best rooms. Some looked a bit cramped.

Glossary

- mixed feelings: both positive (+) and negative (−) feelings about s.th.
- adequate: just good enough but nothing more. OPP inadequate.
- artificial: made by people and used instead of s.th natural. OPP real, natural.
- contemporary: of the present time. SYN modern. OPP old-fashioned.
- effective: successful and giving the result you want. OPP ineffective.
- firm: quite hard. OPP soft.
- temporary: employed or continuing for only a limited period of time. OPP permanent.
- efficient: working well, quickly, and without mistakes. OPP inefficient.
- rare: not done, seen, or happening very often. OPP common.
- glad: pleased; quite happy. SYN pleased.
- cramped: small, and not having enough space. OPP spacious.
- unexpected: If s.th is unexpected, it surprises you because you didn't know it was going to happen. OPP expected.

8 Replace the underlined adjective with a word that means the opposite.

1. I had positive feelings. negative
2. The food was adequate. 
3. We had a firm mattress. 
4. The service was efficient. 
5. Is that real snow? 
6. It's a rare disease. 
7. It was an effective method. 
8. The visit was expected. 
9. It's a temporary arrangement.

9 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

- You couldn't move round in the bathroom; it was very cramped.
  1. I have ____________ feelings about working abroad: I'd like to, but I'd miss my family.
  2. It's a fantastic climate here. It's very ____________ to have bad weather in the summer.
  3. I'm ____________, your mother is feeling better now. She was quite ill last week.
  4. She wears very old-___________ clothes.
  5. My sister's having a baby. It was completely ____________, but we're all very happy.
  6. This machine does the work of ten men; it's very ____________.
  7. I think his work is ____________, but it could be better.
  8. A lot of people don't like ____________ art because they don't understand it.
  9. Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite ____________.
  10. She's only a ____________ member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.

10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings? Can you remember the synonyms and opposites?
70 I can express place and time

A Place 🌾

Glossary

towards in the direction of (also toward).
edge the place where sth. e.g. a table, a cliff, or a town, ends.
beyond past a place and further away.
rear the back of sth. especially a car or a building. opp. front.
face sth look towards sth. opp. have your back to sth.
onto moving to or on a particular place or position.
beside next to. syn. by.
among surrounded by things (also amongst).
underneath under (when sth is hidden or covered).
beneath v. ml. under.

spotlight over

Over has different meanings:
1 up and across to the other side of something.
 Go over the bridge.
2 used to express location at a distance from the speaker.
 Sit over there.
3 all over in all or most parts of sth.
 His clothes were all over the floor.

1 Match the pictures with the words below.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

towards over the rear beside beneath onto the edge among

2 Complete the sentences with words from the glossary.

1 The front seats are great, but there isn’t much room for your legs in the ____________.
2 The glass fell ____________ the floor and smashed.
3 I could see a few of my friends ____________ the crowd.
4 Don’t sit ____________ there. Come and sit ____________ me.
5 I’m not surprised I couldn’t find my pen; it was ____________ all those books.
6 We didn’t stay in one town – we went all ____________ the place.
7 I couldn’t see what was happening because I had my ____________ to the window.
8 Don’t stand so close to the ____________ of the road – it’s dangerous.
9 There’s a village in the valley, and ____________ it, you can see the mountains in the distance.
We'd already played 85 minutes and we were losing. Bob suddenly shouted, 'Come on, there are still five minutes to go - it's not over yet.'

The children were woken during the night by a loud bang. It was followed by heavy rain which lasted throughout the night.

Guy said he'd be back at three this afternoon. In the meantime, I took Martha shopping. She spent all morning looking for a black dress and eventually found something she liked.

I used to play a bit, but these days I just watch football on TV. I go to a game now and again with my son. Recently we saw Arsenal play Spurs.

Glossary

already • before now or before a particular point in time.

to go • if there are five minutes to go, then five minutes remain before sth will happen.

over • finished.

not ... yet • used for talking about sth that has not happened, but will probably happen in the future.

during • at some point in the period of time mentioned.

last • continue for a period of time.

throughout • from the beginning to the end of sth.

in the meantime • during the time between two events. SYN meanwhile.

eventually • after a long period of time (often after some difficulty).

these days • in the present time. SYN nowadays.

now and again • SYN occasionally. from time to time.

recently • not long ago. recent ADJ.

3 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

1 Do you see your uncle much these days? ________________

2 The play continued for about two hours. ________________

3 I go to the theatre from time to time. ________________

4 The train wasn't due for two hours. In the meantime we went for lunch. ________________

5 He slept from the beginning to the end of the film. ________________

6 We waited at the hotel and after a long period of time Danny arrived. ________________

4 Complete the dialogues.

1 He's writing a book, but it's not finished ________________. ~ Yes I know, he showed it to me ________________. It looked very interesting.

2 Is 'Love in Amsterdam' his most ________________ film? ~ Yes, it came out ________________ the summer. I think he's working on another film now.

3 Is the match ________________ yet? ~ No, there are still ten minutes to ________________.

4 How long does the film ________________? ~ About two hours, but Candy doesn't want to go. She's ________________ seen it.

5 I used to go to Rome ________________ for work, just a couple of times a year. ~ Oh, really? I lived there ________________ the 1990s - I loved it.

5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?
### 71 I can use prepositions in phrases

#### A Preposition + word(s)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>by chance</td>
<td>We met in the shop by chance.</td>
<td>without it/sth being planned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on board</td>
<td>Are all the passengers on board?</td>
<td>on a plane or ship or bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on purpose</td>
<td>She broke my watch, but she didn’t do it on purpose.</td>
<td>with a definite intention; not accidentally. syn deliberately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at least</td>
<td>It takes at least an hour to get home.</td>
<td>not less than, and probably more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at first</td>
<td>I didn’t understand him at first.</td>
<td>at the beginning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a hurry</td>
<td>He got up late and left in a hurry.</td>
<td>quickly, and usually because you haven’t enough time. syn in a rush.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in advance</td>
<td>Can I buy tickets in advance?</td>
<td>before a particular time or event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in charge of sth/sb</td>
<td>Who’s in charge of the office while Matt’s on holiday?</td>
<td>in a position of control over sth/sb. syn responsible for sth/sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in general</td>
<td>In general, I don’t work on Saturdays.</td>
<td>usually; in most cases. syn generally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in public</td>
<td>I don’t like it when people argue with each other in public.</td>
<td>when other people are present. or in private.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Make eight more phrases using *in, at, by, or on*, and one of the words from the box.

   - general
   - purpose
   - advance
   - least
   - private
   - public
   - first
   - board
   - chance

   ▶ in advance

2. Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.

   ▶ We’ll need not less than two hours to get there. at least

   1. Generally, he’s very helpful
   2. I think he took my dictionary deliberately.
   3. All the passengers are on the plane.
   4. In the final part of the story, the old woman dies.
   5. Who’s responsible for these noisy children?
   6. I had to have breakfast quickly.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

   ▶ He made the comment in private, but the journalist still reported it.
   1. All the buses were full, so the end we took a taxi.
   2. If you want to get seats on the train, you’ll have to book advance.
   3. First I didn’t like the book, but actually it got better.
   4. I found the shoes I wanted chance.
   5. Like many actors, he doesn’t like talking about his private life public.

---

**Spotlight, In the end and at the end**

*In the end* can mean ‘finally’, ‘after a period of time’, or ‘in conclusion’.

All the restaurants closed early, so *in the end* we went home.

*At the end* can mean ‘in the final part’, or ‘when sth finishes’.

*At the end of the film, they go to live in New York.*
## B Word(s) + preposition 📚

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>access to sth</td>
<td>Do you have access to the internet?</td>
<td>the chance to use or have sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make the most of sth</td>
<td>If he lets you use the gym, you must make the most of it.</td>
<td>make the best use of sth that will help you. syn take advantage of sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capable of (doing) sth</td>
<td>She's capable of passing the exam if she works hard.</td>
<td>having the ability or qualities to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involved in sth</td>
<td>He's become very involved in local politics.</td>
<td>connected with sth or taking an active part in it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve of sb/sth</td>
<td>My mother doesn't approve of men who smoke.</td>
<td>think that sb/sth is good or suitable. syn disapprove of sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get rid of sth/sb</td>
<td>We got rid of our old sofa. They got rid of two workers.</td>
<td>throw sth away, or make yourself free of sth/sb you don't want.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care about sth/sb</td>
<td>She cares about people. He doesn't care about money.</td>
<td>be interested in sb/sth and think it or they are important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take care of sb/sth</td>
<td>After their mother died, they took care of their father.</td>
<td>help and protect sb/sth. syn look after sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insist on (doing) sth</td>
<td>He insisted on paying for dinner.</td>
<td>say strongly that you must have or do sth, or that someone else must.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cope with sth/sb</td>
<td>I'll have more work next year, but I think I can cope with it.</td>
<td>take action successfully with a difficult situation. syn manage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight: depend on sb/sth**

1. be able to trust someone or something. syn rely on sb/sth.
2. be decided or influenced by someone or something.

*You can never depend on the trains in this country.*

*We may go out—it depends on the weather.*

---

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1. She approves          my new boyfriend.  
2. He still involved       the company?  
3. They can't cope         all this work.  
4. He insisted            doing the cooking.  
5. Don't get rid          that lovely dress.  
6. Can you depend         him?  
7. Mark is capable        doing very well.  
8. I don't have access    email.  
9. We must take advantage  the weather.

### 5 Complete the word in each sentence.

1. Does she really          about Conrad?  
2. How do you c              with three children and a full-time job?  
3. I had to get r            of all my old records.  
4. We're taking c            of the house while they're away.  
5. It's your only chance to speak English, so make the m        of it.  
6. Do you want me to l        after the dog when you go shopping?  
7. I want to go out, but it d      on the amount of homework we have to do.  
8. He wants us to get i      in making arrangements for the conference.  
9. Lucy's friends strongly d      of her decision to marry Jack.
## 72 I can use prefixes

### A Negative prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective/opp</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Other words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>insecure opp secure</td>
<td>She’s very insecure about her appearance.</td>
<td>not confident about yourself.</td>
<td>informal inflexible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immoral opp moral</td>
<td>She stole money from my children. That’s immoral.</td>
<td>thought to be wrong or dishonest by most people.</td>
<td>impossible impatient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>illegible opp legible</td>
<td>My doctor’s writing is illegible.</td>
<td>very difficult or impossible to read.</td>
<td>illegal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrelevant opp relevant</td>
<td>I need some new shoes. The colour’s irrelevant.</td>
<td>not important to what you are discussing or doing.</td>
<td>irregular irresponsible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unfair opp fair</td>
<td>His office is bigger than mine. It’s so unfair!</td>
<td>not treating each person in the same way or equally.</td>
<td>unpleasant unsuccessful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unacceptable opp acceptable</td>
<td>The player hit the ref. That’s unacceptable.</td>
<td>so bad that you think it should not be allowed.</td>
<td>uncertain unkind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disloyal opp loyal</td>
<td>They were very disloyal to the family.</td>
<td>not supporting your friends, family, country, etc.</td>
<td>dishonest disorganized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-alcoholic opp alcoholic</td>
<td>Is this drink non-alcoholic? Juice is non-alcoholic, beer and wine are alcoholic.</td>
<td></td>
<td>non-smoking non-fiction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### spotlight Prefixes

A prefix is a letter or group of letters that you put at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. The prefixes in the table above have the meaning ‘not’. e.g. insecure = not secure, illegible = not legible.

---

### 1 Cover the table. Write prefixes that add the meaning ‘not’ to the adjectives.

- immoral
- kind
- alcoholic

- legal
- responsible
- certain

- formal
- smoking
- secure

- regular
- honest
- relevant

### 2 Complete the dialogues with one word from the table.

- Did your company find a new manager? ~ No, we were unsuccessful.
- Is stealing from the rich the right thing to do? ~ No, it’s unacceptable.
- Has it got alcohol in it? ~ No, it’s non-alcoholic.
- Is your age important for this kind of work? ~ No, it’s unnecessary.
- Is she confident with other people? ~ No, she’s quite insecure.
- Men and women don’t earn the same in this job, do they? ~ No, and that’s unfair.
- He didn’t support his country, did he? ~ No, he was disloyal.

### 3 Complete the questions, then write your own answers, or ask another student.

1. Do you think life is generally fair or ____________ ?
2. Is teenagers’ behaviour nowadays acceptable or ____________ ?
3. Are your friends generally loyal or ____________ ?
4. Is your handwriting legible or ____________ ?
5. Do you think it should be legal or ____________ to drive at 17?

---

### ABOUT YOU

______________________________

______________________________

______________________________

______________________________

______________________________
B Reversing an action 🎧

do your jacket up
SYN fasten your jacket
OFP undo/unfasten
tie your shoelace (up)
SYN fasten
OFP untie/unfasten
pack your suitcase
OFP unpack
load the van (up)
OFP unload

plug the kettle in
OFP unplug
wrap the parcel (up)
OFP unwrap
lock the cupboard
OFP unlock
get dressed
OFP get undressed

4 Circle two correct words in each sentence.
   - You can wrap a) a parcel b) a present c) water.
   1 You can unload a) a ship b) a saucepan c) a lorry.
   2 You can pack a) your luggage b) a suitcase c) a handbag.
   3 You can unplug a) a room b) a printer c) a washing machine.
   4 You can untie a) a dog b) a boat c) a newspaper.
   5 You can do up a) a pair of trousers b) a hat c) a seat belt.
   6 You can unlock a) a suitcase b) a car c) a bottle.

5 Complete the table using a synonym of the verb on the left, then write the opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Take the bags out of the car.</td>
<td>Unload the car.</td>
<td>Load the car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Take the paper off the present.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Shut the suitcase with a key.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Put your clothes on.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Put your things in your suitcase.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Fasten the buttons on your shirt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Fasten your shoelaces.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words and opposites.
73 I can use suffixes

A Noun suffixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ ment</td>
<td>judge</td>
<td>judgement</td>
<td>measure</td>
<td>measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ ion / sion</td>
<td>react</td>
<td>reaction</td>
<td>extend</td>
<td>extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ation / ition</td>
<td>interpret</td>
<td>interpretation</td>
<td>define</td>
<td>definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ ance / ence</td>
<td>disappear</td>
<td>disappearance</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>preference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Suffixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ ty / ity</td>
<td>cruel</td>
<td>cruelty</td>
<td>real</td>
<td>reality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ ness</td>
<td>gentle</td>
<td>gentleness</td>
<td>kind</td>
<td>kindness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

**judgement** an opinion you form after thinking carefully about sth (in a court of law, the judgement is the judge's official decision).

**measurement(s)** the height, weight, etc. of sth.

**reaction** sth that you do or say as a result of sth that has happened.

**extension** a part that is added to sth to make it bigger or longer.

**interpretation** an understanding or explanation of the meaning of sth.

**definition** an exact statement of what a word or phrase means.

**disappearance** a situation in which sb or sth becomes impossible to see or find.

**preference** an interest in or liking of one thing more than another.

**cruelty** behaviour that deliberately causes a person or animal to suffer.

**reality** the way life really is.

**gentleness** kind and calm behaviour towards other people.

**kindness** behaviour that shows you care about others and want to help them.

1 Circle the nouns.

disappear, judgement, gentleness, react, prefer, kindness, disappearance, extension, cruel, reality, define, preference, interpretation, measure, judgement, extend

2 Look at the verbs and adjectives, which you did not circle, in Exercise 1. Write them below with the correct noun form.

- disappear, disappearance

3 Complete the sentences using a word from the table above.

- She cooked for me when I was ill; I really appreciated her kindness.
- Could I have the ________________ of the room so that I can order the new carpet?
- I get very upset when I hear about ________________ towards animals.
- He lives in a dream world and doesn't want to face the ________________ of the situation.
- The police are investigating the ________________ of the young man, who was last seen in 2007.
- I told the boss I was leaving; her ________________ was very surprising. She laughed!
- She chose the wrong person for the job. That's just poor ________________.
- I like most types of novel, but my ________________ is for crime stories and murder mysteries.
- We're planning a new ________________ for the old building; it'll be twice the size.
B Adjective suffixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-less</td>
<td>Feel powerless in your job? Want to be powerful? Buy our POWERGUY video!</td>
<td>powerless not able to influence or control people or things. opp powerful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ful</td>
<td>The world’s only waterproof and shockproof digital camera. Great for underwater photography!</td>
<td>waterproof not allowing water to enter. shockproof made so that it isn’t easily damaged if it is hit or dropped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-proof</td>
<td>Cool, practical, economical clothing for tropical conditions. Go to practicalcar.com</td>
<td>practical useful and suitable. economical using money, goods, etc. carefully and without wasting any. tropical from or in the hottest parts of the world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-able</td>
<td>Fabulous fashionable shoes – and they’re machine washable too!</td>
<td>fashionable popular at the moment. washable able to be washed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ons</td>
<td>Get our T-shirts with ridiculous or humorous slogans</td>
<td>ridiculous very silly. humorous funny; amusing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>Try our spicy curry or fish with a creamy sauce.</td>
<td>spicy with a strong, hot flavour. creamy containing cream, or smooth like cream.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Tick (√) the correct form. Both forms may be correct.

- ridiculous √ ridicical ❌
- 1 waterproof ☐ proofwater ☐
- 2 careful ☐ careless ☐
- 3 creamful ☐ creamy ☐
- 4 humorful ☐ humorous ☐
- 5 practice ☐ practical ☐
- 6 washable ☐ washless ☐
- 7 powerful ☐ powerless ☐

5 Are these things generally good or bad? Write G or B.

- 1 a powerful speaker ☐
- 2 washable trousers ☐
- 3 harmful medicine ☐
- 4 painless medical treatment ☐
- 5 tropical fruit ☐
- 6 an economical car ☐
- 7 a powerless government ☐

6 Complete the sentences using adjectives formed from the nouns in the box below.

[box of adjectives: spice pain practice fashion ridicule use harm humour economy]

- The article wasn’t supposed to be humorous, but it made me laugh all the same.
- 1 Don’t leave that powder there – it could be dangerous to the children.
- 2 The price of the meal was expensive. I just couldn’t afford it.
- 3 Throw that thing away – it’s absolutely useless.
- 4 A bike is much more economical than a car in the centre of town.
- 5 These shoes may be fashionable, but they’re incredibly uncomfortable.
- 6 My car uses less petrol than my sister’s, so it’s a lot more economical.
- 7 Is your toothache very painful?
- 8 I couldn’t eat the meal; it was much too spicy for me.

7 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?
## Verb + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + infinitive</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>intend to do sth</td>
<td>We intend to leave early tonight.</td>
<td>plan or mean to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage to do sth</td>
<td>I managed to get a job, but it wasn’t easy.</td>
<td>succeed with sth that is often difficult.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tend to do sth</td>
<td>I tend to get up late on Sundays.</td>
<td>usually do sth, tendency n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretend to do or be sth</td>
<td>He pretended to be ill because he just didn’t want to go to school.</td>
<td>act in a particular way to make people believe sth that isn’t true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse to do sth</td>
<td>Why did she refuse to help you?</td>
<td>say that you won’t do sth that sb has asked you to do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: expect, promise, offer, decide, hope, want, mean.

## Verb + -ing form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + -ing form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imagine doing sth</td>
<td>I can’t imagine working without a computer.</td>
<td>think what sth will be like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admit doing sth</td>
<td>He admitted taking the vasc.</td>
<td>agree that you have done sth wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny doing sth</td>
<td>She denied taking his watch.</td>
<td>oppose deny doing sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recall doing sth</td>
<td>I don’t recall meeting them.</td>
<td>remember sth you did in the past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind doing sth</td>
<td>Do you mind working late?</td>
<td>feel unhappy that you have to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regret doing sth</td>
<td>I regret leaving school at 16.</td>
<td>feel sorry that you did sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: enjoy, avoid, keep, risk, regret, consider, suggest.

## Verb + object + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + object + infinitive</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>persuade sb to do sth</td>
<td>He persuaded me to buy a new car.</td>
<td>make sb do sth by giving them a good reason to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encourage sb to do sth</td>
<td>My sister encouraged me to have dancing lessons.</td>
<td>give sb help and support so that they feel confident to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warn sb not to do sth</td>
<td>He warned me not to go into that area.</td>
<td>tell sb not to do sth that might be unpleasant or dangerous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remind sb to do sth</td>
<td>I had to remind her to post the letter.</td>
<td>help sb to remember sth that they have to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enable sb to do sth</td>
<td>His map enabled me to find it.</td>
<td>make it possible for sb to do sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: want, ask, tell, beg, advise, expect, force, help, allow.

## Verb + object + preposition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + object + preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accuse sb of sth</td>
<td>The teacher accused the boy of cheating.</td>
<td>say that sb has done wrong or broken the law.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame sb for sth</td>
<td>They blamed the teachers for the bad exam results.</td>
<td>think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remind sb of sb/sth</td>
<td>You remind me of my dad.</td>
<td>cause sb to remember sb/sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce sb to sb</td>
<td>I introduced Miss Anderson to my boss.</td>
<td>tell sb another person’s name when they meet for the first time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common verbs used in this way: ask sb for, forgive sb for, prevent sb from (doing sth), spend sth on.
1 Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

1 They ________ to go.
a) wanted  b) enjoyed  c) refused  d) intended
2 She ________ me to do it.
a) encouraged  b) persuaded  c) reminded  d) pretended
3 He ________ losing the money.
a) managed  b) admitted  c) regretted  d) denied
4 We ________ to go away in the summer.
a) hope  b) enjoy  c) tend  d) intend
5 I don’t ________ staying there.
a) recall  b) mind  c) tend  d) regret
6 Did they ________ to spend all the money?
a) deny  b) intend  c) refuse  d) mean
7 They ________ me not to go there.
a) reminded  b) accused  c) persuaded  d) warned

2 Circle the correct verb.

He said he was at the meeting, but ________ causing the trouble.
a) denied  b) admitted

1 The extra money I earn will enable/warn me to have a holiday this year.
2 The roads will be busy, so we intend/pretend to leave early.
3 I can’t recall/imagine living in another country.
4 He said it was dangerous and warned/encouraged me not to go there.
5 The girl behind the bar accuses/reminds me of your sister.
6 Actually, I don’t mind/admit going to the dentist.

3 Match 1–6 with a–g.

She suggested ________
1 She accused ________
2 She persuaded ________
3 She denied ________
4 She pretended ________
5 She introduced ________
6 She blamed ________

a) making any mistakes.
b) me to her sister.
c) to be an actress.
d) me for the mistakes.
e) going out.
f) me of lying.
g) me to go.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Is there anything:
1 you managed to do recently that was difficult? What?
2 you intended to do recently but didn’t? What?
3 you regret doing recently? What?
4 you have refused to do recently? What?
5 someone has persuaded you to do recently? What?
6 someone has warned you not to do recently? What?
7 someone has blamed you for recently? What?
8 someone has reminded you to do recently? What?

5 Test yourself. Cover the third column of each table and look at the verbs and examples. Can you remember the meanings?
### 75 I can use phrasal verbs

#### A Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>give up</strong> [no object]</td>
<td>They gave up when the other team scored the second goal.</td>
<td>accept you cannot do sth and so stop trying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>go up</strong></td>
<td>Sales went up last month.</td>
<td>increase in price, level, etc. opp go down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>run out</strong></td>
<td>My visa runs out next week.</td>
<td>come to an end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take after sb</strong> [object goes after the verb and particle]</td>
<td>I take after my father in looks but my mother in character.</td>
<td>look or behave like an older member of your family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>get over sth</strong></td>
<td>She's been very ill, but she's getting over it now.</td>
<td>recover from an illness or bad experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>give sth away</strong> [object can go between or after the verb and particle]</td>
<td>I had a bike but I gave it away. He’s given away his old CDs.</td>
<td>give sth to sb without wanting money for it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>make sth up</strong></td>
<td>I couldn’t remember the story, so I made something up.</td>
<td>invent sth, often sth that you pretend is true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>switch sth on</strong></td>
<td>Could you switch the light on? Could you switch on the light?</td>
<td>press sth to start electric power. opp switch sth off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>put sth out</strong></td>
<td>They put out the fire quickly. They put it out quickly.</td>
<td>make sth stop burning. syn extinguish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>get on with sb</strong> [verb with 3 parts, object at the end]</td>
<td>Do you get on with your brother?</td>
<td>have a good relationship with sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>run out of sth</strong></td>
<td>We've run out of bread.</td>
<td>finish your supply of sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Is the grammar in these sentences right or wrong? Write R or W.

> She gave away it.

1 R
2 W
3 R
4 W
5 R
6 W
7 R
8 W
9 R
10 W

### 2 Circle the correct answer.

> Prices have gone up/given up.

1 R
2 W
3 R
4 W
5 R
6 W

### 3 Complete the sentences.

> He didn't want his bike, so he gave it away.

1 The price went from €5 to €6.
2 You can't smoke in here - you'll have to put that cigarette.
3 Let's watch TV. Will you switch it?
4 She was disappointed not to get the job, but she'll get it.
5 She gets well my parents.
6 Oh no! We've run rice.

### 4 Test yourself. Look at the meanings and cover the examples and verbs. What are the verbs?

---

**spotlight** Separable phrasal verbs

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go after the verb and particle (see 1 below) or between the verb and the particle (2), but a pronoun must go in the middle (3).

1. He gave away the bike.
2. He gave the bike away.
3. He gave it away. (or He gave away it.)
B In the classroom

STUDENT I can’t work out number seven.

TEACHER OK. Leave it out and go on with the next one.

S I can’t see the board, Miss.

T Well, put your glasses on.

T How are you getting on, Suki?

S Fine, thank you.

T Could you pick up those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

T I’ll give out the dictionaries, but could you put them back when you’ve finished?

T If you get through the exercises today, we can go over them tomorrow in class.

Glossary

work sth out find an answer to sth.
leave sth out not include sth. syn omit sth.
go on (with sth) continue (with sth). syn carry on (with sth).
put sth on begin wearing sth. one take sth off.
get on make progress with sth you are doing.
pick sth up take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place. one put sth down. (see spotlight.)
give sth out give one of sth to each person in a group. syn hand sth out.
put sth back return sth to its place (see spotlight).
get through sth complete a task or activity.
go over sth examine and check sth carefully.

5 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

When are you going to collect the tickets? ..pick up......

1. Do you want us to omit the next exercise? ..

2. Do you think we’ll complete the book by the end of term? ..

3. I couldn’t find an answer to the last question. ..

4. Do the exercise for homework and we’ll check it on Thursday. ..

5. I asked her about her course yesterday. She’s not doing very well. ..

6. Let’s finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 9. ..

6 Complete the sentences.

If you don’t want to do it, you can leave it out....

1. Could you give the books to the students, Claude? ..

2. I’d like to get Unit 5 by Friday, then go with Unit 6 on Monday.

3. I don’t know why the dictionaries aren’t there. I put them yesterday.

4. You had a job interview yesterday, didn’t you? How did you get?

5. She took her boots and left them on the steps.

6. I couldn’t read it until I put my glasses.

7. We’re very busy this week, so I had to put the meeting to next Monday.

8. The suitcase was very heavy; I had to keep picking it and putting it.
76 I can use a range of adverbs

A Other ways of saying very

Some adverbs are used with particular adjectives or verbs to mean very, a lot, or to a large degree.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Other examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was <strong>bitterly disappointed</strong> with my results.</td>
<td>very disappointed.</td>
<td>bitterly cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was <strong>desperately unlucky</strong> to lose his job.</td>
<td>very unlucky.</td>
<td>desperately need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jack was <strong>seriously injured</strong> in the crash.</td>
<td>badly injured.</td>
<td>seriously ill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was <strong>terribly sorry</strong> he couldn't come.</td>
<td>very sorry.</td>
<td>terribly sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's <strong>vitaly important</strong> we remember.</td>
<td>very important.</td>
<td>highy intelligent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's <strong>highly unlikely</strong> that she'll be late.</td>
<td>very unlikely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He feels <strong>strongly</strong> that the war is wrong.</td>
<td>has a strong belief.</td>
<td>strongly oppose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prices have <strong>risen sharply</strong>.</td>
<td>risen a lot.</td>
<td>fall sharply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This expression is <strong>widely used</strong>.</td>
<td>used a lot.</td>
<td>travel widely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love Lucy, but she's <strong>completely mad</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td>completely bald</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I <strong>completely forgot</strong> about the party.</td>
<td></td>
<td>completely ruined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her first book was <strong>totally different</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td>totally sure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not <strong>totally convinced</strong> he's innocent.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence. Show where it should go.

- It's *important to go. **vitaly**________
- Paula's been ill. __________
- 1 They're intelligent boys. __________
- 2 It's cold outside. __________
- 3 That man is mad. __________
- 4 He __________ widely when he was in South America.
- 5 We both __________ strongly that the government should change its policy.
- 6 I'm not totally __________ that he knows what he's doing with that camera.

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- They were all **bitterly** disappointed to lose the match.
- The cost of coffee has __________ sharply since last year. It's almost double now.
- The accident happened this morning, and several people were seriously __________.
- I'm terribly __________. I completely __________ to bring my homework.
- 4 He __________ widely when he was in South America.
- 5 We both __________ strongly that the government should change its policy.
- 6 I'm not totally __________ that he knows what he's doing with that camera.

3 Replace very with a different adverb in each sentence.

- She's **very sorry** about the mistake. *terribly*
- 1 A good dictionary is **very important**. __________
- 2 It's **very unlikely** that he'll come. __________
- 3 We were **very unlucky** to lose the match. __________
- 4 It used to be quiet but it's **very different** now. __________
- 5 He was **very disappointed** he didn't win. __________
- 6 That story of the missing girl is **very sad**. __________
B Frequency and degree

Axel: Do you and Mac still go to concerts together regularly?
HARRY: No, we rarely see each other these days. The last time was roughly a year ago.
Axel: Oh. Why’s that?
HARRY: Well, he lives in Watford now, which is miles away. That’s mainly the reason.
Axel: But you still go to concerts, don’t you?
HARRY: No, actually I don’t. I think I’m getting a bit old for rock concerts. Generally I just listen to music at home.
Axel: Don’t you miss the excitement of live concerts?
HARRY: That’s partly why I don’t go. I find the noise and hysteria rather annoying, actually.

Spotlight: rather, fairly, quite, pretty

These words are all used to say that something is true to some extent. Rather and pretty are usually stronger, quite and fairly are usually weaker.

He’s fairly / quite lazy.
The film was pretty good.

With positive words, rather suggests a positive opinion is unexpected.
It was a very cheap restaurant, but surprisingly the food was rather good.

Glossary

regularly: happening quite often.
rarely: not happening often. Syn seldom.
actually: really (often used when you are saying the opposite of what sb expects). Syn in (actual) fact.
generally: usually; most of the time. Syn on the whole.
partly: to some degree but not completely. Syn to some extent. (To some extent I agree. Or I agree to a certain extent.)

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- The town is largely industrial. | The town is mainly industrial. ... S
  1. It’s quite good. | It’s fairly good. ......
  2. Generally it’s very quiet here. | On the whole it’s very quiet here. ......
  3. The house is actually very nice. | The house is very nice at the moment. ......
  4. It’s approximately ten kilometres. | It’s roughly ten kilometres. ......
  5. We go there regularly. | We rarely go there. ......
  6. I partly agreed with him. | I agreed with him to some extent. ......
  7. The book was rather good. | The book was pretty good. ......
  8. They seldom work late. | They rarely work late. ......

5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

- I go to the gym regularly. Quite often
  1. Generally I enjoyed the play. .................
  2. The students were largely Italian. .................
  3. There were roughly 30 at the party. .................
  4. We go there mainly for the skiing. .................
  5. It’s a nice flat but it’s pretty small. .................
  6. I wasn’t sure about Leo at first, but in fact he’s very nice. .................
  7. We seldom go out during the week. .................
  8. Your sister is quite tall, isn’t she? .................

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings and synonyms?
Review: Language

Unit 68

1 Circle the word or phrase that is different.
   ► as / since / (due to)
   1 despite / because / in spite of  5 though / so / therefore
   2 as a result / all the same / consequently  6 in addition / moreover / however
   3 what's more / still / plus  7 so / nevertheless / however
   4 although / despite the fact that / furthermore  8 provided that / whereas / as long as

2 Complete the texts with appropriate link words.
   1 I stayed with a delightful family last summer when I was studying German in Heidelberg.
      ▶ Despite the fact that my German was quite basic to start with, they helped me with
      conversation, and as a (1) ____________, I made a lot of progress. And what's
      (2) ____________, by the end of my stay I felt I had made new friends. I'll go back and stay
      with them next summer (3) ____________ that they don't have other guests.
   2 The first day of the holiday was a disaster. There was a huge storm and we couldn't leave the
      hotel (4) ____________ to the bad weather. In (5) ____________, there was no electricity in the
      evening (6) ____________ the storm had brought down the power lines. (7) ____________, the
      following morning the sun came out, and things started to improve.

Unit 69

1 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>► working well and quickly, and without mistakes</td>
<td>efficient</td>
<td>inefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 not done or seen or happening very often</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 just good enough, but nothing more</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 typical of the past, but not now</td>
<td>o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 connected with the town, not the country</td>
<td>u</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 full of people</td>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 made by people and used instead of something natural</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>natural or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 behaving in a bad and offensive way</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 feeling pleasure from what you have achieved</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 quite hard</td>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 successful and giving the result you want</td>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 70

1 Tick (✓) the correct words. Be careful: one or both may be correct.
   ► We live on the edge ✓ the rear □ of the village.
   1 The cat was sitting underneath □ over □ the chair.
2 We don’t play cards very often nowadays; these days.
3 The man behind us coughed during the film. It was so annoying.
4 We knocked on nearly every door, and now and again eventually found Lisa’s house.
5 She jumped down from the window beneath onto the grass.
6 I go there occasionally; recently to get some peace and quiet.
7 I could see her in the distance as she was running beside towards me.
8 We were working hard in the lesson. Meanwhile in the meantime, Darren was sitting outside, chatting to his girlfriend.

Unit 71

1 Complete the table with words from the box and their prepositions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in a hurry</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in a hurry</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involved in</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 72

1 Cross out the wrong word, and write the correct word at the end.

- We overloaded the car and put the shopping away. __unloaded__.
1 Margo’s behaviour is completely non-acceptable. _____________
2 His opinion is irrelevant; I’m going to leave anyway. _____________
3 I think she’s feeling a bit dissecure – let’s look after her. _____________
4 Could I have an unalcoholic drink, please? _____________
5 You can disfasten your seat belt now. _____________
6 My boss is very unhonest; I just don’t trust him. _____________
7 I hate it when people are impatient. _____________

Unit 73

1 Complete the dialogues.

- Is it OK to put this jacket in the washing machine? ~ No, it isn’t washable.
1 He judges situations well, doesn’t he? ~ Yes, he has very good _____________.
2 Do you know what this word means? ~ No, I can’t give you a _____________.
3 How would you react if you saw a tiger? ~ I don’t know what my _____________. would be.
4 That’s a woman with a lot of power. ~ Yes, she’s extremely _____________.
5 This mobile comes in grey, silver, and black. ~ Any colour’s OK for me; I don’t have a _____________.
6 That’s cruel to animals. ~ Yes, I hate that kind of _____________.
7 Why are you building an _____________.? ~ We need a bigger kitchen.
8 Will this stuff do me any harm? ~ No, it’s completely _____________.

REVIEW: LANGUAGE 189
Unit 74

1 Rewrite the sentences using verbs from the box and the correct construction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>deny ✓</th>
<th>accuse</th>
<th>remind</th>
<th>tend</th>
<th>recall</th>
<th>persuade</th>
<th>pretend</th>
<th>regret</th>
<th>admit</th>
<th>refuse</th>
<th>blame</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 She said she didn’t take the ring. She denied taking the ring.
2 I don’t remember meeting your parents. I don’t.
3 He wouldn’t leave. He
4 Carrie said she stole the necklace. Carrie
5 Mario said I took all the food. Mario
6 She’s sorry she moved to London. She
7 When I see Boris I think of your brother. Boris
8 I usually work in the evening. I
9 Cal said he was a doctor, but he wasn’t. Cal
10 She gave me good reasons to leave. She

Unit 75

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

1 I’d like to try and get through this chapter today. get
2 My brother is very like my dad, but I take my mother.
3 If you don’t need the money, why don’t you give it?
4 I don’t get very well with my boss.
5 If you can’t answer one of the questions, just it out.
6 He put his coat and ran out of the house.
7 I can’t work how to use this camera.
8 Could you the TV on? I’d like to see the news.
9 I’ve done my essay, but I need to go it again.

Unit 76

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>seriously</th>
<th>widely</th>
<th>sharply</th>
<th>totally</th>
<th>roughly</th>
<th>highly ✓</th>
<th>rather</th>
<th>rarely</th>
<th>strongly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 He’s got a PhD from Harvard; he’s highly intelligent – and he’s charming too.
2 Salaries have risen greatly in the last three years.
3 I feel very about the need to improve public transport.
4 The garden is long.
5 I didn’t enjoy the food very much, and the place was expensive.
6 I’m always saying I’m going to do more exercise, but I go to the gym.
7 This kind of tool was used by farmers in the nineteenth century.
8 I fell off a wall and hurt myself, but I wasn’t injured.
9 I’m convinced that better communication can change the world.
Most words and expressions are **neutral**, and can be used in most situations. Occasionally, we use formal language in spoken English, e.g. announcements (The play will **commence** in three minutes), but more commonly in written English, e.g. business letters or official documents (Keep your receipt as proof of **purchase**). Informal language is very common in spoken English, especially in conversation. Certain types of language are often informal:

- many phrasal verbs, e.g. **turn sb/sth down**
- uses of **get**, e.g. Could you **get** me a pen?
- many idioms, e.g. **keep an eye on sth, out of the blue**
- many examples of **vague** language, e.g. thing(s), **stuff**, sort of.

**Glossary**

- **neutral**: not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal).
- **commence**: Fml. begin.
- **purchase**: Fml. the act of buying sth. **purchase**: v.
- **turn sb/sth down**: Fml. refuse an offer.
- **get sth**: Fml. go to a place and bring sth back. Fml. fetch sth.
- **idiom**: an expression in which the meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words in it. **idiomatic**: adj.
- **keep an eye on sth, out of the blue**: Fml. look after sth and make sure it is safe.
- **vague**: not clear or definite.
- **sort of**: not exactly, but partly (e.g. Are you busy? Yes, sort of.)

**Spotlight: stuff**

**Stuff**: Fml. is used to refer to something without using its name. We usually use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns.

*Do you need much of this stuff?* (e.g. washing powder, soy sauce)

*Put that stuff over there.* (e.g. books, papers, files)

---

1. **Formal, informal, or neutral? Write F, I, or N.**

   - get **I**... 4. **commence**...  
   1. sort of... 5. **vague**...  
   2. **purchase**... 6. **out of the blue**...  
   3. **stuff**... 7. **neutral**...

2. **Replace the underlined word with a suitable word or phrase that has the same meaning in the context.**

   - I made him a good offer but he **refused** it.  **turned it down**...  
   1. Do you want me to **get** your coat for you?...  
   2. [announcement] The film will **start** in five minutes....
   3. Where can I leave my **clothes**?
   4. [business letter] There is a discount if you **buy** a certain quantity.
   5. Then my parents arrived **unexpectedly**.
   6. Could you **look after** my suitcase for a minute while I get a coffee?

3. **Complete the sentences.**

   - My brother arrived **out of the blue**.  
   1. Do you understand? — Yes, sort **there**.
   2. I don’t know exactly where she lives, but I have a **general** idea.
   3. Could you get some of that organic **milk** the children like to drink?
   4. ‘Keep an eye on something’ is quite a common **expression** in English.
   5. I offered him a lot of money but he still **refused** it down.
   6. The walls are **green**, but it’s not a strong colour; it’s quite **neutral**.
**Common exchanges**

A: What've you been up to lately?
B: Nothing much.

A: Take care. See you soon.
B: Yeah, Cheers.

A: Hang on. I'll be with you in a minute.
B: OK, but hurry up.

**Glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hi</td>
<td>你好</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How's it going?</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give sb a hand</td>
<td>帮助 (sb), 借给 sb 手 (手)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeah</td>
<td>是的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no problem</td>
<td>没问题</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's up (with sb)?</td>
<td>什么事 (与 sb)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I haven't a clue</td>
<td>我不知道</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What've you been up to?</td>
<td>你最近做了什么</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lately</td>
<td>最近</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing much</td>
<td>没什么</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take care</td>
<td>帮助</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang on</td>
<td>等一下</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurry up</td>
<td>加油</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spotlight: cheers**

We use *cheers* to express good wishes when we have an alcoholic drink. It is also used in informal situations to mean either 'thank you' or 'goodbye'.

**Exercise**

1. **Same or different? Write S or D.**
   - Yeah | Yes S.
   - no problem | nothing much D.
   - cheers | goodbye D.
   - recently | lately D.
   - late | lately D.
   - I don't know | I haven't a clue D.
   - How's it going? | How are things? D.
   - What've you been up to? | What's up? D.

2. **Put these words and expressions in more informal English.**
   - Hello. 
   - Hi.
   - Yes.
   - Wait a moment.
   - What's the matter?
   - I don't know.
   - How are you?
   - What've you been doing?
   - Thank you.

3. **Complete the dialogues.**
   - What's up? ~ Nothing. Why?
     1. See you soon. ~ Yeah. Take ______.
     2. Hi. How's it ______? ~ Fine, thanks. And you?
     3. Could you ______ me a hand? ~ Sure. No ______.
     4. We have to go. Hurry ______. ~ OK. Just ______ on a minute.
     5. What've you been up ______? ~ Nothing much.

4. **Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?**
C An everyday conversation

A Do you fancy a drink?
B No, I'd better be off in a minute.
A Really? I thought you had loads of time.
B No, I've got to get to Mark's to pick up a tent.

A What for?
B It's for a mate of mine. He wants to take his kids camping this weekend.
A At this time of the year? You're joking!
B I'm not. He reckons the weather's going to be fine.
A That's nonsense. The forecast is awful.
B Oh well. If it's a disaster, they'll just have to come back home.

8 Match 1–6 with a–g.

disaster e
mate a
loads b
rubbish c
fancy d
kid e
reckon f
friend g

9 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

Do you fancy going out tonight? – Yes. Where shall we go?
1 Sam's going to get a snake. – What! You must be
2 What was the party like? – Terrible. An absolute
3 Are you going camping? – Yes, but I've got to buy a new
4 He said he had ............... of money. – Don't believe him. He talks
5 I'd ............... be off now. – Why? What time's your train?
6 I'm going to Sweden tomorrow. – Really? What ............... ?
7 Where's Leyla? – She's ............... up the kids from school.
8 Do you feel ............... going out? – Yes, good idea.

10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?
78 I can write a formal letter

Notes
If you are writing to a stranger or you don’t know the person’s name, use the phrases on the right.
If you know the person, use Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr, etc. and their surname.
If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.
For an informal letter to a good friend or family member, use the first name.
Note: Love (from) is not normally used by a man writing to another man.

Beginnings
Dear Sir
Dear Madam
Dear Sir or Madam
Dear Mr Wu
Dear Miss Gilberto
Dear Rosa
Dear Conrad
Dear Min Ho
Hi, Pavel

Endings
Yours faithfully
your name
Yours sincerely
(With) best wishes
Kind regards
Love (from)
All the best / Take care

Glossary
stranger • a person that you do not know.
enclose sth • put sth in an envelope or packet with sth else.
deposit • a sum of money which is your first payment for sth (you will pay the rest later). (You pay a deposit on or for sth.)
commence • start, begin.
I would be grateful if you could ... • SYN I would appreciate it if you could ...
in particular • SYN especially, particularly.
whether • if.
nearby • not far away. SYN close by.
don’t hesitate to do sth • don’t feel worried about doing sth.
look forward to sth • think with pleasure about sth that is going to happen.
hearing from you • receiving your letter.

Spotlight: further, further to
Further ADJ has several meanings:
1) comparative of far: The station is further than the bank.
2) (only before a noun) more: Have you any further questions?
Further to ... FML is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject:
Further to my letter of 5 July, I am happy to ...

Sunshine Holiday Cottages
Fore St
Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

Further to our telephone conversation of last Friday, I enclose a cheque for £50 as a deposit for the rental of Rainbow Cottage for one week, commencing 21 August. I would be grateful if you could send me further information about the property, in particular, whether there is parking nearby.

We are planning to bring our dog. If this is a problem, please don’t hesitate to contact me.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely
Louise Robertson

Louise Robertson

45 Muswell Rd
London NW4
15 April 2008

194 STYLES OF ENGLISH
1. Cover the letter and answer these questions.
   - Is Louise Robertson going to rent a cottage? Yes, she is.
   - Is this the first time she has contacted Mr Ellison?
   - Why is she sending him £50?
   - Will she be leaving or arriving on 21 August?
   - Are there any other things she needs to know? If so, what?
   - Whose address did she write on the right-hand side?
   - Whose address did she write on the left-hand side?
   - Did she write the date? If so, where?
   - Which beginning did she use?
   - Which ending did she use?
   - Could she end it 'Take care, Louise'? Why/Why not?

2. Tick (√) the sentences that are correct and add a cross (X) to the sentences that are wrong.
   - If you're writing to a family member, you can end it with 'Love' and your signature. ✓
   - If you begin ' Dear Maria', you can end it with ' Kind regards'.
   - If you begin your letter 'Dear Sir', you can end it with 'With best wishes'.
   - If you don't know the name of the person you are writing to, you begin 'Dear Sir or Madam'.
   - If you write 'All the best' at the end, you could also write 'Take care'.
   - If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should end 'Yours faithfully'.
   - 'Yours faithfully' is a common ending when you are writing to a stranger.

3. Which words are missing where the slashes (/) are? Write them at the end.
   - Could you send me / details of the accommodation? Further.
   - I look forward / hearing / you.
   - If there's a problem, please / hesitate / ring me.
   - I / a photocopy / my identity card with the application form.
   - I would be / if you / phone me about the meeting.
   - Further / your letter / 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.
   - I would / it if / could help me.
   - Please let me know / particular / there is a beach nearby.
   - I enclose a cheque for €30 as a / for the rental of the room.

4. Complete the letter.

40 Lincoln Rise, Churchfield, Yorkshire
14 January 2008

Hot Property Rentals
Barton St
Weatherfield

Dear Mrs Stephens,

(1) ____________ to your letter of 12 January, I (2) ____________ a cheque for £500 as a (3) ____________ on Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings. As we agreed, my rental contract will (4) ____________ on 1 February and run for one year. I would be (5) ____________ if you could send me a receipt for the amount enclosed.

I would also (6) ____________ it if you could let me know (7) ____________ I will be able to park in the basement of the building. If not, will I be able to find parking (8) ____________?

If you need any (9) ____________ information from me, please don't (10) ____________ to call me.

Yours (11) ____________,
Jurek Gorzy

5. Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?
79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms

A Numbers and measurements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric Weight</th>
<th>Metric Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 g / gm (gram) = 1000 mg (milligrams)</td>
<td>1 cm (centimetre) = 10 mm (millimetres)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 g = 1 kg (kilo/kilogram)</td>
<td>100 cm = 1 m (metre)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 kg = 1 t (tonne)</td>
<td>1000 m = 1 km (kilometre)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric Capacity</th>
<th>Money</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 cl (centilitre) = 10 ml (millilitres)</td>
<td>UK £1 (pound) = 100 p (pence) (a sum of money);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 cl = 1 l (litre)</td>
<td>penny pl. pennies (coins)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>USA $1 (dollar) = 100 c/ct (cents)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Speed | Metric: 80 kph (kilometres per hour) | Non-metric: 50 mph (miles per hour) |

1 Write the correct abbreviation or symbol for each word.

- litre _____
- 1 metre _____
- 5 tonne _____
- 9 centimetre _____
- 13 gram _____
- 2 pence _____
- 6 miles per hour _____
- 10 milligram _____
- 14 millimetre _____
- 3 kilometre _____
- 7 centilitre _____
- 11 cents _____
- 15 pound _____
- 4 millilitre _____
- 8 kilogram _____
- 12 kilometres per hour _____
- 16 dollar _____

2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate measurement or amount of money.

- For sale: 20 _____ petrol cans at reduced prices.
- In Italy you can do a maximum speed of 130 _____ on the motorway, or 81 _____.
- You need a piece of card 20 _____ thick.
- To make pasta for one, cook about 70–80 _____ of spaghetti.
- The cheapest thing you can buy in the café is a coffee for 85 _____.

B Shortened forms

The shortened forms in the table are used commonly in spoken English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short form</th>
<th>Full form / Meaning</th>
<th>Short form</th>
<th>Full form / Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad, advert</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pub</td>
<td>public house FMR, a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends.</td>
<td>deli</td>
<td>delicatessen a shop or part of a supermarket that sells special or unusual foreign food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flu</td>
<td>influenza FMR</td>
<td>TV, telly INF</td>
<td>television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gym</td>
<td>gymnasium</td>
<td>board</td>
<td>blackboard, notice board.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lab INF</td>
<td>laboratory a place used for scientific research, testing, etc.</td>
<td>vet</td>
<td>veterinary surgeon, a doctor for animals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop (music)</td>
<td>popular music</td>
<td>bike</td>
<td>bicycle or motorbicycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>motorbike</td>
<td>motorbike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fridge</td>
<td>refrigerator</td>
<td>plane</td>
<td>aeroplane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Write the short form of these words.

- television
- veterinary surgeon
- popular music
- refrigerator
- bicycle
- gymnasion
- aeroplane
- blackboard
- newspaper
- public house
- delicatessen
- laboratory

4 Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

- Have you taken the cat to the __vet__ yet? ~ Yes, I'm waiting for test results from the __vet__.
- Could you buy some cheese from the __supermarket__? ~ I got some earlier - it's in the __fridge__.
- Are you still looking for a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some __job__ advertisements in the __newspaper__.
- Do you fancy a drink at the __pub__ tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the __football__ match.
- How are you? ~ I feel awful; I think I've got __flu__.

C Abbreviations

The abbreviations marked * are pronounced like words, e.g. AIDS is pronounced 'aids'. Other abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. BBC is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It stands for British Broadcasting Corporation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NATO*</th>
<th>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</th>
<th>UFO*</th>
<th>unidentified flying object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AIDS*</td>
<td>acquired immune deficiency syndrome (often called 'SIDA' in other languages)</td>
<td>PIN*</td>
<td>personal identification number (you use this with a credit card, for instance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UEFA*</td>
<td>Union of European Football Association</td>
<td>VAT</td>
<td>value added tax (a tax added to goods and services)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>automatic teller machine (a cash machine)</td>
<td>ISP</td>
<td>internet service provider, e.g. AOL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU</td>
<td>the European Union</td>
<td>DVD*</td>
<td>digital versatile disc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UN</td>
<td>the United Nations</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>information technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV</td>
<td>curriculum vitae (a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job)</td>
<td>ID card</td>
<td>identity card (a card with your name and photo which is proof of who you are)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the abbreviations.

- __NATO__ is a European and North American organization.
- 1. If you use an __ATM__, you'll need your __PIN__.
- 2. If you apply for a job, send in a __CV__.
- 3. I showed my __ID__ card to the police.
- 4. You have to pay __VAT__ on those goods.
- 5. Who won the __UEFA__ Cup last year?
- 6. He's good with computers: he's in __IT__.
- 7. Millions are suffering from __AIDS__ in Africa.
- 8. We watched a __DVD__ about __UN__ last night.
- 9. There are over 25 countries in the __UN__.
- 10. The __UN__ is an international organization.
- 11. An __ISP__ provides access to the internet and email.

6 Test yourself. Cover the full forms and meanings in the tables in sections B and C, and look at the short forms and abbreviations. What are the full forms?
## I can understand American English 🧑‍💻

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>US English</th>
<th>British English</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>candy</td>
<td>sweets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cellphone</td>
<td>mobile (phone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closet</td>
<td>cupboard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cookies</td>
<td>biscuits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faucet</td>
<td>tap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French fries</td>
<td>chips</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truck</td>
<td>lorry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>billfold</td>
<td>wallet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>US English</th>
<th>British English</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apartment</td>
<td>flat</td>
<td>a set of rooms that is used as a home (apartment is sometimes used in British English for a smart holiday flat).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attorney</td>
<td>lawyer or barrister</td>
<td>a lawyer, especially one who represents people in court (barrister in British English).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datebook</td>
<td>diary</td>
<td>a book in which you write what you have to do in the future.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drugstore</td>
<td>chemist</td>
<td>a shop that sells medicines and other goods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage/trash</td>
<td>rubbish</td>
<td>waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage/trash can</td>
<td>dustbin</td>
<td>a container outside your home, in which you put the waste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gasoline/gas</td>
<td>petrol</td>
<td>fuel used in a car (e.g. We stopped for more gas on the way.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high school</td>
<td>secondary school</td>
<td>a school for children aged 14 to 18 (a British secondary school is for children aged 11 to 16 or 18).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mall</td>
<td>shopping mall / shopping centre</td>
<td>shops, cinemas, etc. in a large covered area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie theater</td>
<td>cinema</td>
<td>a place where you see a movie (film in British English).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purse</td>
<td>handbag</td>
<td>a bag for money, keys, etc., used especially by women (in British English, a purse is mainly used for carrying coins).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>railroad</td>
<td>railway</td>
<td>a system of trains and the tracks on which they run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round trip</td>
<td>return (ticket)</td>
<td>a journey to a place and back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sidewalk</td>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>the part of the road where people walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>a shop (large or small).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway</td>
<td>underground</td>
<td>an underground railway system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Combine words from the box to form five more American English words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>free</th>
<th>side</th>
<th>cell</th>
<th>date</th>
<th>drug</th>
<th>rail</th>
<th>phone</th>
<th>way</th>
<th>walk</th>
<th>store</th>
<th>road</th>
<th>book</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **freeway** 3  
- 1  
- 2  

2. Complete the missing letters.

- **m o v i e** 3  
- 1  
- 2  

- c________t 6  
- 3  
- 4  

- d_________ 7  
- 5  
- 6  

- t________n 8  
- 7  
- 8  

3. Complete the American English words.

- What age do you start high ______ in America? 2  
- 1  
- 2  

- ______ in the trash. 3  
- 1  
- 2  

- ______ last night. 4  
- 1  
- 2  

- You can buy these things at the drug_____. 5  
- 1  
- 2  

- Do you want French______ with your steak? 6  
- 1  
- 2  

- I go on Tuesday and come back on Thursday, so I'll need a round_______. 7  
- 1  
- 2  

- We drove over 200 miles on the interstate_____. 8  
- 1  
- 2  

4. Replace the British English words with American English words.

- When does the shop open? ______ 1  
- 1  
- 2  

- Where are you going for your holiday? ______ 2  
- 1  
- 2  

- It's upstairs, so we'll need to take the lift. ______ 3  
- 1  
- 2  

- Where shall I put this rubbish? ______ 4  
- 1  
- 2  

- She keeps the note in her handbag. ______ 5  
- 1  
- 2  

- I put the appointment in my diary. ______ 6  
- 1  
- 2  

- Do we have any more sweets? ______ 7  
- 1  
- 2  

- He drives a big lorry. ______ 8  
- 1  
- 2  

- Would you like another biscuit? ______ 9  
- 1  
- 2  

- Could you turn on the tap? ______ 10  
- 1  
- 2  

- We can't use the pavement here. ______ 11  
- 1  
- 2  

5. **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers, or ask another student.

- How often do you use the subway? ______ 1  
- 1  
- 2  

- How often do you use the railroad? ______ 2  
- 1  
- 2  

- How often do you go to a movie theater? ______ 3  
- 1  
- 2  

- What was the last movie you saw? ______ 4  
- 1  
- 2  

- How often do you eat French fries? ______ 5  
- 1  
- 2  

- Where did you go for your last vacation? ______ 6  
- 1  
- 2  

- When was the last time you went to a mall? ______ 7  
- 1  
- 2  

- When did you leave high school? ______ 8  
- 1  
- 2  

6. Test yourself. Cover the US and British English words and look at the pictures and meanings. Can you remember the words?
Review: Styles of English

Unit 77

1 Change the underlined words to make them informal.

T Hello, Suki. Hi.
S Hey, Tomas! How are you?
T Oh, not bad. What've you been doing lately?
S Oh, nothing important.
T Listen, Suki, what's the matter with Jodie?
S Well, she went for that job at NDC, but they rejected her.
T (6) I don't believe you!
S No, it's true. She thinks someone doesn't like her there.
T That's nonsense. Everyone likes Jodie.
S I know. Anyway, there are lots of other jobs around.
T (10) Yes, you're right.
S Sorry, Tomas, I have to leave now.
T OK, see you later. Bye!

2 Cross out the answer which is not correct.

These are idiomatic:

1 These verbs are formal:
a) out of the blue  b) haven't a clue  c) neutral
a) commence  b) fancy  c) purchase
2 These mean 'go and bring something back':
a) get  b) fetch  c) reckon
a) hang on  b) cheers  c) take care
3 These can mean 'goodbye':
a) hang on  b) hold on  c) hurry up
a) Tell me a joke  b) You're joking  c) You must be joking
4 These mean 'wait':
a) stuff  b) keep an eye on someone  c) sort of
5 These are used to express surprise:
a) get  b) fetch  c) reckon

Unit 78

1 Circle the correct word.

Dear Mr Bruzione
1 Dear Mr/Sir or Mrs/Madam
2 Kind regard/regards
3 Your/Yours faithfully
4 I'd like further/further to details
5 I close/enclose a self-addressed envelope.
6 I'm not sure whether/weather it will be sunny.
7 I need some information, particular/in particular the size of the garage.
8 I look forward to hear/hearing from you.
9 Please hesitate/don't hesitate to contact me.
10 All the best/All best, Jamila.
1 Complete the letter.

Hot Property Rentals, Barton St, Weatherfield

25 March 2008

Dear Mr Buirk

I am writing to confirm that I have received your cheque for £90 as a deposit on Sunnybank Villa, Southstoke, for two weeks from 1 July. You asked for details about the cottage: it has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting room, and a small garden. You have parking, about 30 m from the front door.

I would be if you could let me know a few days before your visit you will be using all four bedrooms so that I can let the cleaner know. I would also if you could send me the balance of £345 at least four weeks before your arrival.

Please don't to contact me if you have any questions. I look to seeing you at Sunnybank Villa in July.

Yours,

Judy Kelveton

Judy Kelveton

Unit 79

1 What do these abbreviations stand for?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EU</th>
<th>ID</th>
<th>UN</th>
<th>PIN</th>
<th>VAT</th>
<th>CV</th>
<th>ISP</th>
<th>IT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>European Union</td>
<td>International Drive</td>
<td>United Nations</td>
<td>Personal Identification Number</td>
<td>Value Added Tax</td>
<td>Curriculum</td>
<td>Internet Service Provider</td>
<td>Information Technology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Can you shorten these words? If 'Yes', what is the short form?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>delicatessen</th>
<th>supermarket</th>
<th>refrigerator</th>
<th>wardrobe</th>
<th>veterinary surgeon</th>
<th>washing machine</th>
<th>advertisement</th>
<th>influenza</th>
<th>laboratory</th>
<th>receptionist</th>
<th>gymnasium</th>
<th>scientific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes (deli)</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 80

1 Complete the table with nine more pairs of British and American English words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sweets</th>
<th>sidewalk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>garbage</td>
<td>drugstore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuit</td>
<td>candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lift</td>
<td>diary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truck</td>
<td>rubbish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>cookie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist</td>
<td>gasoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>datebook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lorry</td>
<td>closet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petrol</td>
<td>faucet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap</td>
<td>wardrobe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British English</th>
<th>American English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sweets</td>
<td>candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garbage</td>
<td>drugstore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuit</td>
<td>candy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lift</td>
<td>diary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truck</td>
<td>rubbish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>cookie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist</td>
<td>gasoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
<td>datebook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lorry</td>
<td>closet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petrol</td>
<td>faucet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap</td>
<td>wardrobe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

## 1 Verbs and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>avoid</strong></td>
<td>avoidance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>approve</strong></td>
<td>approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>breathe</strong></td>
<td>breathing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>celebrate</strong></td>
<td>celebration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>communicate</strong></td>
<td>communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>consider</strong></td>
<td>consideration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>contain</strong></td>
<td>container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>criticize</strong></td>
<td>criticism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>decorate</strong></td>
<td>decoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>disapprove</strong></td>
<td>disapproval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>divide</strong></td>
<td>division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>evaluate</strong></td>
<td>evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>exhibit</strong></td>
<td>exhibition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>govern</strong></td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>interrupt</strong></td>
<td>interruption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>investigate</strong></td>
<td>investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>involve</strong></td>
<td>involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>kill</strong></td>
<td>killing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>propose</strong></td>
<td>proposal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>recognize</strong></td>
<td>recognition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>refer</strong></td>
<td>reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>remove</strong></td>
<td>removal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>require</strong></td>
<td>requirement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shoot</strong></td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>trade</strong></td>
<td>trade, trading</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2 Adjectives and verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amusing/amused</td>
<td>amuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amazing/amazed</td>
<td>amaze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complicated</td>
<td>complicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concerned</td>
<td>concern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cracked</td>
<td>crack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delighted</td>
<td>delight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depressed/depressing</td>
<td>depress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoted</td>
<td>devote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightening/frightened</td>
<td>frighten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irritated/irritated</td>
<td>irritate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repeated</td>
<td>repeat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 3 Adjectives and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accidental</td>
<td>accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allied</td>
<td>ally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxious</td>
<td>anxiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artistic</td>
<td>artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic</td>
<td>basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>determined</td>
<td>determination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgusting</td>
<td>disgust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electrical</td>
<td>electrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysterious</td>
<td>electricity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>national</td>
<td>nation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proud</td>
<td>pride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regional</td>
<td>region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexual</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspicious</td>
<td>suspicion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sympathetic</td>
<td>sympathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thick</td>
<td>thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traditional</td>
<td>tradition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valuable</td>
<td>value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealthy</td>
<td>wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>willing</td>
<td>willingness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 4 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>contrast</td>
<td>contrast</td>
<td>contrasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrassment</td>
<td>embarrass</td>
<td>embarrassing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entertainment</td>
<td>entertain</td>
<td>entertaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappointment</td>
<td>disappoint</td>
<td>disappointed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagination</td>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>imaginary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infection</td>
<td>infect</td>
<td>infections/infectened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impression</td>
<td>impress</td>
<td>impressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preparation</td>
<td>prepare</td>
<td>prepared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation</td>
<td>relate</td>
<td>related</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailing, sailor</td>
<td>sail</td>
<td>sailing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>separation</td>
<td>separate</td>
<td>separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swelling</td>
<td>swell</td>
<td>swollen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variation</td>
<td>vary</td>
<td>varied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 1

1 1 gist  4 foreign
2 identify  5 context
3 construct  6 translate
2 1 guess  4 foreigners
2 gist  5 go
3 recognize/know  6 note, record
3 1 repetition  4 revision
2 pronunciation  5 chat

4 1 study it again
2 successful
3 try something
4 make
5 a way of doing something
6 an informal

5 1 discussion  4 works
2 opportunity  5 chance
3 chat

Unit 2

1 1 encouragement  4 frustrating
2 improving  5 motivation
3 accurately  6 enthusiastic
2 1 getting better  5 accurately
2 while  6 is aware of
3 progress  7 express
4 obvious  8 frustrating
4 1 fluently  4 expanded
2 everyday  5 appropriate/right
3 relevant  6 aim
5 1 detail  5 expanding
2 inappropriate  6 specialized
3 complicated/complex  7 includes
4 contain  8 range

6 Answers from a Polish person
I'm learning English at the moment. My goal is to speak it fluently. I want to expand my vocabulary and be able to speak on a wide range of topics. I would like to learn complex structures and specialized vocabulary relevant to my job.

Unit 3

1 1 S  2 D  3 S  4 D  5 D  6 S  7 S  8 S
2 1 instance  5 symbols, syllable
2 selection  6 idiom, entry
3 build, provide, related  7 collocation
4 offending  8 stress

3 1 error, do sth wrong, fault
2 two
3 informal
4 no, it's informal
5 / gai /
6 a) correct
b) not correct (it should be 'My dad earns a lot of money in his job.')

Unit 4

1 1 full stop  5 question mark
2 colon  6 exclamation mark
3 hyphen  7 semicolon
4 brackets  8 apostrophe
2 1 comma
2 question mark
3 exclamation mark
4 apostrophe
5 semicolon
6 brackets
7 hyphen, dash
8 quotation marks, apostrophe, comma

4 1 list  7 such
2 instead  8 leave
3 connect/join  9 separate/divide
4 details  10 interrupt
5 pause  11 connect/join
6 abbreviation  12 alternative

5 'Comma' and 'full stop' are both punctuation marks. 'p.m.' is an abbreviation. 'Omit' and 'leave out' mean the same thing. 'Join' and 'connect' mean the same thing. 'Information' and 'details' mean the same thing. 'Separate' and 'divide' mean the same thing.

6 1 'She' needs a capital letter (not a small letter).
2 A comma is missing after 'tall'.
3 A slash is missing between 'in' and 'on'.
4 A colon is missing after 'choices'.
5 A comma is missing after 'arrived'.
6 An apostrophe is missing after 'boyfriend' and before 's'.
7 Commas are missing before and after 'fortunately'.

ANSWER KEY 203
Unit 5
1 1 eyebrows 5 stubble
2 fattish 6 clean-shaven
3 scar 7 in good shape
4 broad shoulders
2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 S 8 S 9 D
3 1 shape 5 built
2 bald 6 skinny
3 clean 7 skinned
4 shoulders 8 scar
4 Answers from an Italian person
1 My mother.
2 My father.
3 My cousin.
4 My brother.
5 My sister.
6 My aunt.
7 My whole family is dark-skinned.
8 My boyfriend has a scar on his neck.
6 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T
7 1 hair, appearance 4 smooth, rough
2 tell, expecting 5 slim/skender
3 wrinkles 6 tell, tan

Unit 6
1 1 N 2 N 3 P 4 P 5 P 6 B 7 N 8 B
2 1 energy 5 energetic
2 responsible 6 aggressive
3 generous 7 patient
4 cheerful 8 tolerant
3 1 f 2 a 3 g 4 h 5 e 6 b 7 i 8 d
4 honest dishonest irresponsible
lazy hard-working
generous mean ambitious unambitious
self-confident insecure honest honesty
tolerant tolerance aggressive aggression
arrogant arrogance generous generosity
patient patience
5 1 crazy 5 self-confident
2 easy-going 6 hard-working
3 sense of humour 7 responsible
4 modest 8 energy
6 Answers from a German person
1 Yes, I am a very ambitious person. I like to
do well in most things that I try.
2 I am a hard-working person but I also
enjoy letting my hair down.
3 I'm not an intolerant person but I don't
like people imposing things on me.
4 I get impatient when passport control
only has one lane open at the airport.
5 I'm a self-confident, easy-going person
with a good sense of humour.
6 I think honesty and tolerance are the
most important qualities.

Unit 7
1 1 anxious 5 heartbroken
2 furious 6 fed up
3 astonished 7 scared stiff
4 thrilled 8 kiss/kissed
2 1 delighted 4 amazed
2 miserable 5 jealous
3 terrified
3 Answers from a Colombian person
1 I'd be amazed as I don't usually study for
exams!
2 I'd be delighted for him; after all, he is my
best friend.
3 I'd be miserable, but everything has to
end some time, so I would be fine after a
while.
4 I'd be furious and would probably react
violently.
5 I'd be envious of my friends who could go
out.
6 I'd be heartbroken and would get another
girlfriend.
7 I'd be anxious as it is always hard to speak
in front of people.
8 I'd be proud that I actually got into the
plane in the first place.
5 1 hide 4 moody
2 sympathetic 5 insensitive
3 sensitive 6 emotions
6 1 mood 4 sympathetic
2 upset 5 in
3 supportive 6 hurt

Unit 8
1 a close friend, get on well with someone,
make friends, keep in touch, depend on
someone
2 1 reliable 4 disloyal
2 depend on 5 friendship
3 antisocial 6 close
3 1 He's friendly with Ruben.
2 She never keeps in touch. / She doesn't
keep in touch.
3 I don't get on with my father.
4 I made friends with her at university. / We
made friends at university.
5 I can rely on my boss.
6 Donna's an old friend.
5 1 in  4 in
2 out  5 went
3 get   6 get
6 1 argue, row  3 split, regrets
2 know, common  4 realize, go out
7 1 another   6 split
2 common    7 go
3 relationship 8 regretted
4 wrong     9 realized
5 argument/row

Unit 9
1 1 an only child  5 get divorced
2 half-sister   6 adopt a child
3 foster parents 7 single parent
4 stepfather  8 bring somebody up
2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D
3 1 brought 4 single
2 only  5 divorced
3 half
4 Answers from a Spanish person
 1 I was brought up in Salamanca, in Spain.
 2 I’ve got a younger sister.
 3 No, I don’t have any half-brothers or -sisters.
 4 One of my friends is a single parent.
 5 One of my colleagues has recently got divorced.
5 1 ancestors 4 relations
2 looks like  5 originally
3 emigrated  6 member
6 1 related 4 member, like
2 royal, queen 5 after
3 previous

Answers from a Japanese person
1 No, I’m not related to anyone famous.
2 Yes, we have a royal family. The current
   monarch is Emperor Akihito.
3 Previous generations of my family have
   lived in Kyoto and Osaka in Japan.
4 I’m often told that I look like my
   grandmother.
5 I take after my dad. We’re both good with
   our hands.

Unit 10
1 1 anniversary   8 honeymoon correct
2 I’ve chosen it 9 speech
3 traditional 10 guest
4 civil   11 ceremony
5 bridesmaid 12 reception
6 celebrate correct 13 religion
7 wedding
2 1 groom 5 after
2 bridesmaid 6 best man
3 chosen   7 reception
4 guests   8 husband and wife
3 1 go on your honeymoon
2 drink a toast
3 wish someone a happy marriage
4 make a speech
5 bride and groom
6 celebrate your anniversary
7 a religious ceremony
8 the best man
9 a wedding reception
4 1 choose, civil 6 guests
2 best 7 traditional, make
3 bridesmaids 8 toast
4 rings  9 couple, honeymoon
5 reception 10 celebrate

5 Answers from a Norwegian person
1 Yes, you can choose either.
2 Yes, he does, and the bride has a best
   woman.
3 Sometimes younger family members act
   as bridesmaids.
4 Yes, they do.
5 Yes. The wedding traditionally takes place
   in the late afternoon, and there’s often a
   sit-down meal after that.
6 It could be any number.
7 Yes, very much so. The best man, best
   woman, bridegroom, bride’s father, and
   sometimes the bride all make speeches.
   After that, anyone else who wants to
   speak can do so, and some guests write a
   song which is performed by all the guests
   for the couple.
8 Yes, they do.
9 Yes, normally the day after.
10 Yes, they do.
7 1 widower 5 inherit
2 gravestone 6 death
3 funeral  7 cemetery
4 bury   8 coffin
8 1 died 4 buried, cremated
2 will, gravestone 5 widow, mourner
3 funeral, burial 6 grave, coffin
9 1 of 5 funeral
2 in  6 buried
3 widow 7 will
4 death 8 inherited
Unit 11
1 space system  5 star planet
2 moon sun  6 planes rockets
3 planet star  7 earth universe / solar system
4 sun moon  8 satellite

2 1 space
2 words
3 roughly/approximately, reach
4 fetched
5 gained
6 revolves/circles
7 knowledge
8 satellite

4 1 exist
2 explore
3 invention
4 carried out
5 discovered
6 analyse

5 1 scientists
2 discovery
3 confirmation
4 analysis
5 exploration
6 existence

6 1 exists
2 explore
3 satellites
4 carry
5 invented
6 confirmed

Unit 12
1 flood  6 narrow
2 high tide  7 puddle
3 shallow  8 drown
4 float  9 waterfall
5 surface  10 ocean

2 c 2 d 3 h 4 g 5 b 6 e 7 f 8 a
3 N Y 2 Y 3 Y 4 Y 5 N 6 Y 7 N 8 Y
9 N 10 N

4 1 on the surface
2 lake
3 capsized
4 width
5 burst
2 caused
3 deep
4 floating
5 lake
6 drowned
7 shallow
8 floods

5 1 burst
2 caused
3 deep
4 floating
5 lake
6 drowned
7 shallow
8 floods

6 1 horizon
2 rock
3 beach
4 cliff
5 ship
6 shore
7 harbour
8 cave
9 coast
10 bay

7 1 rough
2 wave
3 protects
4 sandy
5 steep
6 on

8 Answers from a Polish person
1 I’m quite worried about global warming, but what worries me most is the fact that
scientists and politicians talk about this problem a lot, but nothing is being done
about it.
2 We don’t have rainforests in Poland.
3 Summers have become warmer and
winters are milder now. Also, summer
starts earlier, almost right after winter, so
sometimes it seems as if we haven’t had
spring.
4 The changing of natural habitats, the
construction of roads and buildings, and
the growth of industry are all harming
the environment.
5 I think industrial pollution is probably
most common in Poland.

Unit 14
1 volcanic eruption
2 tidal wave
3 surrounding land
4 starve to death
5 violent storm

2 1 destruction
2 violence
3 eruption

3 1 hurricane, destroyed, damaged, disaster
2 drought, crops, starve
3 erupted, ground, lava
4 sudden, violent, typhoon
Unit 15

1 1 leopard 4 gorilla 7 snake 2 elephant 5 whale 8 shark 3 eagle 6 spider 9 monkey

2 eagle, bee, mosquito
elephant, lion, tiger, camel, monkey
gorilla, bear, leopard
elephant, eagle

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F

5 survival 4 poisonous expectancy 5 harmful, harmless weight

6 survive 3 hunt 5 up average 4 sting 6 vary

7 calf 5 rat 8 herd mouse 10 leporid

8 horse 4 calf 7 donkey goat 5 frog 8 turkey bull 6 mouse

9 Answers from an Italian person
1 In Italy, people eat horse, calf, turkey, donkey, cow, and frog.
2 People keep horses for sport and hobbies. People keep goats for their milk. Not many people keep bulls. Donkeys are often kept in zoos. People use mice for animal testing.

Unit 16

1 1 papaya 3 thyme 5 stone
spinach 4 sweetcorn

2 In Britain
artichoke C, beetroot C, fennel R, chickpeas C, celery R, broccoli C

3 plum 3 apricot 5 avocado
coconut 4 grapefruit

4 Answers from a British person
papaya Yes, but not much coconut Yes, but not much raspberries Yes passion fruit Yes, but not much plums Yes basil Yes parsley Yes chick peas Yes, but not much asparagus Yes artichoke Yes, but not much sweetcorn Yes fennel Yes, but not much

6 calf 7 oyster
lobster 8 liver rabbit 9 veal
squid 10 sea bass kidney 11 mussels trout 12 salmon

7 Answers from a German person
1 I think most Germans would like to eat a nice piece of veal.
2 I think salmon is the most popular fish in Germany.
3 I don’t eat seafood, but I think it would be crab.
4 I don’t eat any seafood because I don’t like the taste of it very much.
5 I would never eat liver or kidney because I don’t like to eat the insides of animals.
6 Out of the five fish, the one I’m least likely to eat is carp.

Unit 17

1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 G

2 1 on 4 of 2 on 5 on 3 up 6 of

3 1 plenty 4 diet 2 exercise 5 waste 3 cut 6 keep

5 1 peel 5 boil
chop 6 fry 3 add 7 bake
4 mash 8 roast

6 1 recipe, ingredients 4 bake, oven 2 add 5 flour 3 pan, dish 6 stock, stir
Unit 18
1 afford 5 bargain
2 discount/reduction 6 change
3 reduced 7 receipt
4 sales 8 refund
2 1 bargain 3 change 5 refund
2 scratch, off 4 sales
3 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I don’t always look for a bargain but I’m very happy when I find one.
2 I would ask the shop assistant whether they have another one in stock.
3 I check the number of notes, but I don’t check the number of coins.
4 I often wait for the sales. I usually buy my clothes then.
5 I don’t usually take things back or ask for a refund, but once the heel came off a pair of boots a few weeks after I had bought them, so I did take those back.
4 1 €1,000,000.
2 €250,000.
3 Six months.
4 She didn’t live there, and she sold it for less money.
5 Over £5,000.
6 Yes (to the credit card company).
5 1 It’s a huge house.
2 The house is valued at £2,000,000. / The value of the house is £2,000,000.
3 Rani is broke.
4 I don’t own the flat.
5 Her shoes cost a fortune.
6 Gisela owes £5,000.
6 1 amount, well 3 worth 5 income
2 broke 4 huge/massive

Unit 19
1 fell asleep 4 go / get to sleep
2 fast asleep 5 went off
3 nightmare 6 overslept
2 1 wake 5 awake
2 sleepy/tired 6 yawning
3 set, overslept 7 pyjamas, snores
4 lie-in
4 have a nap, sleep like a log, suffer from insomnia, have a restless night, a heavy sleeper, on my mind
5 1 nap, habit 5 mind
2 like a log 6 disturbs, heavy
3 suffer from 7 exhausted
4 restless 8 lack

Unit 20
1 infection 5 blood
2 bandage 6 symptom
3 thoroughly 7 temporarily
4 wound 8 develop
2 1 burn 7 temporarily
2 running 8 dressing
3 covered 9 bandage
4 prevent 10 thoroughly
5 symptoms 11 healed
6 wound 12 infection
4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 T
5 1 I slipped on the ice and fell over.
2 I know he slipped, but did he fall backwards or forwards?
3 He passed out, and when he came round he didn’t know where he was.
4 Nobody was killed, but three people were injured in the accident.
5 She banged her head on the door and fell to the floor.
6 My finger was bleeding so I put a dressing on it.

Unit 21
1 steering wheel
2 door handle
3 windscreen wiper
4 gear lever
5 number plate
6 wing mirror
2 1 O 2 I 3 I 4 O 5 I 6 I 7 O 8 I 9 O
3 1 brake 6 headlights
2 clutch 7 mirror
3 accelerator 8 windscreen wipers
4 boot 9 horn
5 bonnet
5 1 past 4 advice
2 faster 5 direction
3 backwards 6 instead
6 1 prepared 4 watch
2 limit, close 5 keep
3 skidded 6 rather

7 Answers from a British person
1 I know these things, but it’s useful to be reminded of them.
2 Usually I do, but I accelerate quickly to overtake.
3 No, not always. In supermarket car parks I go in forwards, then it’s easier to put things in the boot.
4 Yes. I’m afraid so – usually on motorways.
5 I know what I’m supposed to do, but in an emergency I might panic and forget.
Unit 22

1 B G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 B
2 1 due 5 meant, held
   2 connecting 6 get
   3 trouble, delayed 7 pick
   4 cancelled 8 warning

3 Answers from a British person
1 Trains are often delayed, because of work to repair the track.
2 I have never missed a train or a plane (but I've often missed the ferry to France).
3 get stuck, end up, rush hour, traffic jam, stop off, on the way, the wrong way, hire a car
5 1 trip 4 rent/hire
   2 traffic jam 5 nightmare
   3 overnight 6 via
6 1 hired/rented 3 stuck, heavy
   2 stop, way 4 trips

7 Answers from a British person
1 I hired a car in Germany when my boyfriend came to visit me so we could go to the coast.
2 On really long journeys, I like to stop off somewhere to have a break, but mostly I prefer to get from A to B as quickly as possible, so long as it's not dangerous.
3 I get stuck in traffic in Headington, on the outskirts of Oxford, every evening on my way home.
4 I sometimes go on day trips to London or Bath.

8 1 ambulance 5 occur
   2 vehicle 6 block
   3 serious 7 avoid
   4 emergency 8 collide
9 1 injured 4 skidded
   2 vehicles 5 emergency services
   3 collided with 6 occurred
10 1 blocking 3 serious 5 broke down
    2 skidded 4 lane 6 injured

Unit 23

1 1 underwear 6 necklace
   2 material 7 blouse
   3 sleeve 8 earrings
   4 tights 9 vest
   5 suede 10 button

2 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 F 9 T
10 T

3 Underwear: vest, slip, bra
   Jewellery: bracelet, ring, necklace, earrings
   Material(s): cotton, leather, suede, silk
   Clothes: skirt, waistcoat, cap, blouse
4 1 ring 5 leather, silk
   2 bracelet 6 neck
   3 belts 7 sleeves
   4 denim 8 material

5 Answers from a Polish person
   No, I don't think I've ever worn a cap.
   Yes, I wear a ring on my middle finger.
   I wear a bracelet on my right wrist.
   I've got four leather belts.
   I've got seven pairs of jeans but I rarely wear them.
   All of my shoes, boots, handbags, and belts are made of leather. I've got a few silk scarves, pyjamas, and pillowcases.
   Yes, I've got lots of V-neck sweaters, in various colours.
   Yes, I often wear short sleeves.
   My favourite material is linen.

7 1 matches 5 suits
   2 unfashionable 6 very good
   3 outfit 7 accessories
   4 latest, style 8 neutral

8 1 matching
   2 elegant/stylish/fashionable
   3 latest
   4 suit
   5 versatile
   6 transforms
   7 accessories
   8 outfit

Unit 24

1 1 The dentist 6 The dentist
   2 The tooth 7 I
   3 I 8 I
   4 The dentist 9 The tooth
   5 I 10 I

2 1 look 4 filling/check-up
   2 surgery 5 painful, chew
   3 have 6 take

3 Answers from an Italian person
   I don't have a check-up very often – about once a year.
   I don't look forward to going to the dentist because I find it very scary.
   My dental surgery is in a very nice, modern building with lots of rooms.
   I had toothache last month.
   About two years ago.
5 It's not normally painful when I bite or chew my food.
6 I can't remember the last time a dentist took one of my teeth out.

Unit 25
1 1 consultant 6 urgent
2 immediately 7 well enough
3 recover 8 successful
4 patient 9 benefit
5 straightaway 10 surgeon
2 1 patient 5 surgeon
2 specialist 6 nurse
3 patient 7 patient
4 patient 8 nurse
3 1 consultant 7 risks
2 tests 8 successful
3 operation 9 enough
4 urgent 10 get over
5 straightaway 11 take care
6 into
4 Answers from a German person
1 Yes, I had my tonsils removed in 1997.
2 Yes, I visited my mum in hospital when she had an operation on her ankle a few years ago.
3 Nurses are there to take care of you and families are there to support you.
4 Yes, you can see a specialist straightaway in Germany if you want to. Waiting times are minimal.
5 No, you can go directly to a specialist.
6 It depends on the operation. If it's a minor operation, people go home.

Unit 26
1 1 needle 5 a hammer
2 scissors 6 a drill
3 screwdriver 7 Sellotape
4 rope 8 screw
2 1 tools
2 scissors, sew, cotton/thread
3 stick, glue
4 string
5 screwdriver, tighten
6 hole
7 nail
8 tied
4 These are possible
1 fix, repair
2 faulty, not working
3 remove, replace
4 lamp, light bulb
5 is out of order, isn't working properly
6 leaking, faulty
5 1 stains 6 working

Unit 27
1 1 dust 3 grease
2 muddy 4 vacuum
2 1 Sweep 6 mop, bucket
2 vacuum cleaner 7 Dust, polish
3 up 8 wipe
4 cloth 9 sweep
5 Do 10 Throw
3 Answers from a Colombian person
1 I do the washing up and I clean my room. Every other week I have to clean the kitchen or the toilet.
2 If I clean the toilets my housemates will clean the rest of the house.

Unit 28
1 1 fringe 5 parting
2 scissors 6 trim
3 hairstyle 7 colour
4 hairdryer 8 blow-dry
2 1 Could you colour it for me, please?
2 Sasha is letting her hair grow.
3 I'd like a fringe and a parting on the right.
4 I'd like a cut and blow-dry, please.
5 I want to keep the same hairstyle, please.
6 She's going to have/get her hair trimmed.
3 Answers from a Spanish person
1 Yes, I'm letting my hair grow longer.
2 I had my hair cut about two months ago.
3 I don't have a fringe. I have a parting in the middle.
4 I go to a different hairdresser's every time.
5 My mum and my sister have their hair coloured.

Unit 29
1 1 filthy 4 whistle
2 litter 5 graffiti
3 pavement 6 depressing
2 1 dirty 5 floors
2 quickly 6 money, food
3 walk 7 lips
4 ground 8 pictures/writing
3 1 litter 4 hurry/rush
2 subway 5 graffiti
3 wonder 6 depressing
5 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D
6 1 suburb
2 surrounded, shame/pity
7 Answers from a Japanese person
1 The area where I live is built-up. I’d like to live in the country where I could have a nice garden.
2 My home is surrounded by other houses.
3 There are a few convenience stores and a small supermarket in the area.
4 It’s not handy at all! The nearest bus stop is 15 minutes’ walk away and the nearest train station is a 15-minute bike ride away. Wherever you go, it takes quite a while.
5 One of the disadvantages of where I live is that there is no park nearby where children can play or where you can go for a walk.

Unit 30
1 1 impressive 4 attic 7 currently
2 cellar 5 basement 8 feature
3 separate 6 spacious
2 1 basement 3 hall 5 passage
2 corridor 4 drive 6 lawn
3 1 enormous 4 staircase
2 store 5 leads
3 tiny 6 convert
4 1 detached 4 leads 7 huge
2 currently 5 cellar 8 wall
3 drive 6 store 9 convert
5 1 features 4 storage
2 chimney 5 bricks
3 original 6 roof
6 Answers from a British person
1 We don’t have shutters on our windows.
2 We do have a lawn. We sit out on it when the weather is warm.
3 Yes, there’s a small room we use for storage and a children’s bedroom.
4 We haven’t got a basement or a cellar, but we have got a garage where we store our bikes and the dustbins.
5 There’s a drive in front of the house.
6 Most of the rooms are quite spacious but the spare room is tiny.

Unit 31
1 1 boot 5 wooden 9 gold
2 concrete 6 silver 10 pipe
3 tyre 7 wooden 11 metal
4 woollen 8 plastic
2 1 silver, gold 4 wood, metal
2 wood, plastic 5 plastic, wood, cardboard
3 plastic, metal 6 iron, steel, concrete
4 1 pointed 6 circular 11 square
2 L-shaped 7 round 12 parallel
3 curved 8 circle 13 diamond
4 rectangle 9 triangle 14 star-shaped
5 vertical 10 horizontal
5 1 oval 4 square 7 curved
2 rectangular 5 triangular 8 straight
3 round 6 pointed
6 1 a rectangular table
2 a curved needle
3 pointed shoes
4 a triangular handbag
5 an oval mirror
6 a star-shaped box

Unit 32
1 1 notice 5 glanced at
2 see 6 can see
3 look 7 overheard
4 watch 8 hear
2 1 catch 5 looked
2 can, sounds 6 glanced/looked
3 staring 7 observant
4 seem/appear 8 disappeared
4 1 stinks 3 bland 5 touched
2 damp 4 like 6 rubbed
5 1 like, like 4 touch 7 smell
2 tapping 5 tapped 8 flavour, taste
3 Press 6 grabbed

Unit 33
1 1 five
2 the background
3 no
4 yes
5 yes
6 a painting
7 in the distance/background
8 on the right-hand side
9 bright
10 on the left-hand side
2 1 no 4 dark
2 work 5 see
3 feeling 6 light
3 1 You can see it in the distance.
   2 He’s lying in the bottom left-hand corner.
   3 Is it on the right-hand side of the painting?
   4 They’re sitting in the centre of the drawing.
   5 There are some trees in the top left-hand corner.

4 1 industrial
   2 illustrate
   3 warmth
   4 painting
   5 even
   6 shade

5 Answers from a Polish person
   1 Gabriela Trykler.
   2 Yes, in 1995.
   3 It’s an abstract painting.
   4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.
   5 No, I don’t.

Unit 34
1 1 Yes
   2 No
   3 Yes
   4 Yes
   5 Yes

2 1 drag
   2 tore up
   3 folded
   4 shake
   5 smashed
   6 squeeze
   7 scratched
   8 sprayed

4 1 sneeze
   2 breath
   3 burst out laughing
   4 breathe in
   5 whisper
   6 sigh
   7 burst into tears/cry
   8 shout
   9 out loud / aloud
   10 silent
   11 tears
   12 silence

5 Answers from an Italian person
   1 Yesterday I heard my neighbours’ baby screaming in the night because she was hungry.
   2 I last burst out laughing when I went to a comedy show.
   3 I last whispered to someone when I was visiting a museum.
   4 I last read something out loud to my boyfriend. It was part of a review of a film.

Unit 35
1 steal, commit, attack, offend, obey
   2 1S 2S 3D 4D 5S 6S 7S 8D
   3 1 violence
   2 attacked
   3 stole
   4 Property
   5 violent/serious
   6 serious/violent, jail
   7 broken
   8 minor, against

5 These words are wrong
   1 attacker
   2 mug
   3 breaking into
   4 shoplifting
   5 burglary
   6 broke, stole, stabbed
   7 deliberately
   3 mugged/attacked, shoot/kill
   4 murdering/killing, shot
   5 thief/burglar
   6 robbed

Unit 36
1 1 report
   2 Victims
   3 investigate
   4 fingerprints
   5 took place
   6 may

2 1 The police
   2 The suspect
   3 The police
   4 The victim
   5 The suspect
   6 The victim or a witness

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T

5 1 tried
   2 prove
   3 prosecution
   4 defendant
   5 sentenced
   6 trial
   7 fined

Unit 37
1 1 allergic
   2 obese
   3 Diseases

2 1 Diabetes
   2 allergy
   3 Diseases
   6 heart

3 1 allergic
   2 obesity
   3 attack
   4 depressed
   5 suffer

4 1 memory loss
   2 arthritis
   3 brain
   4 blind

5 1T 2F 3T 4T 5F 6F 7F 8T

6 1 arthritis
   2 deaf
   3 sight
   4 memory
   5 cancer
   6 heart
**Unit 38**

1. 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F
2. 1 elections 4 vote
   2 consists, parties 5 represent
   3 power 6 majority
3. **Answers from a Colombian person**
   1 My country holds elections every four years.
   2 The Uribeista party is in power at the moment.
   3 They have been in power for five years.
   4 The President of the Republic.
   5 There are more than 500 people in parliament.
4. 1 public 4 start it
   2 important 5 coming
   3 deal with it 6 disagree
5. 1 policy 5 aim/objective/goal
   2 campaign 6 Opposition
   3 persuade 7 focus
   4 immigrants 8 need

**Unit 39**

1. 1 g 2 e 3 f 4 b
2. 1 enemy 4 captured
   2 critical 5 twelve
   3 surrendered 6 explode
3. 1 out 4 soldiers
   2 bomb 5 control
   3 battle 6 war
4. 1 f 2 h 3 b 4 d
5. 1 sides 6 unwilling
   2 ceasefire 7 involved
   3 leaders 8 compromise
   4 settlement 9 reach/negotiate
   5 determined 10 peace

**Unit 40**

1. 1 f, release
   2 a, assassination
   3 e, establishment
   4 b, invasion
   5 d, attempt
2. 1 assassinated 4 defeated
   2 established 5 attempt
   3 Revolution 6 independence, independent

**Unit 41**

1. **whole, daily, entire, national, cultural**
2. 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D
3. 1 culture 4 whole, international
   2 press, journalist 5 declining
   3 published 6 daily
4. 1 scare 5 claimed
   2 axed 6 pension
   3 clashed 7 threat
   4 demonstration
5. 1 pledged 5 demonstrate/protest
   2 claims 6 clashed
   3 aid 7 threatened
   4 scare 8 promise

**Unit 42**

1. 1 equivalent 5 award
   2 produce 6 achieve
   3 supporting role 7 winner
   4 individual 8 prize
2. 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F 9 T
10 T
3. 1 winner 5 role
   2 achieve 6 award
   3 leading 7 equivalent
   4 produced 8 individual
5. 1 P 2 N 3 P 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N
6. 1 indeed 4 extraordinary
   2 plot 5 suitable
   3 movie 6 performance
7. 1 entertaining
   2 extraordinary performance
   3 disappointing indeed
   4 fan
   5 moving
8. **Answers from a Spanish person**
   1 The Bourne Ultimatum is a really entertaining film.
   2 Nicole Kidman gave an extraordinary performance in The Others.
   3 I thought Music and Lyrics was very disappointing indeed.
   4 I'm a fan of Brad Pitt.
   5 Life is Beautiful was very moving.

**Unit 43**

1. **1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 D 8 S 9 D**
2. 1 styles 6 watercolours
   2 abstract 7 portrait/painting
   3 techniques 8 masterpiece
   4 oils 9 display
   5 vary 10 exhibitions
Unit 45
1 1 golfer 5 rugby player
2 athlete 6 skier
3 boxer 7 gymnast
4 racing driver

2 1 captain
2 referee
3 support
4 umpire
5 supporters

3 1 referee
2 linesman
3 flag
4 commentator
5 manager

4 1 length
2 track
3 width
4 maximum

5 1 construct, stadium, capacity
2 laps, Circuit, track, constructed
3 Championship, worldwide, courts
4 standard, pool, long, wide, minimum, depth, maximum

Unit 44
1 1 violin/violinist
2 organ/organist
3 trumpet/trumpeter
4 guitar/guitarist
5 saxophone/saxophonist
6 cello/cellist
7 flute/flautist

2 1 orchestra
2 guitar, band, lead
3 instrument
4 composers

3 1 lyrics
2 solo
3 live
4 voice

4 1 influenced
2 release
3 recorded
4 recording

5 1 songwriter
2 player
3 musicians
4 conductor

6 1 living
2 melody
3 appeals
4 admire

Unit 46
1 1 gymnastics
2 weightlifting
3 fencing
4 cycling
5 athletics
6 wrestling

2 1 took part
2 take part, participate
3 record
4 competitors, professionals

3 1 take
2 compete
3 record

5 1 achievement
2 criticize
3 resistance
4 praise

6 1 contest
2 overall
3 achievement

Unit 47
1 1 Fiction: murder mystery, novel, sci-fi

2 1 encyclopedia
2 poetry/poems
3 reference
4 pleasure

3 1 attention
2 well known
3 chapter

4 1 mystery
2 alphabet
3 autobiography
4 manual

5 1 readable
2 paperback
3 browsing
5 1 author 5 chapter
2 attention 6 fascinating
3 title 7 cover
4 paperback 8 written

6 Answers from a Polish person
1 I like detective stories and biographies.
2 I use lots of different dictionaries.
3 I used to when I was younger and had
more free time.
4 No, not really.
5 I have more paperbacks than hardbacks
because they are cheaper, but also
because many books only come out in
paperback.

Unit 48
1 1 illuminated 5 festival
2 Carnival 6 fireworks
3 approached 7 tons
4 spectacular 8 blossom
2 1 c 2 b 3 h 4 d 5 i 6 f 7 a 8 g
3 1 participated 4 striking
2 dress up 5 occasion
3 illuminated 6 neighbourhood
4 1 festival, carnival 5 dressed up
2 parade 6 occasions, fireworks
3 entertainment 7 mean
4 taken part 8 participate

5 Answers from a German person
1 The ‘Oktoberfest’ in Munich is a very
important and popular festival. It was
originally a harvest festival.
2 No, they don’t.
3 Yes. There are lots of local bands playing
and there’s a fairground.
4 No, I haven’t taken part in a parade.
5 Yes, at ‘Fasching’ in February, when I was
small, my mum dressed me up as a mouse!
6 Yes, on New Year’s Eve.
7 Not really, but I can understand why a lot
of people like tradition.
8 Yes, I’d like to participate in ‘La Tomatina’
because I think it would be a lot of fun
throwing tomatoes at other people!

Unit 49
1 1 invigilator 5 attitude
2 success 6 disqualified
3 succeed

2 1 attitude 8 essential
2 instructions 9 carefully
3 invigilator 10 devotes
4 cheating 11 planning
5 disqualified 12 examiner
6 item 13 relief
7 paper

Unit 50
1 The people are 4, 5, 6, and 9.
2 1 attend 6 widely
2 seminars 7 academic
3 lectures 8 assessment
4 notes 9 graduate
5 tutor
4 1 opportunity 5 manage
2 on time 6 in time
3 freedom 7 homesick
4 revision

5 1 away 4 loans
2 residence 5 scholarship
3 tuition 6 chance

6 Answers from an Italian person
1 Students usually live at home, unless they
go to university in another city.
2 Some students live in halls of residence,
but most of them live in shared flats or
houses.
3 Yes, they do have to pay tuition fees
unless they receive a scholarship.
4 Normally they don’t have to take out
loans because their parents help them.
5 Yes, scholarships are available.
6 It would be great to have the chance to
study abroad.

Unit 51
1 1 application, assessment, confirmation,
acknowledgement, interview
2 1 They said they’d contact to me.
2 Is she applying for a job?
3 Have you got a work permit?
4 The company is based in Tokyo.
5 He gave me some good advice.
6 She gave me feedback after the interview.
7 I have to confirm it in writing.
8 If you apply for a job, it’s quite a long
process.
3 1 requested 4 require
2 position 5 subject to
3 attended
4 1 based 6 candidates
2 acknowledge 7 vacancies
3 confirmation 8 give
4 contact 9 apply, application
5 automatically 10 process

5 Answers from a German person
1 I’ve applied for the following jobs in the past: a paper-boy, a lighting technician
in a nightclub, an optician, and an IT
specialist.
2 I think I’ve had more than twenty
interviews in my life.
3 Yes, interviewers usually give feedback after an interview.
4 I've been the successful candidate five times.
5 My referees were my previous supervisors.
6 No, I've never had to get a work permit because I've always worked in the European Union.

Unit 52
1 1 training 5 manufacturing
2 military 6 management
3 retail 7 finance
4 engineering 8 recruitment

2 1 sector 5 qualifications
2 management 6 profession
3 experience 7 military
4 training

3 Answer from a Colombian person
I have some management experience. And I worked in retail when I was younger. I don’t have experience in any of the other fields.

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T

5 1 estate travel
2 landing land
3 produces products
4 servant service
5 exports imports
6 takes care of takes care of / cares for
7 representants representatives/reps

Unit 53
1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 D 8 S 9 D
2 1 challenging 5 elsewhere
2 department 6 unemployed
3 prospects 7 sack/fire
4 promoted 8 resign/quit

3 Answers from a British person
1 My job is very challenging.
2 In fact I’ve already transferred from another department.
3 I have reasonable prospects in my job.
4 I’m not thinking about promotion at the moment as my job is already challenging enough!
5 No, I’m not bored, so I won’t be looking elsewhere.
6 No, I’ve never been unemployed.
7 I would hate to have to sack someone.
8 Yes, I would definitely resign if I started to hate my job.

4 1 I’d like to make an enquiry about the club.
2 I talked to her face-to-face.
3 It’s very hard to deal with this situation.
4 Who’s in charge of this department?
5 You have to make sure the door is locked.
6 We're not responsible for the cleaning.

5 Do you know how to solve the problem?
8 I want to make a complaint about the service.

5 Text A
1 duties 4 responsible
2 enquiries 5 sure
3 solutions

Text B
6 involves 10 responsibility
7 public 11 deal
8 handling 12 complaints
9 clerical

Unit 54
1 1 trade 5 overtime
2 strike 6 takes, off
3 bonus 7 stress
4 working conditions

2 1 Is she a member of a trade union?
2 Are we entitled to sick pay?
3 I’d like to take a week off.
4 Why don’t you like shift work?
5 I left on time today; I didn’t do overtime.
6 Why did the workers go on strike?

3 Answers from a British person
1 Yes, it is very stressful.
2 We get 25 days’ holiday each year.
3 No, we don’t do shift work.
4 Yes, I regularly work overtime.
5 We sometimes get a small bonus if the year has been good financially.
6 Yes, we are entitled to sick pay.
7 Yes, we have a trade union, which we have a right to join.
8 It is very rare for people at my place of work to go on strike.

Unit 55
1 1 e 2 i 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d 8 h
2 1 turnover 5 inflation
2 flow 6 took out, loan
3 rate 7 costs, loss
4 tax profit 8 finance/start/operate

4 1 grew/rose significantly
2 rose gradually
3 fell slightly
4 stable/unchanged
5 risen steadily

5 1 sharply 5 by
2 rise 6 fall/drop
3 peak 7 fluctuated
4 gone 8 stable/unchanged

6 1 rose slightly
2 sharp rise/increase
3 remained stable/unchanged
4 fell slightly
5 fell sharply
Unit 56

1 asset, goods, stock
2 1 up the business 2 of business 3 supplier
3 1 research 2 assets 3 rivals
4 employs 5 optimistic/ambitious, estimates
4 1 takeover 2 reputation 3 break even
5 1 share 2 shares 3 brand

Unit 57

1 1 1993.
2 Because surfing was a seasonal business.
3 b) it had to give protection
   c) it had to retain heat
4 He did some research.
5 He took out a bank loan.
6 It's crucial to have a good relationship.
7 Feedback from his customers.
8 A good partnership with suppliers.
2 1 contract 2 retain 3 crucial
3 innovate 6 diversify 7 partnership
4 feedback 8 potential
3 1 exploit
2 Both answers are correct.
3 potential
4 adapt
5 Both answers are correct.
6 founded
7 investment
8 Both answers are correct.

Unit 58

1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G
2 1 sector
3 demand
4 strengths
5 threat

Unit 59

1 1 almost
2 probably
3 may
4 possible

2 1 She's bound to pass.
2 She'll probably pass. / She's likely to pass. / I expect she'll pass.
3 She may/might pass.
4 I doubt (if/that) she'll pass. / She's unlikely to pass.
5 She'll definitely fail.
3 Answer from a Japanese person
Next week, I'm definitely going to go to a salsa party on Sunday evening. It's a good chance for me to let off steam. However, the good dancers are unlikely to dance with someone like me who isn't very good, although I expect some of them will ask me to dance anyway. Otherwise I will be standing alone in the corner for hours and it will be a disaster! But maybe I'm too pessimistic.
My friend and I might go out for a drink afterwards. There I'm likely to ask her advice about the boy I fancy, even though I doubt she has a good opinion of him.

Unit 60

1 in comparison
2 apart from
3 alike
4 main
5 compared
6 identical
7 greedy
8 difference
3 Answers from a British person
Oxford and Cambridge are alike in many ways. They both have famous universities, and many beautiful old buildings. Another similarity is that it takes about an hour to get to London on the train. However, apart from the universities, there is one main difference. Compared with Cambridge, Oxford is very cosmopolitan.
Unit 61
1 1 meant
2 busy
3 What
4 free (to see you)
5 put it off
6 for example/for instance
7 Are you able to come
8 meet
9 I'm afraid
2 1 Shall we get together for a meeting?
2 I'll tell you definitely tomorrow.
3 I could put the meeting off until Friday.
4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then. or I'm sorry but I'm tied up then.
5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, say?
   B No, what about the station instead?
6 As an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

Unit 62
1 Like very much: mad about, crazy about, adore
   Like: fond of, keen on
   Dislike very much: detest, loathe, can't bear, not like at all
2 1 I'm fond of . . .
   2 I can't stand . . .
   3 I loathe cooking . . .
   4 I'm mad about . . .
   5 I can't bear . . .
   6 I detest . . .
   7 I adore eating . . .
   8 I'm crazy about . . .
   9 Recently, I've got to like . . .
10 I'd rather eat . . . than . . .
3 Answers from a Polish person
   1 chocolate cake
   2 cigarette smoke
   3 liver
   4 reading
   5 people who smoke in my presence
   6 waiting in departure lounges at airports
   7 white chocolate
   8 travelling to new places
   9 mussels
   10 fish, meat

Unit 63
1 1 What do you think of this idea?
   2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.
   3 I agree with it in principle.
   4 It seems to me we have no choice.
   5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.
2 1 It seems to me we should do something.
   2 How do you feel about that?
   3 In my opinion, we should help them.
   4 I'm to blame.
   5 I reckon it'll be a problem.
3 1 Apparently, fault 4 point
   2 concerned 5 principle/theory
   3 issues
4 1 sensible 4 support
   2 consider 5 believe
   3 reduce 6 proposal
5 1 against 5 silly
   2 reduce 6 favour
   3 opposed 7 dependent
   4 believe/think 8 mature

Unit 64
1 1 force to you 4 with
   2 to 5 to
   3 be 6 on
2 1 behaved
   2 allowed
   3 disobedient
3 1 obedient
   2 disobeyed
   3 strict
   4 force
   5 behave
4 Answers from an Italian person
   Yes, they were allowed to wear make-up.
   Yes. I was a quiet and obedient child.
   If you disobeyed the rules, you would have to stand outside the classroom.
   The rules were not that strict.
   The teachers didn't force me to do anything I didn't want to do.
5 I think children probably behaved much better then compared to nowadays.

Unit 65
1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S
2 1 making 6 wrong
   2 intend 7 fact
   3 hoping 8 smoothly
   4 expecting 9 forward
   5 intention
4 1 I doubt it.
   2 I'm afraid not.
   3 I don't think so.
   4 I'm afraid so
   5 I'm afraid not
6 1 hope not

218 ANSWER KEY
Unit 68
1 1 as a result 5 plus
 2 what's more 6 Since
 3 due to 7 Moreover
 4 therefore 8 Furthermore
2 REASON: due to, since
RESULT: therefore, as a result
ADDITION: what's more, plus, moreover, furthermore
3 1 close/shut 5 get in / get into / enter
 2 she couldn't 6 they aren't / they're not
 3 was terrible/bad/dreadful 4 didn't have
 5 get in / get into / enter
6 2 i 3 b 4 c 5 d 6 f 7 a 8 h
5 1 despite 5 bother
 2 that 6 join
 3 However/Nevertheless 7 bothered
 4 though/however 8 mentioned
6 Answers from a German person
1 Yes, I'm fed up with the traffic in the
morning when I drive to work; it's so
busy.
2 Sometimes the small child living above
us can be a bit loud and that gets on my
nerves.
3 I don't tend to Moan a lot; however,
postal strikes are a real inconvenience to
me and others.
4 Shopping in town on a Saturday can be a
real nightmare, as it's so crowded.
5 I'm not particularly bothered about my
level of English at the moment; however, I
do try to improve constantly.

Unit 69
1 Synonyms: curious/strange, fair/reasonable,
essential/vital
Opposites: modern/old-fashioned, polite/
rude, busy/deserted, rural/urban
2 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D
3 1 curious 4 reasonable
 2 rural/remote 5 impressed
 3 suspicious 6 overall
5 1 shocked 4 terrifying
 2 satisfied 5 disgusting
 3 disappointing 6 embarrassed
6 1 amusing 5 disgusting
 2 embarrassing 6 amazed/astonished
 3 shocking 7 alarming
 4 disappointed 8 satisfied
8 1 inadequate 6 common
 2 soft 7 ineffective
 3 inefficient 8 unexpected
 4 spacious 9 permanent

Unit 66
1 1 d 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 e
2 1 dissatisfied, complained
 2 guarantee
 3 point
 4 back
 5 writing
 6 keep/stay, temper
 7 expert
 8 considered
4 mention
5 1 fed 5 bother
 2 bother 6 join
 3 nuisance 7 bothered
 4 spoil/ruined 8 mentioned
6 Answers from a German person
1 Yes, I'm fed up with the traffic in the
morning when I drive to work; it's so
busy.
2 Sometimes the small child living above
us can be a bit loud and that gets on my
nerves.
3 I don't tend to moan a lot; however,
postal strikes are a real inconvenience to
me and others.
4 Shopping in town on a Saturday can be a
real nightmare, as it's so crowded.
5 I'm not particularly bothered about my
level of English at the moment; however, I
do try to improve constantly.

Unit 67
1 1 Do you need any assistance?
 2 Caution. If symptoms continue, seek
medical help. OR Seek medical help if
symptoms continue.
 3 Beware of the dog; it bites.
 4 Warning. Don't cross when the barrier is
down.
 5 In case of fire, leave the building
immediately.
 6 Ring the police in case of emergency. OR
In case of emergency, ring the police.
2 1 swallows 5 warned, danger
 2 Beware, case 6 careful, aircraft
 3 Mind 7 assistance
 4 out 8 premises
### Unit 70

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>over</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>onto</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>over, beside</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>underneath/beneath</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>nowadays</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>lasted</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>occasionally / now and again</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>throughout</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>eventually</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>beyond</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>over 8, the rear 6, beside 4, beneath 1, onto 7, the edge 5, among 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>onto 5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>over back</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>underneath / beneath 8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>nowadays</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>lasted</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>occasionally / now and again</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Meanwhile</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>throughout</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>eventually</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unit 71

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>in general, in private, in public</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>In general</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>cope</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>at least, at first by chance</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>on purpose, on board</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>At the end</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>by</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>by chance</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>at least, at first</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unit 72

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>unkind</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>non-alcoholic</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>illegal</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>irresponsible</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>uncertain</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>non-smoking</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>insecure</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>irregular</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>dishonest</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>irrelevant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unit 73

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>gentleness, kindness, disappearance, extension, reality, preference, judgement</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>react</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>reaction</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>preference</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>cruel</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 76
1 1 They’re highly intelligent boys.
   2 It’s bitterly cold outside.
   3 That man is completely/totally mad.
   4 Paula’s been seriously ill.
   5 Their profits have fallen sharply.
   6 We desperately need to earn more money.
   7 It was totally/completely unnecessary to do that.

2 1 risen 4 travelled
   2 injured 5 feel
   3 sorry, forgot 6 convinced/sure

3 1 vitally 4 completely/totally
   2 highly 5 bitterly
   3 desperately 6 terribly

4 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

5 1 On the whole 5 rather
   2 mainly mostly 6 actually
   3 approximately about 7 rarely
   4 largely mostly 8 fairly

Unit 74
1 d 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b
2 1 enable 3 imagine 5 reminds
   2 intend 4 warned 6 mind

3 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 d

4 Answers from a Spanish person
   1 I managed to cycle up a steep hill last week.
   2 I intended to call my sister yesterday but I forgot.
   3 I regret missing a chance to buy a house a couple of years ago.
   4 I refused to go on a business trip recently.
   5 My dad persuaded me to buy a car last year.
   6 My mum warned me not to spend too much on my credit card.
   7 I’m pleased to say no one has blamed me for anything recently.
   8 My mum reminded me to call my sister today!

Unit 75
1 1 R 2 R 3 W 4 W 5 R 6 W 7 R

2 1 takes after 4 runs out
   2 made it up 5 switched on
   3 get on with 6 give away

3 1 up 3 on 5 on, with
   2 out 4 over 6 out of

5 1 leave out 4 go over
   2 get through 5 getting on
   3 work out 6 go on, carry on

6 1 out 4 on 7 back
   2 through, on 5 off 8 up, down
   3 back 6 on

Unit 77
1 1 I 2 F 3 I 4 F 5 N 6 I 7 N

2 1 fetch 4 purchase
   2 commence 5 out of the blue
   3 stuff 6 keep an eye on

3 1 of 3 stuff 5 turned
   2 vague 4 idiom 6 sort, neutral

4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

5 1 Yeah
   2 Hang on, / Hold on.
   3 What’s up?
   4 I haven’t a clue.
   5 How are things? / How’s it going?
   6 What’ve you been up to?

6 1 care 4 up, hang/hold
   2 going 5 to
   3 give/lend, problem

8 1 g 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d

9 1 joking
   2 disaster
   3 tent
   4 loads, lots, masses, nonsense, rubbish

5 better 7 picking

6 for 8 like
### Unit 78

1. No.
2. As a deposit for the cottage.
3. Arriving.
4. Yes, she wants to know whether there is parking nearby.
5. Her own address.
6. Mr Ellison's address.
7. Yes, she wrote the date underneath her address.
8. Dear Mr Ellison
9. Yours sincerely
10. No, because it's a formal letter.

2. I look forward to hearing from you.
3. If there's a problem, please don't hesitate to ring me.
4. I enclose a photocopy of my identity card with the application form.
5. I would be grateful if you could phone me about the meeting.
6. Further to your letter of 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.
7. I would appreciate it if you could help me.
8. A cheque for €30 as a deposit for the rental of the room.

### Unit 79

1. m
2. kg
3. cm
4. ml
5. t
6. mph
7. whether
8. nearby / close by
9. deposit
10. commence
11. grateful
12. appreciate

### Unit 80

1. sidewalk
2. cellphone
3. datebook
4. drugstore
5. garbage
6. subway
7. closet
8. candy
9. can
10. fries
11. holiday vacation
12. lift elevator
13. rubbish garbage/trash
14. handbag purse
15. diary datebook
16. sweets candy
17. lorry truck
18. biscuit cookie
19. tap faucet
20. pavement sidewalk

### Answers from a Japanese person

1. I don't often use the subway. I use it a few times a month.
2. I use the railroad twice a day, every day, to commute to work.
3. I go to a movie theater about twice a month.
4. The last movie I saw was No Reservations.
5. I sometimes eat French fries when I go for a beer with friends.
6. I went to Seoul on my last vacation.
7. The last time I went to a mall was about two months ago.
8. I left high school eighteen years ago.
Learning

Unit 1
1. a translation (of this), please?
2. (some) revision for an exam
3. I repeat
4. his explanation (of it)
5. a guess
6. a record of new words in a book
7. a chat (about it)
8. the pronunciation of that word
2. 1 recognize 7 translation
   2 gist 8 pronounce
   3 go through 9 make
   4 make a note of 10 pronunciation
   5 guess 11 experiment
   6 context 12 foreign

Unit 2
1. complex/complicated
2. expand, aim
3. fluently
4. detail
5. range
6. contain
7. specialized
8. appropriate
2. 1 frustrating 6 getting
   2 motivated 7 aware
   3 while 8 express
   4 progress 9 accurate
   5 encouraging

Unit 3
1. definitions
2. entry
3. select
4. instance
5. symbols
6. stressed
7. stress
8. syllable
9. idiom
10. expression
11. style
12. offend

Unit 4
1. a colon
2. a full stop
3. a semicolon
4. quotation marks
2. 1 separates
   2 details, list
3. interrupts
4. instead, connected

People

Unit 5
1. expecting
2. contact
3. neat
4. tell
2. 1 shoulders
   2 bald, losing
   3 scar
5. figure
6. tanned
7. wrinkles
8. shape
4. appearance, shape
5. shaven
6. plump

Unit 6
1. generous, generosity, mean
   honest, honesty, dishonest
   tolerant, tolerance, intolerant
   patient, patience, impatient
   arrogant, arrogance, modest
   hard-working, lazy
2. 1 crazy
   2 boring/dull
   3 lazy
4. aggressive
5. sense of humour
6. cheerful

Unit 7
1. OPP insensitive
2. SYN fed up
3. SYN astonished
2. 1 He was furious with me, and I was
   thrilled. terrified / scared stiff
   or He was furious delighted with me, and I
   was thrilled.
2. She was so proud when her son did well,
   and really jealous. thrilled/delighted
3. I was anxious before the flight, and scared
   stiff by the time we took off. (logical)
4. I don’t know what upset her, but she was
   thrilled. miserable / fed up
5. She can be very insensitive and often
   hurts people’s feelings. (logical)
6. I can’t talk to her because she’s insensitive
   and very supportive. moody

Unit 8
1. Petros and I have nothing ^ common. in
2. How did you get ^ know her? to
3. I like Imran; we get ^ very well. on
4. Don’t forget to keep ^ touch. in
5. You can’t rely ^ her brother. on
6. I don’t think they’re ^ a relationship at the
   moment. in
The world around us

Unit 11
1 reach
2 approximately
3 earth
4 planet
5 system
6 exists
7 scientists
8 discovered
9 invented
10 space
11 satellites
12 circle
13 universe
14 roughly

Unit 12
1 wave
2 puddle
3 float
4 narrow
5 surface
6 protection
7 protection
8 sank/capsized
9 horizon
10 steep

Unit 13
1 pouring
2 effects
3 mild
4 harm
5 melts
6 rise
7 predict
8 breeze
9 extreme, affect
10 spread
11 gradually
12 disappear

Unit 14
1 volcanic eruption
2 hurricane
3 tidal wave
4 drought
5 earthquake
6 tidal wave
7 volcanic eruption
8 drought
9 hurricane

Unit 15
1 Wild animals: lion, gorilla, leopard
2 Farm animals: calf, donkey, goat
3 Insects: fly, bee, mosquito
4 Sea creatures: whale, shark
2 Some snakes are poisonous.  
Leopards have spots.  
Elephants have a trunk.  
Eagles have a beak.  
Bears have fur.  
Bees can sting.  
Goats have horns.

3 Across  Down
2  wings  1  mice
5  bone  3  snake
6  vary  4  poison
8  camel  7  harmless
9  sting  9  shark
10  monkey
11  calf
12  weight
13  spider

Daily life

Unit 16
1 Herbs: parsley, thyme, mint
Fruit: fig, pomegranate, raspberry, apricot
Vegetables: beetroot, sweetcorn, broccoli, leeks
Fish: cod, salmon, carp, sea bass
Seafood: oysters, clams, mussels, crab
Meat: veal, rabbit, liver, kidney

Unit 17
1  1  not  6  oil or fat
2  2  less  7  without
3  3  good  8  cut
4  4  bad  9  weight
5  5  fatter  10  cooking

Unit 18
1  1  receipt  7  broke
2  2  well off  8  bargain
3  3  the sales  9  debt
4  4  waste  10  reduction
5  5  change  11  amount
6  6  can’t afford  12  huge
The phrase in the grey squares is ‘cost a fortune’.

Unit 19
1  1  fall  6  sleepy/exhausted/tired
2  2  go/get  7  habits
3  3  lack  8  nap
4  4  irritable  9  night
5  5  concentrate  10  mind

Unit 20
1 bleed  
dizzy  
prevent  
symptom  
infection  
injury  
develop  
thoroughly

Unit 21
1  1  f  2  a  3  h  4  d  5  c  6  e  7  b

Unit 22
1 Correct answers
1 cancelled, held up
2 the outskirts, the way
3 a vehicle, an ambulance
4 a coach, a van
5 broke down, crashed
6 injured, delayed
7 a valid ticket, a day return
8 gets in, is due

2  1  hire  5  skid
2  2  pick  6  stop
3  3  turn  7  end
4  4  get

Unit 23
1  1  style  5  button
2  2  bracelet  6  suede
3  3  dress  7  underwear
4  4  vest
5  5  versatile
2  2  matches
3  3  suits
4  4  outfit
5  5  jewellery
6  6  materials/fabrics

Getting things done

Unit 24
1 Is it painful when you bite?
2 I will probably have to take the tooth out.
3 This is the tooth which is causing the pain.
4 When did you last have a check-up?
5 Can you come back to the surgery tomorrow?
6 Just ask the receptionist to make an appointment for you.
7 There’s a hole in this tooth – you need a filling.
8 I’m going to examine your teeth and then decide what you need.
Unit 25
1 treat
2 concerned
3 surgeon
4 straightaway
5 benefit
6 take care of / care for someone
7 get over something / recover from something
8 patient
9 ward
10 risk

Unit 26
1 stain, remove
2 out of, fix/repair/mend
3 leaking
4 mend/repair
5 working, bulbs
6 wrong with, fix/repair/mend
2 1 hammer 5 rope
2 drill 6 string/wire
3 screwdriver 7 glue
4 scissors 8 Sellotape/glue/string

Unit 27
1 broom 4 throw
2 bucket 5 dust/polish
3 vacuum cleaner 6 wipe

Unit 28
1 I had my hair cut last week.
2 I just want a trim, please.
3 I'd like a cut and blow-dry, please.
4 Are you letting your hair grow?
5 Can you pass me the scissors?
6 She's got a parting on the left.
7 I'm having my hair coloured tomorrow.
8 Can I borrow your hairdryer?

Unit 29
1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F
2 1 filthy 5 handy
2 lively 6 graffiti
3 pity 7 begging
4 space 8 disadvantage

Unit 30
1 Possible answers
It's a semi-detached house.
There's a chimney on the roof.
The cellar is used for storage.
There's a lawn in the garden.
The drive leads to the front door.

Unit 31
1 a wooden fence
2 a rubber tyre
3 a wax candle
4 a gold medal
5 a woollen blanket
6 a cardboard box
7 iron railings
8 a concrete bridge
2 1 round 4 square
2 four 5 parallel
3 horizontal 6 straight

Unit 32
1 h 2 f 3 a 4 d 5 g 6 b 7 i 8 e

Unit 33
1 artist
2 scene
3 foreground
4 just
5 distance
6 shade
7 hand
8 ignoring

Unit 34
1 smash
2 tear
3 fold
4 sprayed
5 crying
6 burst
7 sighed
8 shake
9 dragging

Social and political issues

Unit 35
1 criminal
2 murderer
3 mugger
4 burglar/thief
2 1 stabbed 5 killed
2 obey 6 violence
3 commit 7 serious
4 the museum, stole 8 attacked

Unit 36
1 c 1 h 2 g 3 e 4 b 5 d 6 f 7 a 8 i
2 1 place 5 fine, sentence
2 prove 6 may/might
3 accused 7 evidence
4 witness 8 arrest

Unit 37
1 obesity
2 allergy
3 stroke
4 asthma
5 heart attack
6 cancer
7 arthritis
8 diabetes
2 1 She has suffered from asthma for years.
2 He had a heart attack and died last week.
3 My grandfather is going deaf so I have to shout to him.
4 It's an infectious disease so he can't mix with other people.
5 The doctor told me to breathe in deeply through my nose.
6 She is allergic to some medicines.
7 Obesity can lead to heart disease.
8 He suffers from memory loss and can't remember where he puts things.

**Unit 38**

| 1 | 1 | g | 2 | e | 3 | i | 4 | b | 5 | k | 6 | a | 7 | c | 8 | h | 9 | f | 10 | d |
| 2 | 1 | objective | 5 | politician |
| 2 | oppose | 6 | power |
| 3 | priority | 7 | consist |
| 4 | parliament |

**Unit 39**

1 1 Yes    5 Yes
2 No       6 No
3 Yes      7 Yes
4 Yes      8 No

**Unit 40**

1 assassination, released
2 president, attempted, assassinate
3 Revolution
4 established
5 discovered
6 Princess
7 republic
8 gained

**Media and entertainment**

**Unit 41**

1 1 threats 4 current
2 declined 5 protesting
3 scares 6 daily

2 1 I enjoy all sorts of cultural events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
2 I think he must receive a pension because he's nearly 70.
3 I saw a strange newspaper headline the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the editor for three years.
5 The government claims that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.

| 1 | 1 | editing | 5 | incredible |
| 2 | movie | 6 | plot |
| 3 | role | 7 | disappointing |
| 4 | winner | 8 | swearing |

**Unit 42**

6 My cousin's a newspaper journalist; he writes articles about current affairs.

**Unit 43**

1 1 automatic    5 realistic
2 abstract       6 landscape
3 studio         7 sort
4 out of         8 skilled

**Unit 44**

1 1 conductor P    7 trumpet
2 lead singer P    8 melody
3 keyboard player P 9 flautist P
4 composer P       10 guitarist P
5 flute            11 saxophone
6 band P           12 solo artist P

**Unit 45**

1 1 ground, stadium 4 track, circuit
2 court, umpire     5 club, referee
3 coach, manager    6 deep, standard

2 1 constructing    5 interrupted
2 capacity          6 crowd
3 supported         7 championship
4 lap               8 length, width

**Unit 46**

1 1 Yes 5 No
2 Yes 6 No
3 No 7 No
4 Yes 8 No
Unit 48
1 1 Everyone parades through the main streets in the town.
2 The people in the neighbourhood where I live are very friendly.
3 It's a two-day festival, which we have every year.
4 It was quite a wild party; we had great fun.
5 Do you ever take part / participate in parades?
6 I enjoy the carnival; it means a lot to me.
7 She wore a really striking dress with gold flowers on it.
8 We all had to throw a ball and try to hit the moving object.

Unit 52
1 carpenter/plumber
2 nanny
3 civil servant / estate agent
4 electrician/mechanic
5 sales rep / travel agent
6 plumber/carpenter

Unit 53
1 involved
2 challenging
3 promoted
4 dealing
5 transferred
6 complaints

Unit 54
1 stressful
2 right
3 trade union
4 entitled

Unit 55
1 finance, loss, tax, revenue, interest, cash flow, profit, loan, turnover, bank, capital
2 rose slightly
3 fell/dropped sharply
4 remained unchanged/stable
5 fluctuated
6 slight increase/growth

Unit 56
1 even
2 growth
3 risks
4 rivals
Unit 57
1 e 2 h 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 c 8 f
2 1 Innovation 5 contract
2 crucial 6 potential
3 research 7 feedback
4 invest 8 diversify

Unit 58
1 danger/threat
advice/tip
ability/skill
plan/strategy
aim/objective
reply/response
data/information
need/demand
2 1 strengths, weaknesses 5 objectives
2 opportunities 6 ignore
3 gather/get, data 7 forecasts
4 assume 8 evaluate

Social English

Unit 59
1 1 definitely go 4 he'll go
2 doubt (if/that) 5 likely
3 to be a disaster 6 pessimistic

Unit 60
1 except 5 completely
2 exactly 6 apart
3 alike 7 main
4 compared 8 comparison

Unit 61
1 1 make 5 to
2 afraid 6 tied
3 How/What 7 postpone / put off
4 available/free 8 confirm

Unit 62
1 1 keen 5 all
2 fond 6 bear/stand
3 mad 7 keen
4 adore/love 8 loathe/detest
2 Answers from a British person
1 I enjoy physical exercise, especially long walks.
2 I'm fond of the people I work with.
3 I'm no good at dancing, so I don't enjoy it very much.
4 Yes, I absolutely adore chocolate!
5 In fact I do like shellfish, though I'm allergic to mussels.
6 I agree. I can't stand waiting in queues.

Unit 63
1 1 not in favour of, against
2 is to blame, is his fault
3 in my opinion, as far as I'm concerned
4 in principle, in theory
5 is opposed to, is against
6 I believe, I reckon
2 1 in favour 5 consider
2 fault 6 in principle
3 sensible 7 support
4 of

Unit 64
1 1 He disobeys me.
2 They force us to work hard.
3 You aren't allowed to eat here. Or Eating here isn't allowed.
4 It's compulsory to wear a uniform. Or Wearing a uniform is compulsory.
5 She let us sit down.
6 The boss insists that we go.
7 His behaviour in class is terrible.
8 He punishes us if we're late.

Unit 65
1 1 fact 7 afraid
2 expecting 8 actually/apparently
3 definitely 9 smoothly
4 intending 10 going
5 hope 11 guess
6 intention

Unit 66
1 1 U 2 U 3 H 4 U 5 H 6 U 7 H
8 U 9 U
2 1 There's no point in going out.
2 You should speak to her in person.
3 I would ask an expert for advice.
4 Have you ever considered going to live abroad?
5 She joined the tennis club.
6 Waiting in queues gets on my nerves.
7 I'm not bothered about the cost of the meal.
8 Did she mention anything to you about the divorce? Or Did she mention the divorce to you?

Unit 67
1 1 mind 4 case
2 out 5 assistance/help
3 beware 6 careful
Language

Unit 68

1 1 because 5 though
2 all the same 6 however
3 still 7 so
4 furthermore 8 whereas

2 Text 1
1 result 3 provided
2 more

Text 2
4 due 6 as/since
5 addition 7 However/
   Nevertheless

Unit 69

1 1 rare, common
2 adequate, inadequate
3 old-fashioned, modern/contemporary
4 urban, rural
5 crowded, deserted
6 artificial, real
7 rude, polite
8 satisfied, dissatisfied
9 firm, soft
10 effective, ineffective

Unit 70

1 1 underneath
2 nowadays / these days
3 throughout
4 eventually
5 onto
6 occasionally
7 towards
8 Meanwhile / In the meantime

Unit 71

1 IN: in general, in favour of, in public, in a rush
ON: insist on, rely on, on purpose, depend on, on board
OF: get rid of, capable of, take care of, approve of

Unit 72

1 1 non-acceptable unacceptable
2 irrelevant irrelevant
3 dissecure insecure
4 an alcoholic a non-alcoholic
5 disfasten unfasten
6 dishonest dishonest
7 impatient impatient

Unit 73

2 1 judgement 5 preference
2 definition 6 cruelty
3 reaction 7 extension
4 powerful 8 harmless

Unit 74

1 1 I don’t recall meeting your parents.
2 He refused to leave.
3 Carrie admitted stealing the necklace.
4 Mario accused me of taking all the food.
5 She regrets moving to London.
6 Boris reminds me of your brother.
7 He blamed me for the mistake.
8 I tend to work in the evening.
9 Cal pretended to be a doctor.
10 She persuaded me to leave.

Unit 75

1 1 I take after my mother.
2 why don’t you give it away?
3 I don’t get on very well with my boss.
4 just leave it out
5 put his coat on / put on his coat
6 I can’t work out
7 switch the TV on
8 go over it

Unit 76

1 1 sharply 5 rarely
2 strongly 6 widely
3 roughly 7 seriously
4 rather 8 totally
## Styles of English

### Unit 77
1. are things / 's it going?
2. up to
3. much
4. up
5. turned her down
6. You're joking! / You must be joking!
7. reckons
8. rubbish
9. loads/masses
10. Yeah
11. I'd better be off
12. Cheers!
2. fancy
3. reckon
4. hurry up
5. Tell me a joke
6. hang on
7. keep an eye on someone

### Unit 78
1. Sir or Madam
2. regards
3. Yours
4. further
5. enclose
6. whether
7. in particular
8. hearing
9. don't hesitate
10. All the best

### Unit 79
1. identity card
2. United Nations
3. personal identification number
4. value added tax
5. curriculum vitae
6. internet service provider
7. information technology
2. Yes, fridge
3. Yes, vet
4. No
5. Yes, ad/advert
2. Yes, flu
3. No
4. Yes, gym
5. Yes, lab

### Unit 80
1. tap faucet
2. chemist drugstore
3. biscuit cookie
4. lift elevator
5. petrol gasoline
6. wardrobe closet
7. diary datebook
8. rubbish garbage
9. pavement sidewalk
10. lorry truck
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>formal</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>conversation, chat, discussion, argument</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B</td>
<td>contain and include</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>stress and emphasize</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5B</td>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>crazy, mad, stupid</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7A</td>
<td>absolutely and very</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B</td>
<td>sensitive</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8A</td>
<td>friend</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8B</td>
<td>have a row / an argument</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10A</td>
<td>wedding and marriage; bride and groom</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11B</td>
<td>discover or invent</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12A</td>
<td>cause v, n</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13B</td>
<td>effect, v, affect v</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15C</td>
<td>cows and cattle</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17A</td>
<td>diet</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21B</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22B</td>
<td>way</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23A</td>
<td>jewellery and material</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>dread, look forward to</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>enough</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26A</td>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26B</td>
<td>repair, fix, or mend sth</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>have/get sth done</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29B</td>
<td>area, region, district, part</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>passage, corridor, hall</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31A</td>
<td>Noun + noun</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31B</td>
<td>shape, -shaped</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32A</td>
<td>can + sense verbs</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32B</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>painting and drawing</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34B</td>
<td>loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35A</td>
<td>crime</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35B</td>
<td>steal and rob</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37B</td>
<td>go + adjective</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38B</td>
<td>oppose, opposition</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41B</td>
<td>Verbs and nouns with the same form</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42B</td>
<td>indeed</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43B</td>
<td>photography, photograph, etc.</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>44A</td>
<td>The suffix -ist</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44B</td>
<td>living, alive, live</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45A</td>
<td>Suffix -er and player</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45B</td>
<td>long, wide, deep</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46A</td>
<td>record</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46B</td>
<td>defeat</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47B</td>
<td>Compound adjectives with well</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48A</td>
<td>festival, carnival, parade</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50B</td>
<td>in time, on time</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Formal language</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52A</td>
<td>career, job, profession</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52A</td>
<td>dismiss, sack, fire</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>time off</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55A</td>
<td>finance</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56A</td>
<td>Prefixes over- and under-</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56B</td>
<td>market</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Verbs of change</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58A</td>
<td>skill</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>compare v, comparison n</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>be supposed to, be meant to + verb</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Verb + -ing</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63A</td>
<td>Giving opinions</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65A</td>
<td>actually</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66A</td>
<td>point</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66B</td>
<td>bother</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68A</td>
<td>in addition, moreover, furthermore</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68B</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68C</td>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69B</td>
<td>-ed/-ing endings</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70A</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71A</td>
<td>in the end and at the end</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71B</td>
<td>depend on sb/sth</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72A</td>
<td>Prefixes</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73B</td>
<td>Adjectives ending in -ful and -less</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75A</td>
<td>Separable phrasal verbs</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75B</td>
<td>Different meanings</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76B</td>
<td>rather, fairly, quite, pretty</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77A</td>
<td>stuff</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77B</td>
<td>cheers</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77C</td>
<td>joke</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>further, further to</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>highway, freeway, expressway</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
afford /ə'fɔrd/ 18
after a while /ə'fɛrə 'weil/ 2
against /ə'genst/ 63
against the law /ə'genst də 'lɔː/ 35
agreement /ə'greind/ 6
aggressiveness /ə'gresivnəs/ 6
ahead /ə'hed/ 57
aid /eid/ 41
AIDS /eaɪdz/ 79
air /eər/ 2, 38, 58
aircraft /ə'крафɪt/ 67
alarm /ə'lɑːrm/ 19
alarmed /ə'lɑːmd/ 69
alarmin /ə'lɑːrmɪŋ/ 69
album (= music collection) /'ælbəm/ 44
album as in photo album /'ælbəm/ 43
alcoholic /ə'lɑːkholɪk/ 72
alike /ə'laɪk/ 60
alive /ə'lɑɪv/ 44
all over /'ɔːl 'əʊvə(r)/ 70
all over the world /ɔːl əʊvə də 'wɜːld/ 45
all the best /ɔːl ə 'best/ 78
all the same /ɔːl ə 'sem/ 68
allergic /ə'lɜːdʒɪk/ 37
allergy /ə'lerdʒi/ 37
allowed /ə'laʊd/ 64
allow /ə'ləʊ/ 64
ally /ə'leɪ/ 39
aloud /ə'ləʊd/ 34
alphabet /æl'fəbet/ 47
alphabetical /æl'fəbetɪkəl/ 47
already /ə'leɪdʒ/ 70
alter /ə'leɪt/ 57
alternative /ə'laɪtənətɪv/ 4
although /ə'laʊð/ 68
amateur /ə'mætə(r)/ 46
amateur photographer /ə'mætər fə'tʃəprəɡə(r)/ 43
amazed /ə'meizd/ 7, 69
amazing /ə'meizin/ 69
ambition /əm'bɪʃn/ 6
ambitious /əm'bɪʃəs/ 6
ambulance /əmbjʊləns/ 22
among /ə'mɔːŋ/ 70
amongst /ə'mɔːnst/ 70
amount /ə'maʊnt/ 18
amused /ə'mjuːzd/ 69
amusing /ə'mjuːzin/ 69
analyse /ə'næləs/ 11
analysis /ə'nælɪsɪs/ 11
ancestor /ɑnˈsestə(r)/ 9
anniversary /ænˈvɛriəsərɪ/ 10
announce /ənˈnəʊns/ 38
announcement /ə'nəʊnmənt/ 38
annual /ə'nuːəl/ 55
antisocial /æn'tsəʊʃəl/ 8
anxious /ænˈkʃəs/ 7
apart /ə'pɑːrt/ 60
apartment /ə'pɑːrtmənt/ 80
apostrophe /ə'pɒstrəf/ 4
appalling /ə'pɔlɪŋ/ 66
apparently /ə'pærəntli/ 63
appeal /ə'piːl/ 44
appear /ə'pɪər/ 32
appearance /ə'pərəns/ 5
appliance /ə'plɪŋkəns/ 51
apply /ə'plaɪ/ 51
appoint /ə'pɔɪnt/ 53
appointment /ə'pɔɪntmənt/ 24
appreciate as in... /ə'priːʃiート/ 78
approach /ə'prəʊ/ 48
appropriate /ə'prəʊprət/ 2
approve /ə'prɔv/ 71
approximately /ə'prəʊksmətli/ 11, 76
apricot /ə'prɪkət/ 16
area /'eərɪə/ 29
argue /ər'gjuː/ 8
argument /ə'gɜːmənt/ 1, 8
army /ɑrmɪ/ 39
arrangements /ə'renʤmənts/ 52
arrest /ə'rest/ 36
arrogance /əˈrɒɡəns/ 6
arrogant /əˈrɒɡənt/ 6
arthritic /ɑrˈθrɪtɪk/ 37
arthrosis /ɑrˈθrəsɪs/ 37
artichoke /ɑrˈtiːkəʊk/ 16
artificial /ɑrˈtɪfɪʃl/ 69
artist /ɑrˈtɪst/ 33
as /æz, əz/ 68
brand /brænd/  56
break down /briːk ˈdaʊn/  22
break even /briːk ˈɪvən/  56
break into /briːk ˈɪntoʊ/  35
break out /briːk ˈaʊt/  39
break the law /ˈbrek ə ˈlaʊ/  35
break a record /ˈbrek ə ˈrekɔːrd/  46
breath /briːθ/  34
breathe /ˈbreθ/  34, 37
breeze /ˈbriːz/  13
breezy /ˈbriːzi/  13
brick /brik/  30
bride /ˈbrɪd/  10
bridesmaid /ˈbrɪdzmɪd/  10
bridge /ˈbrɪdʒ/  31
bright /brɪt/  33
brightness /ˈbrɪtnəs/  33
brilliant /ˈbrɪljənt/  46
bring sb up /ˈbrɪŋ əp/  9
broad shoulders /ˈbroːd ˈbrɔʊldəz/  5
broccoli /ˈbrɒkəli/  16
broken /broʊkən/  18
broom /bruːm/  27
browse /ˈbriːz/  47
bruised /ˈbruːzd/  20
bucket /ˈbʌkɪt/  27
build /bɪld/  3
built-in flash /ˈbʌlt ɪn ˈflæʃ/  43
built-up /ˈbʌlt əp/  29
bulb as in light bulb /ˈbʌlb/  26
bull /bʊl/  15
burglar /ˈbaːɡlər/  35
burglary /ˈbaːɡləri/  35
burial /ˈbɪriəl/  10
burn /bərn/  20
burst /ˈbɜːst/  12
burst into tears /ˈbɜːst ɪntoʊ ˈteəz/  34
burst out laughing /ˈbɜːst aʊt ˈlaːfɪŋ/  34
bury /ˈbɜːri/  10
business trip /ˈbaɪznəs ˈtrɪp/  22
busy /ˈbɪz/  69
button /ˈbʌtn/  23
by /ˈbaɪ/  70
by chance /ˈbaɪ ˈʧɑːns/  71
c (cent(s)) /ˈsɛnt(s)/  79
c (centilsire(s)) /ˈsɛntɪlɪsr(ə)s/  79
cm (centimetre(s)) /ˈsɛntɪmɪtər(ə)s/  79
cnt (cent(s)) /ˈsɛnt(s)/  79
CV (curriculum vitae) /ˈsɪk ˈvɪti/  79
cabinet /ˈkeɪbən/  34
calf /ˈkɑːf/  15, 16
calf’s liver /ˈkɑːfz ˈlɪvr(ə)r/  16
calm /ˈkælm/  66
camel /ˈkæməl/  15
campaign /ˈkæmən/  38
can /kæn/  32
can as in trash can /kæn  80
can you make it? /kæn juː ˈmeɪk ɪt/  61
canal /ˈkɑːnəl/  12
cancel /kənˈsɛl/  22
cancer /ˈkænəs(ə)r/  37
candidatate /ˈkændidət, -dət/  49, 51
chandelier /ˈkændəliər/  31
candlestick /ˈkændəlstɪk/  31
candy /ˈkændi/  80
can’t bear /kænt ˈbɛə(r)/  62
can’t stand /kænt ˈstænd/  62
cap /kæp/  23
capable /ˈkeɪpəbl/  71
capacity /ˈkeɪpəsɪti/  45
capital /ˈkæpɪtəl/  55
capital letter /ˈkeɪpɪtl ˈlɛtə(r)/  4
capsize /ˈkæpsəz/  12
capture /ˈkæptər/  45
care about /ˈkɛər əˈbɔːt/  71
care for /ˈkɑːf ˈfoː(r), ˈfə(r)/  25,
  52
career /ˈkærə(r)/  52
careful /ˈkɛrfəl/  67, 73
carefully /ˈkɛrflɪ/  49
careless /ˈkɛrəls/  73
cargo ship /ˈkɑːɡoʊ ʃɪp/  12
carnival /ˈkɑːnɪvəl/  48
carp /kærp/  16
carpenter /ˈkɑːpəntər(r)/  52
carry on /ˈkɛri ˈɒn/  75
carry out /ˈkɛri ˈaʊt/  11
case /keɪs/  57
case as in case /ˈkeɪz/ 67, 68
cash flow /ˈkæʃ ˈfləʊ/  55
cash flow problem /ˈkæʃ ˈfləʊ ˈprəʊbləm/  55
catalogue /ˈkætəlɔɡ/  47
catch (= find and hold) /ˈkætʃ/  36
catch (= hear/understand) /ˈkætʃ/  32
cattle /ˈkeɪtl/  15
cause v /ˈkɔːz/  12, 24
cautions /ˈkəʊʃənz/  12, 24
cave /keɪv/  12
casefire /ˈsɛsfər(ə)r/  39
celebrate /səˈliːbreɪt/  10
celery /ˈsɛlərɪ/  16
cellar /ˈsɛlər(ə)r/  30
cellist /ˈsɛlst/  44
cello /ˈsɛləʊ/  44
cellphone /ˈsɛlfaʊn/  80
cemetery /ˈsɛmətri/  10
cent /ˈsent/  79
centilitre /ˈsentɪlɪtraɪ(r)/  79
centimetre /ˈsentɪmɪtər(ə)r/  79
centre /ˈsɛntər(r)/  33
ceremony /ˈsɜːrəməni/  10
challenge n /ˈʃɛləndʒ/  53
challenging /ˈʃɛləndʒɪŋ/  53
championship /ˈʃɪmpliʃnp/  45
change (= opportunity) /ˈʃeɪn/  1. 50
change (= possibility) /ˈʃeɪn/  59
change /ˈʃeɪn/  18
chapter /ˈʃeɪptə(r)/  47
charge as in charge /ˈʃaːr/  53, 71
charge v /ˈʃaːr/  36
chat /ʃeɪt/  1
cheat v. n /ʃiːt/  49
check-up /ˈʃek əp/  24
cheerful /ˈʃiəfl/  6
cheers /ʃiəz/  77
chew /ʃuː/  24
chickpeas /ˈʃɪkJiːz/  16
chilly /ˈʃili/  13
chimney /ˈʃɪmni/  30
choice /ʃɔːs/  10, 64
choose /ʃuːz/  3, 10
chop /ʃɔp/  17
circle v /ˈsɜːkl/  31
circle v /ˈsɜːkl/  11
circuit /ˈsɜːkrɪt/  45
circular /ˈsɜːklə(r)/  31
city as in inner city /ˈsɪtɪ/  29
civil ceremony /ˈsɪvl ˈsɜːrəməni/  10
civil servant /ˈsɪv(ə)l ˈsɜːvənt/  52
civil service /ˈsɪv(ə)l ˈsɜːv(ə)sv/  52
civil war /ˈsɪv(ə)l ˈwɔː(r)/  39
claim n /klɛm/  41, 66
claim v /klɛm/  41
clam /ˈklæm/  16
clash v /klɛʃ/  41
clean-shaven /ˈkliːn ˈʃeɪvən/  5
fall /fəl/ 13, 55
fall asleep /fəl ə'slip/ 19
fall out with /fəl ə'ot wid/ 8
famine /'fæmɪn/ 13
fan /fæn/ 42, 45
fancy (= find sb attractive) /'fænzi/ 59
fancy (= want sth) /'fænsi/ 77
far-fetched /fər'teftʃ/ 11
fascinating /'fæsimetɪŋ/ 47
fashionable /'fæʃənəbl/ 23, 73
fast asleep /fæst ə'slip/ 19
fasten /'fæsn/ 72
fattening /'fætnɪŋ/ 17
fattish /fætʃ/ 5
faucet /'fɔsɛt/ 80
fault /fɔlt/ 63
faulty /fɔlti/ 26
favour as in in favour of /'fəvə(r) 63
favourite /'fəvərət/ 46
fear n.v /fo(r)/ 14
feathers /'feðəz/ 15
feature /'fi:tʃə/ 30
fed up /'fed əp/ 7
feedback /'feɪdbæk/ 51, 57
fecl /'fiːl/ 32
feel like (doing sth) /fɪli 77
feelings as in mixed feelings /'fiːlɪŋz/ 69
fees /fiːz/ 50
female /'fɛməl/ 5, 15
fence /'fens/ 31
fencing /'fensɪŋ/ 46
fennel /'fɛnɛl/ 16
festival /'festɪvl/ 48
fetch /fetʃ/ 77
fiction /'fɪkʃən/ 47
fig /fiːg/ 16
flight n.v /fliːt/ 39
fighter /'fɪtʃə(r)/ 39
figure /'fɪɡə(r)/ 5, 23
filling /'fɪlɪŋ/ 24
film (for camera) /'fɪlm/ 43
film (at cinema) /'fɪlm/ 80
filthy /'fɪtlɪ/ 29
final /'fɪnl/ 46
finance n /'fæməns/ 52, 55
finance v /'fæmən/ 55
financial /'fɪnə'njʊl/ 55
find a solution /'fændə sə'luːʃɔn/ 53
fine n.v /'fɛn/ 36
fingerprints /'fɪŋəprɪntz/ 36
fire n /'fəz(r)/ 67
fire v /'fəz(r)/ 53
fireworks /'fərwaɪks/ 48
firm /'fɜrm/ 69
first as in at first /'fɜːst/ 71
fix /fɪks/ 26
lizzy drink /'lɪzi ˈdrɪŋk/ 17
flag /flæɡ/ 45
flash /flæʃ/ 43
flautist /'flɔtɪst/ 44
flavour /'flævə(r)/ 32
flexibility /'fleksəˈbɪləti/ 50
flexible /'fleksəbl/ 50
float /fləʊt/ 12
flood /fləʊd/ 12
flour /fləʊə(r)/ 17
flow /fləʊ/ 12
flu /flju/ 79
fluctuate /'flʌktʃjuːɪt/ 55
fluctuation /'flʌktʃuəʃən/ 55
fluent /'fljuənt/ 2
fluently /'fljuəntli/ 2
flute /flʌt/ 44
fly /flai/ 15
focus n, v (= attention/attend) /'fɔʊks/ 38
focus n, v (in photography) /'fɔʊks/ 43
fold as in fold in half/two /'fɔld/ 34
follow instructions /'fəʊlau məˈstrækʃənz/ 49
fond /'fɒnd/ 62
food scare /'fʊd ˈskɛə(r)/ 41
footballer /'fʊtbɔːlə(r)/ 45
for example /fər ɪˈzɑːmpl/ 3
for instance /fər ɪnˈstəns/ 3
for sure /fɔrˈzʊə(r)/ 61
forbid /fɔrˈbɪd/ 64
force /fɔːs/ 64
forecast n, v /fəˈkɔːrst/ 58
foreground /fɔːɡrəʊnd/ 33
foreign /'fɔrən/ 1
foreigner /'fɔrənə(r)/ 1
formal /'fɔrməl/ 1
fortune as in cost a fortune /'fɔːtʃən/ 18
forward(s) /'fɔrwɔːd(ə)z/ 20
foster parent
fracture /'fræktʃur/ 9
found /fɔʊnd/ 57
founder /'fɔʊndə(r)/ 57
frame /frem/ 43
free /friː/ 61
freedom /'frɪdəm/ 50
freeway /'frɪ'weɪ/ 80
French fries /'fremfriːz/ 80
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 79
friends as in make friends /frendz/ 8
friendly /'frɛndli/ 8
friendship /'frendʃip/ 8
fringe /frɪndʒ/ 28
frog /frɒɡ/ 15
time from time to time /'frɒm təm tuˈ tæm/ 70
front /frʌnt/ 70
fruit /fruːt/ 13
fruity /'fruːti/ 13
frustrating /frəˈstreɪtɪŋ/ 2
frustration /frəˈstreɪʃən/ 2
fry /frai/ 17
frying pan /'fremɪŋ, pæn/ 17
full stop /'fʊl stop/ 4
funeral /'fjuːnɪrəl/ 10
fur /fɜːr/ 15
furious /'fjuəriəs/ 7
further /'fɜːðə(r)/ 78
further to /'fɜːðə tu 78
furthermore /'fɜːðəmˈmɔː(r)/ 68
g (gram(s)) /'grem(z)/ 79
gm (gram(s)) /'grem(z)/ 79
gain /gɛn/ 11, 56, 40
gale /ɡeil/ 13
gap in the market /'gep məˈmækɪt/ 57
garbage /'ɡɑːbɪdʒ/ 80
garbage can
'ɡɑːbɪdʒ ˈkæn/ 80
gas (= e.g. oxygen) /ɡæs/ 13
gas (= gasoline) /ɡæs/ 80
gasoline /ˈɡæsəlin/ 80
gather /'ɡætə(r)/ 58
gear lever /gɛə lɪvə(r)/ 21
gear stick /ɡɪə stɪk/ 21
general as in in general
'ʤenərəl/ 71
generally /'ʤenərəli/ 71, 76
generation /'ʤenəreɪʃən/ 9
gerosity /'ʤenərəsəti/ 6
generous /'ʤenərəs/ 6
gentle /'ʤentl/ 73
gentleness /'ʤentlnəs/ 73
get (= fetch) /get/ 77
get (= receive) /get/ 36, 42
get better /get 'betə(r)/ 2
get divorced /a divorce /get
drivest, a drive/s 9
get dressed /get 'drest/ 72
get held up /get ,held 'xp/ 22
get in /get 'ɪn/ 22
get on / 'get 'ən/ 75
get on with / 'get 'ən wɪð/ 75
get on sb's nerves / 'get pn, 'nɜːvz/ 66
get over / 'ɡəʊvər/ 25, 75
get rid of / 'ɡəʊ 'rɪd af/ 71
get sth done / 'ɡəʊ stː dən/ 28
get stuck / 'ɡəʊ 'stʊk/ 22
get the sack / 'ɡəʊ ðə 'sæk/ 53
get through / 'ɡəʊ θruː/ 75
get time off / 'ɡəʊ 'tɜːm of/ 54
get to know / 'ɡəʊ to 'nəʊ/ 8
get to like / 'ɡəʊ to 'lɑːk/ 62
get together / 'ɡəʊ tə'gɛðər/ 8, 61
get undressed / 'ɡəʊ ən'drest/ 72
gift / 'ɡɪft/ 47
gist / 'dʒɪst/ 1
give a trim / 'ɡɪv ə 'trɪm/ 28
give sb a hand / 'ɡɪv ,ə 'hænd/ 77
give sb advice / 'ɡɪv ,əd'ves/ 51
give sb feedback / 'ɡɪv ,ˈfɪdbæk/ 51
give sb the sack / 'ɡɪv ,ə 'sæk/ 53
give sb away / 'ɡɪv ,ə 'weɪ/ 75
give sb out / 'ɡɪv ,ə 'aʊt/ 75
give up / 'ɡɪv ʌp/ 39, 75
glad / 'ɡlæd/ 69
glance / 'ɡlɑːns/ 32
global warming / 'ɡloʊbl wɔːrnɪŋ/ 13
glue / 'ɡluː/ 26
go as in to go / 'ɡoʊ 70
go bald / 'ɡoʊ 'bɔːld/ 5
go blind / 'ɡoʊ 'blænd/ 37
go deaf / 'ɡoʊ 'dɛf/ 37
go down / 'ɡoʊ 'daʊn/ 55, 75
go grey / 'ɡoʊ 'ɡreɪ/ 5
go into hospital / 'ɡoʊ 'ɪntə 'hospɪtəl/ 25
go off (= ring) / 'ɡoʊ 'ɒf/ 19
go off (= explode) / 'ɡoʊ 'ɒf/ 39
go on (with sth) / 'ɡoʊ 'ɒn/ 75
go on a diet / 'ɡoʊ, pn ə 'dɪət/ 17
go on strike / 'ɡoʊ on 'strāk/ 54
go out of business / 'ɡoʊ ,əut əv 'bɪznəs/ 56
go out with / 'ɡoʊ əut wɪð/ 8
go over / 'ɡoʊ əʊvər/ 75
go smoothly / 'ɡoʊ ˈsmɔːli/ 65
go through / 'ɡoʊ θruː/ 1
go to court / 'ɡoʊ tə 'kɔːt/ 36
hospital / 'hɒspɪtl/ 25
jail / 'dʒeɪl/ 35
go to jail / 'ɡoʊ tə 'dʒeɪl/ 35
go to prison / 'ɡoʊ tə 'prɪzn/ 35
go to sleep / 'ɡoʊ tə 'slɪp/ 19
go up / 'ɡoʊ ʌp/ 55, 75
go white / 'ɡoʊ 'wɛt/ 5
go wrong / 'ɡoʊ 'rɒnt/ 8, 65
goat / 'ɡoʊt/ 2, 38, 58
goat / 'ɡoʊt/ 15
gold / 'ɡɔld/ 31
golf / 'ɡɔlf/ 45
good chance / ɡʊd tʃʌns/ 59
good for you / ɡʊd fə juː/ 17
goods / ɡʊdz/ 56
gorilla / ɡʊrɪlə/ 15
govern / ˈɡʌvn/ 38
government / ˈɡʌvnəmənt/ 38
grab / ɡræb/ 32
gradual / ɡrədjuəl/ 13, 55
gradually / ɡrədjuəli/ 13, 55
graduate / ɡrədjuət/ 50
graduation / ɡrədjuəˈkeɪʃən/ 50
graffiti / ɡrɑːfɪtɪ/ 29
gram / ɡræm/ 79
grand / ɡrænd/ 69
grapefruit / ɡreɪprfruːt/ 16
grateful as in I would be grateful if... / ɡreɪtfl/ 78
grave / ɡreɪv/ 10
gravestone / ɡreɪvstɔːn/ 10
grease / ɡriːz/ 27
greasy / ɡriːzi/ 27
greedy / ɡriːdi/ 60
gripping / ɡrɪpɪŋ/ 42
groom / ɡrʊm/ 10
ground (= earth's surface) / ɡraʊnd/ 14
ground (= sports area) / ɡraʊnd/ 45
group / ɡrʊp/ 44
grow / ɡrəʊ/ 55, 56
growth / ɡrəʊθ/ 29, 55, 56
guarantee / ɡʊərənˈtiː/ 66
guess n, v / ɡes/ 1
guess as in I guess so / ɡes/ 65
guest / ɡest/ 10
guilt / ɡɪltɪ/ 36
guitar / ˈɡɪtər/ 44
guitarist / ɡɪˈtɑːrɪst/ 44
gun / ɡʌn/ 39
gun battle / ˈɡʌn ˈbætəl/ 39
gym / ˈdʒɪm/ 79
gymnast / ˈdʒɪmənست/ 45, 46
gymnastics / ˈdʒɪmənстиks/ 45, 46
habit / ˈheɪbɪt/ 19
hair as in lose your hair / ˈheər/ 5
haircut / ˈheəkʌt/ 28
hairdryer / ˈheədrɪər/ 28
hairstyle / ˈheəstайл/ 28
half as in fold in half / hɑːf/ 34
half a dozen / ˈheɪf ə 'dezən/ 39
half-brother / ˈheɪf,bɹəðər/ 9
half-sister / ˈheɪfˌsɪstər/ 9
hall / ˈhɔːl/ 30
hall of residence / ˈhɔːl əv ˈrezɪdəns/ 50
hammer / ˈhæmər/ 26
hand as in left-hand corner, right-hand side / hænd/ 33
hand as in lend sb a hand / hænd/ 77
hand as in on the one/other hand / hænd/ 68
hand in your notice / hænd ɪn ˈnəʊtɪs/ 53
hand sth out / hænd, ... 'aʊt/ 75
handcuffs / ˈhæŋkʌfs/ 36
handle as in door handle / hændl/ 21
handle v / ˈhændl/ 53
handy / ˈhændi/ 29
hang on / ˈhæŋ ən/ 77
happy / ˈheɪpi/ 66
harbour / ˈhɑːbə(r)/ 12
hardback / ˈhɑːrdbæk/ 47
hard-working / ˈhɑːdˌwɜːkɪŋ/ 6
harm n, v / ˈhɑːrm/ 15
harm v / ˈhɑːm/ 13
harmonious / ˈhɑːmərɪəs/ 13, 15, 73
harmless / ˈhɑːmliːs/ 15, 73
have a chat / ˈheɪv ə ˈʃæt/ 1
have a debate / ˈheɪv ə dɪˈbet/ 50
have a haircut / ˈheɪv ə 'hɑːkət/ 28
have a lie-in / ˈheɪv ə 'lai ɪn/ 19
have a lot in common / ˈheɪv ə lət ɪn ˈkɒmən/ 8
have a nap / ˈheɪv ə ˈnæp/ 19
have a restless night

have a row

have a stroke

have an operation

have fun

have no choice

have no intention of doing sth

have nothing in common

have sth done

have time off

have the right to

have time to

have toothache

have your back to sth

headlights

headline

heal

heat up

health scare

healthily

hear

hear from sb

heart

heart attack

heart disease

heartbroken

heartbreak

heavily

heavenly

heavy traffic

held up

helmet as in safety helmet

herbs

herd

hesitate

hit

hold an election

hold on

hold the record

hole

home as in at home

hospice

honest

honesty

honeymoon

hoover

hope

hope as in I hope so/ not

horizon

horizontal

hospital

horns

horse

hour as in rush hour

how about? how are things?

how do you feel about ...?

however

however

humane

humid

humorous

humour in sense of

hunt

hurricane

hurry

hurry as in a hurry

hurt

hurt sb’s feelings

husband

hyphen

ID card (identity card)

ISP (Internet service provider)

IT (information technology)

i.e.

I assume so

I’d better be off

I don’t think so

I doubt it

I expect so

I feel so

I haven’t a clue

I hope not

I hope so

I imagine so

I suppose so

I think so

I think ...

I think that ...

I would appreciate it if...

I would be grateful if...

ideal

identical

identify

identity

idiom

idiomatic

if you ask me ...

ignition

ignore

illegal

illegal

illuminate

illustrate

illustration

I’m afraid ...

I’m afraid not

I’m afraid so

I’m meant to

I’m not bothered

I’m not supposed to

imagine

imagine as in I imagine so

WORD LIST 241
immediately /ɪˈmiːdiətli/ 25
immigrant /ɪˈmɪɡrənt/ 9, 38
immigration /ɪˌmɪɡrəˈʃən/ 38
immoral /ɪˈmorəl/ 72
impatient /ɪmˈpetɪnt/ 6
impressed /ɪmˈpresɪd/ 69
impressive /ɪmˈpreʃəs/ 30
improve /ɪmˈpruːv/ 2
improvement /ɪmˈpruːvment/ 2
in a bad mood /ɪn əˈbæd ˈmʊd/ 7
in a deep sleep /ɪn ə ˈdɛp ˈslɛp/ 19
in a good mood /ɪn ə ˈɡʊd ˈmʊd/ 7
in a hurry /ɪn əˈhʌri/ 71
in a relationship /ɪn ə rɪˈleɪʃənʃip/ 8
in a rush /ɪn ə ˈrʌʃ/ 71
in actual fact /ɪn ˈæktʃuəl ˈfɛkt/ 76
in addition /ɪn əˈdɪʃn/ 68
in advance /ɪn əˈdəvəns/ 71
in bad shape /ɪn ˈbeɪd ˈʃeɪp/ 5
in case /ɪn ˈkeɪs/ 67, 68
in charge of /ɪn ˈtʃeɪndʒ av/ 53, 71
in comparison with /ɪn ˈkəmpərəns wɪð/ 60
in control /ɪn kənˈtrəʊl/ 39
in detail /ɪn ˈdiːtəl/ 2
in fact /ɪn ˈfækt/ 65, 76
in favour of /ɪn ˈfeɪvər av/ 63, 71
in focus /ɪn ˈfæksəs/ 43
in general /ɪn ˈdʒenərəl/ 71
in good shape /ɪn ˈɡʊd ˈʃeɪp/ 5
in mourning /ɪn ˈmɔːnɪŋ/ 10
in my opinion /ɪn ˈmiː əˈpɪnjən/ 63
in other words /ɪn ˈʌðə wɔːdz/ 11
in particular /ɪn ˈpærətʃəl(r)/ 78
in person /ɪn ˈpɜːsn/ 66
in power /ɪn ˈpɔːrə(r)/ 38
in principle /ɪn ˈprɪnsəpl/ 63
in private /ɪn ˈprɪvət/ 71
in public /ɪn ˈpʌblɪk/ 71
in spite of /ɪn ˈspɪt əv/ 68
in the centre /ɪn əˈsent(r)/ 33
in the distance /ɪn əˈdistəns/ 33
in the end /ɪn əˈend/ 71
in the meantime /ɪn ə məˈniːtmiː/ 70
in theory /ɪn ˈθɪəri/ 63
in time /ɪn ˈtaɪm/ 50
in writing /ɪn ˈrɪtʃɪŋ/ 66
inadequate /ɪnˈædəkwaɪt/ 56, 69
inappropriate /ɪnˈprəʊprət/ 2
include /ɪnˈkluːd/ 2
income /ɪnˈkʌm/ 18
increase /ɪnˈkriːz/ 37
increase in /ɪnˈkriːz ɪn/ 53, 55, 58, 63
incredible /ɪnˈkrɛdəbl/ 42
indeed /ɪnˈdɪd/ 42
independence /ɪnˌdiːpəˈpendəns/ 40
indeed /ɪnˌdiːpər/ 40
individual /ɪnˈdɪvɪdʒuəl/ 42
industrial /ɪnˈdʌstrial/ 33
industry /ɪnˈdʌstrɪ/ 33
infective /ɪnˈfɛktɪv/ 69
inefficient /ɪnˈɪfɪʃnt/ 69
infection /ɪnˈfɛkʃən/ 20
infectious /ɪnˈfɛktʃəs/ 37
influence /ɪnˈfluːəns/ 55
influence of /ɪnˈfluːəns av/ 44
information /ɪnˌfəʊˈmʃən/ 79
information technology /ɪnˌfəʊˌmʃən tɛkˈnɒlədʒi/ 79
ingredients /ɪnˈɡriːdɪənts/ 17
inherit /ɪnˈhɛrit/ 10
inheritance /ɪnˈhɜːrtəns/ 10
injure /ɪnˈdʒʊər/ 20
injured /ɪnˈdʒʊərd/ 22
injury /ɪnˈdʒərɪ/ 20
inner city /ɪntər ˈsɪti/ 29
innocent /ɪnəˈsɛnt/ 36
innovate /ɪnəˈveɪt/ 57
innovation /ɪnəˈveɪʃən/ 57
innovative /ɪnəˈveɪtɪv/ 57
insect /ɪnˈsɛkt/ 15
insecure /ɪnˈsɪkərə(t)/ 6, 72
insensitive /ɪnˈsɛnsɪtɪv/ 7
insist /ɪnˈsɪst/ 71, 64
insomnia /ɪnˈsəmnɪə/ 19
install /ɪnˈstɔːl/ 52
instance as in for instance /ɪnˈstɑːns ɪz/ 4, 61
instead /ɪnˈsted/ 4, 61
instructions /ɪnˈstrækʃən/ 49
instrument as in musical instrument /ɪnˈstrʌment/ 44
intend /ɪnˈtend/ 65, 74
intention /ɪnˈtenʃən/ 65
interest /ɪnˈtɜːrst/ 55
interest rate /ɪnˈtɜːrst ˈreɪt/ 55
international /ɪntrəˈnæʃənəl/ 41
internet service provider /ɪntəˈnet ˈsɜːvɪsɪv prəˈvɜːdər/ 79
interpret /ɪnˈtɜːprɪt/ 73
interpretation /ɪnˌtɜːprɪteɪʃən/ 73
interrupt /ɪnˈtɜːrrupt/ 4, 45
interrupt state /ɪntəˈrʌpt ʃteɪt/ 80
interview /ɪnˈtɪvjuː/ 51
interviewer /ɪnˈtɪvjuər/ 51
intolerant /ɪnˈtələrənt/ 6
introduce /ɪntrəˈdjuːs/ 74
invasion /ɪnˈvɛʒn/ 40
invent /ɪnˈvent/ 11
invention /ɪnˈvɛnʃən/ 11
invest /ɪnˈvest/ 57
investigate /ɪnˈvestɪɡeɪt/ 36
investment /ɪnˈvestmənt/ 57
invigilator /ɪnˈvɪdʒɪleɪtər/ 49
involve /ɪnˈvɔlv/ 53
involved /ɪnˈvɔlvd/ 39
involving /ɪnˈvɔlvɪŋ ɪn/ 71
iron /aɪrən/ 31
irrelevant /ɪrˈrelənt/ 2, 72
irresponsible /ɪrˈresənsəbl/ 6
irritable /ɪrˈtræbl/ 19
-ish /ɪʃ/ 5
issue /ˈɪʃuː/ 63
it seems to me /ɪt ˌsɪmz tə miː/ 63
item /ɪˈtɜːm/ 49
it's up to me /ɪts ʌp tə miː/ 64
jail /dʒeɪl/ 35
jam as in traffic jam /dʒæm/ 22
jealous /dʒeləs/ 7
jewellery /dʒuːərəli/ 23
job /dʒɔb/ 52
join a class /dʒɔın ə ˈklɑːs/ 66
join (= put together) /dʒɔɪn/ 4
joke /dʒəʊk/ 77
joking as in you must be joking, you're joking /dʒəʊkɪŋ/ 77
journalism /dʒuːrəˈnɪzəm/ 41
journalist /dʒuːrəˈnɪst/ 41
judge /dʒuːdʒ/ 36
judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 73
government /dʒəʊmənt/ 73
gunk food /ˈdʒʌŋk ˈfʌd/ 17
jury /dʒʊri/ 36
just /dʒʌst/ 33

kg (kilo(s)/kilogram(s))
/ˈkɪloʊz/ (‘kilogram’ 79)
km (kilometre(s))
/ˈkɪləmɪtər(z)/ 79
kph (kilometres per hour)
/ˈkɪləmɪtərz pər ˈaʊə(r)/ 79
keen as in be keen on /kiːn/ 62
keep /kiːp/ 21, 28
keep a record of
/kiːp əˈrek thrəv/ 1
keep ahead of
/kiːp əˌhed əv/ 57
keep an eye on
/kiːp ən ˈai ˌon/ 77
keep calm /kiːp ˈkælm/ 66
keep in touch /kiːp in ˈtʃʌt/ 8
keep sth up /kiːp ˌʌp/ 17
keep your temper
/kiːp ˈtɛmˈpər(r)/ 66
key /kiː/ 57
keyboard /ˈkɪbəʊd/ 44
keyboard player
/ˈkɪbəʊd ˈplɛn(ə)r/ 44
kid /kiːd/ 77
kidney /ˈkɪdnɪ/ 16
kill /kiːl/ 35
kilogram /ˈkɪləɡræm/ 79
kilometre /ˈkɪləmətər/ 79
kilometres per hour
/ˈkɪləmɪtərz pər ˈaʊə(r)/ 79
kind /kænd/ 73
kind regards
/ˈkænd ˌrɪɡdz/ 78
kindness /ˈkændnəs/ 73
king /kɪŋ/ 9
knicker(s) /ˈnɪkəz/ 23
knock /nɒk/ 34
knowledge /ˈnɔlɪdʒ/ 11

l (litre(s)) /ˈlɪtə(r)/ 79
lab /leɪb/ 79
laboratory /ˈleɪborətri/ 79
lack /læk/ 19
ladder /ˈleɪdər/ 31
lake /leɪk/ 12
land /leɪnd/ 52
landscape /ˈlandskeɪp/ 43
lane /leɪn/ 22
lap /leɪp/ 45
largely /ˈlɑrəli/ 76

last /laːst/ 70
lately /ˈleɪtli/ 77
latest /ˈleɪtɪst/ 23
launch /ləʊntʃ/ 38
laughing as in burst out
laughing /ˈlaʊθɪŋ/ 34
lava /ˈlaːvə/ 14
law /lɔː/ 35
lawn /lɔːn/ 30
laze /lez/ 6
lead /liːd/ 30
lead singer /liːd ˈsnɪŋə(r)/ 44
lead to /liːd tə/ 37
leader /ˈlɛdər/ 39
leader as in market leader
/ˈlɛdər(r)/ 56
leading role /ˈliːdɪŋ ˈrɔːl/ 42
leaf /liːf/ 34
leak n, v /liːk/ 26
least as in at least /ˈliːst/ 71
leather /ˈleɪθər/ 23
leave out /ˈlv ˈəʊt/ 4, 75
leaves /liːvz/ 34
lecture /ˈlɛktrə/ 50
lecturer /ˈlɛktə(r)ə/ 50
leek /liːk/ 16
left-hand /ˈlɛft hænd/ 33
legal /ˈlɛɡəl/ 35
legible /ˈlɛdʒəbl/ 72
leisure /ˈleɪzər/ 33
lend sb a hand
/ˈlɛnd ə ˈhænd/ 77
length /ˈlɛŋθ/ 45
lenses as in zoom lens /ˈlɛnz/ 43
lenses as in contact lenses /ˈlɛnzz/ 5
leopard /ˈlɛpərd/ 15
let /liːt/ 28, 64
letter as in capital letter
/ˈletə(r)/ 4
letter box /ˈletə boks/ 31
lid /lɪd/ 34
life expectancy
/ˈlaɪf ˈɛkspektnəsi/ 15
lifeboat /ˈlaɪfboʊt/ 57
lifespan /ˈlaɪfspæn/ 15
light bulb /ˈlaɪt ˈbʌlb/ 26
light-skinned /ˈlaɪt skɪnd/ 5
light sleeper /ˈlaɪt ˈslɪpər/ 19
light sth up /ˈlaɪt ˌʌp/ 48
like (= similar to) /laɪk/ 32
like (= such as) /laɪk ˌəʊ/ 4, 32
likely to /ˈlaɪkli tu/ 59
limit as in speed limit
/ˈlaɪmɪt/ 21
limited /ˈlaɪmɪd/ 58
linesman /ˈlaɪnzmen/ 45
lion /ˈlaɪn/ 15
liquid /ˈlaɪkwɪd/ 13
list /ˈlɪst/ 4
listen /ˈlɪsn/ 32
litre /ˈlɪtrə(r)/ 79
litter /ˈlɪtə(r)/ 29
live /lɪv/ 44
lively /ˈlaɪvli/ 29
liver /ˈlaɪvə(r)/ 16
living /ˈlaɪvɪŋ/ 44
loads /laʊdz/ 77
load sth up /ˈlaʊd ˌʌp/ 72
loan /ˈlɔːn/ 50
loath /ˈlaʊθ/ 62
lobster /ˈlobstə(r)/ 16
local /ˈloʊkəl/ 29
lock /ˈlɒk/ 72
log as in sleep like a log
/ˈlɑɡ/ 19
long /lɑŋ/ 45
long as in as long as /ˈlɒŋ/ 68
look /lʊk/ 32
look after /ˈlʊk ˈɑːftə(r)/ 71
look forward to
/ˈlʊk ˈfɔːrwəd tu/ 24, 65, 78
look like /ˈlʊk ˈlɑːk/ 9
look out /ˈlʊk ˌəʊt/ 67
look through /ˈlʊk ˈθruː/ 47
loosen /ˈluzn/ 26
lose /luːz/ 56
lose weight /ˈluːz ˈwɛt/ 17
lose your hair
/luːz ˈhæə(r)/ 5
lose your sight
/ˈluːz ˈsænt/ 37
lose your temper
/ˈluːz əˈtɛmp(r)/ 66
loss /loʊs/ 55
loud /laʊd/ 34
love /laʊv/ 78
love from /laʊv frəm/ 78
low tide /ˈloʊ taid/ 12
loyal /ˈlɑʊəl/ 8, 72
lungs /ˈlʌŋz/ 37
lyrics /ˈlraɪks/ 44

ml (millilitre(s))
/ˈmɪləlɪtə(r)s/ 79
mm (millimetre(s))
/ˈmiːlɪmətə(r)s/ 79
MP (Member of Parliament)
/ˈem ˈpiː/ 38
mph (miles per hour)
/ˈmaɪl pər ˈaʊə(r)/ 79
mad /maʊd/ 6
mad about (= liking very much) /ˈmeɪd aˈbaʊt/ 62
Madam /ˈmeɪdəm/ 78
main difference /ˈmeɪn dɪˈfɜːrəns/ 60
main road /ˈmeɪn rəʊd/ 80
mainly /ˈmeɪnli/ 76
maintain /ˈmeɪnten/ 14
majority /məˈdʒɔrəti/ 38
make as in can you make it? /ˈmeɪk/ 61
make (= perform an action) /ˈmeɪk/ 1, 10, 65
make a claim /ˈmeɪk əˈklem/ 66
make a complaint /ˈmeɪk aˈkɒmˈpleɪnt/ 53, 66
make a note /ˈmeɪk əˈnəʊt/ 1
make a profit /ˈmeɪk əˈprɔfɪt/ 55
make a promise /ˈmeɪk əˈprɒmɪs/ 41
make a speech /ˈmeɪk əˈspɪʃ/ 10
make an appointment /ˈmeɪk ənˈəpənˌmen/ 24
make an enquiry /ˈmeɪk ən ˈmɔːkwɔːri/ 53
make arrangements /ˈmeɪk əˈrɛndʒmənts/ 52
make friends /ˈmeɪk ˈfrendz/ 8
make mistakes /ˈmeɪk miˈstɛks/ 1
make plans /ˈmeɪk ˈplɛnz/ 65
make progress /ˈmeɪk ˈpɹəɡres/ 2
make sb do sth /ˈmeɪk ˈsə duː ˈstoʊ/ 64
make sb redundant /ˈmeɪk əˈrɛndʒd/ 53
make sth up /ˈmeɪk ənˈsetUp/ 75
make sure /ˈmeɪk ˈʃʊə(r)/ 53, 66
make the most of /ˈmeɪk də ˈmeɪst əv/ 71
male /mæl/ 5, 15
mall /mæl, mæl/ 80
manage /ˈmeɪndʒ/ 50, 52, 71, 74
management /ˈmeɪndʒmənt/ 52
manager /ˈmeɪndʒə(r)/ 45
manual /ˈmeɪnʃuəl/ 47
manufacture /ˈmeɪnʃʊər əˈfektʃə(r)/ 52, 57
manufacturer /ˈmeɪnʃʊər əˈfektʃər/ 57
manufacturing /ˈmeɪnʃʊər əˈfektʃər/ 52
mark as in exclamation /ˈmeɪk ə ˈmɛrk/ 4
market as in target market /ˈmeɪk ət/ 58
market leader /ˈmeɪk ət ˈlɪdə(r)/ 56
market research /ˈmeɪk ət ˈrɪ:sərʃ/ 56
marketing /ˈmeɪk ət ˈmɑːrkɪŋ/ 58
marks as in quotation marks /ˈmeɪks/ 4
marriage /ˈmeɪrɪdʒ/ 10
mash /meʃ/ 17
massive /ˈmeɪsvi/ 18
masterpiece /ˈmeɪstəpiːs/ 43
match /meɪtʃ/ 23
mate /meɪt/ 77
material /ˈmeɪtʃrəl/ 23
mature /meʊˈtʃʊər/ 63
maximum /ˈmeɪksɪməm/ 45
may /meɪ/ 36, 59
mean /miːn/ 6
mean a lot /mɛn əˈlɑːt/ 48
meant as in be meant to /ˈmiːnt/ 22, 61
meantime as in the meantime /ˈmiːntəm/ 70
meanwhile /ˈmiːnwaɪl/ 70
measure /ˈmeʒə(r)/ 73
measurement /ˈmeʒəmənt/ 73
mechanic /ˈmeŋkənɪk/ 52
medal /ˈmedl/ 31, 46
melody /ˈmelɔdi/ 44
melt /meɪlt/ 13
member /ˈmeɪmbə(r)/ 9
Member of Parliament /ˈmeɪmbər əv ˈpɔːləˌpɑːrt/ 38
member of the public /ˈmeɪmbər əv ˈpʌblɪk/ 53
memory loss /ˈmeməri lʌs/ 37
mend /mɛnd/ 26
mention /ˈmɛntʃən/ 66
metal /ˈmeɪtl/ 31
method /ˈmeθəd/ 1
metric /ˈmɛtrɪk/ 79
metric capacity /ˈmɛtrɪk ˈkeɪpəsəti/ 79
metric length /ˈmɛtrɪk ˈleŋθ/ 79
metric weight /ˈmɛtrɪk ˈwɛt/ 79
mice /maɪs/ 15
middle /ˈmɪdl/ 33
might /meɪt/ 36, 59
mild /ˈmild/ 13
miles per hour /ˈmaɪlz pər ˈmeɪlz/ 79
millilitre /ˈmɪlɪlɪtr/ 79
millimetre /ˈmɪlɪmɪtər/ 79
military /ˈmaɪlɪtri/ 52
minced /ˈmɪnzd/ 17
mind /ˈmeɪnd/ 74
mind as in on your mind /ˈmeɪnd/ 19
mind your head /ˈmeɪnd juː ˈhed/ 67
minimum /ˈmɪnɪməm/ 45
minor /ˈmeɪnə(r)/ 35
minority /ˈmaɪnərɪti/ 38
mint /ˈmɪnt/ 16
mirror as in rear-view /ˈmaɪrə(r)/ 21
mirror /ˈmaɪrə(r)/ 7
misery /ˈmaɪzəri/ 7
mist /ˈmaɪst/ 13
mistake as in make mistakes /ˈmaɪstək/ 1
misty /ˈmaɪstɪ/ 13
mixed feelings /ˈmɪkst ˈfɪliŋz/ 69
moan /mɔːn/ /ˈməʊn/ 66
modern /ˈmeɪdn/ 69
modest /ˈməʊdɪst/ 6
money /ˈmeɪni/ 79
monkey /ˈmaʊŋkɪ/ 15
mood /ˈmaʊd/ 7
moody /ˈmaʊdi/ 7
moon /ˈmaʊn/ 11
mop /ˈmɒp/ 27
moral /ˈmɔːrəl/ 72
moreover /ˈmɔːrəvə(r)/ 68
mosquito /ˈmaʊzɪkəʊ/ 15
most as in make the most of /ˈmeɪst/ 71
motivated /ˈmaʊtəˌvɪd/ 2
motivation /ˈmaʊtəˌveɪʃən/ 2
motorbike /ˈmaʊtəbɪk/ 79
motorway /ˈmaʊtəweɪ/ 80
mourners /ˈmɔːnərz/ 10
mournings as in mourning /ˈmeɪniŋ/ 10
mouse /ˈmaʊs/ 15
movie /ˈmuːvɪ/ 42, 80
movie theater /ˈmuːvɪ ˈθɪətə(r)/ 80
moving /ˈmuːvɪŋ/ 42
mud /ˈmaʊd/ 27
muddy /ˈmaʊdɪ/ 27
mug /ˈmaʊɡ/ 35
mugger /ˈmaʊɡə(r)/ 35
mugging /ˈmaʊɡɪŋ/ 35
principle as in in principle
/prin'sepl/  63
print  /print/  43
priority  /prə'əriəti/  38
prison as in go to prison
/prɪzn/  35
private as in private
/prə'vaiət/  71
private sector
/prə'vaiət 'sektr(r)/  52
problem as in no problem
/ˈprəbləm/  77
process  /prə'ses/  51
produce (a film)  /prə'dju:s/  42
produce (goods)  /prəndju:s/  57
producer (of films)
/prə'dju:ʒə(r)/  42
producer (of goods)
/prə'djuːəs(r)/  57
product  /prə'dukt/  52
profession  /prə'fərəns/  52
professional  /prə'fərənsəl/  46
professor  /prə'fərəs(r)/  50
profit  /prə'fɪt/  55
progress  /prə'grɛs/  2
promise  /prə'məs/  41
promote  /prə'mɔt/  53
promotion  /prə'mɔtʃən/  53
pronounce  /prə'naʊns/  1
pronunciation
/prə'naʊnsi'ʃən/  1
proof  /prəfl/  36
properly  /prə'pələ/  26
property  /prə'pərti/  35
proposal  /prə'pəzəl/  63
propose  /prə'pəuz/  63
prosecute  /prə'seıkjʊət/  36
prosecution  /prə'seıkʃən/  36
prospects  /prə'spektz/  53
protect  /prə'tekt/  12
protected  /prə'tekʃəd/  12
protection  /prə'tekʃən/  12
protest  as in protest
/prə'テスト/  41
protest  v  /prə'teɪst/  41
proud  /prəoud/  7
prove  /prəv/  36
provide  /prə'veid/  3
provided  /prə'veidid/  68
pub  /pʌb/  79
public as in public
/pʌblɪk/  71
public as in member of the public
/pʌblɪk/  53
public as in the public
/pʌblɪk/  53
public house
/pʌblɪk 'həʊs/  79
public sector
/pʌblɪk 'sektr(r)/  52
publish  /pʌblɪʃ/  41, 52
publishing  /pʌblɪʃɪŋ/  41, 52
puddle  /pʌdl/  12
punish  /pʌnɪʃ/  64
punishment  /pʌnɪʃmənt/  64
purchase  v, n  /pɜːʃəs/  77
purpose  /pər'pʌs/  68
purpose as in on purpose
/pər'pʌs/  71
purse  /pɜːs/  80
put on weight
/pʊt 'ɒn 'wɛt/  17
put back  /pʊt 'bæk/  75
put down  /pʊt 'daʊn/  75
put off  /pʊt 'ɒf/  61
put on  /pʊt 'ɑn/  75
put out  /pʊt 'aʊt/  75
pyjamas  /pa'dʒə'mæz/  19
qualifications
/kwɔlɪfɪkeɪʃən/  52
quality  /kwɔlɪti/  56
queen  /kwɪn/  9
question mark
/kwestʃən 'mɑːk/  4
quite  /kwɪt/  53
quote  /kwɔt/  76
quotation marks
/kwəʊteɪʃən 'mɑːks/  4
rabbit  /ˈræbɪt/  16
race  /rɛs/  46
racing driver
/ˈreɪsɪŋ, 'drɛɪvə(r)/  45
railings  /ˈreɪlɪŋz/  31
railroad  /ˈreɪldrɔːd/  80
rainbow  /ˈreɪnbəʊ/  13
rainforest  /ˈreɪnfoʊrɛst/  13
raise capital  /reɪˈseɪt kæpɪtəl/  55
range as in wide range
/reɪndʒ/  2
rare  /reə(r)/  69
rarely  /reəli/  76
raspberry  /ˈreɪzbəri/  16
rat  /reɪt/  15
rather  /ˈræθə(r)/  76
rather as in would rather
/ˈræθə(r)/  62
rather than  /ˈræθə(ð)ən/  21
reach  /riːtʃ/  11
reach an agreement
/riːtʃ ən ər'ɡriːmənt/  39
react  /rɪˈɛkt/  73
reaction  /rɪˈækʃən/  73
read widely  /rɛd 'wɜːdlɪ/  50
readable  /rɛdəbl/  47
real  /rɛl/  69, 73
realism  /rɪˈælɪzəm/  43
realistic  /rɪˈæləstɪk/  43, 58
reality  /rɪˈælətɪ/  73
realize  /rɪˈælائز/  8
rear  /riːə(r)/  70
rear view mirror
/ˌriː vjuː 'mɪrə(r)/  21
reasonable  /rɪˈznəbl/  69
recall  /rɪˈkɔːl/  74
recording  /rɪˈsɔːdɪŋ/  5
receipt  /rɪˈsiːt/  18
recent  /rɪˈsent/  70
recently  /rɪˈsentli/  70
reception  /rɪˈsepʃən/  10
recipe  /ˈresep/  17
reckon  /rɪˈkɔn/  63, 77
recognition  /rɪˈkeɪʒnəˈʃən/  1
recognize  /rɪˈkeɪz/  1
record  n
/rɪˈkɔrd/  46
record v (= make a note)
/rɪˈkɔrd/  1
record v (= put onto a disc)
/rɪˈkɔrd/  44
recording  /rɪˈkɔrdɪŋ/  44
recover  /rɪˈkʌvə(r)/  25
recruit  /rɪˈkrʊt/  52
recruitment  /rɪˈkrʊmtʃənt/  52
rectangle  /rɪˈkɛntəɡl/  31
rectangular
/rɪˈkɛntəɡlə(r)/  31
reduce  /rɪˈdjuːs/  18, 58, 63
reduction  /rɪˈdʌkʃən/  18, 58
redundant  /rɪˈdʌndənt/  53
reel  /rɪə(ʊ)/  26
ref  /rɛf/  45
reft  as in referee
/rɛf/  45
reft (for a job)
/ˈreft əˈʃənt/  51
reference  /rɪˈfɜːns/  51
reference book
/ˈrefrəns, bʊk/  47
reline  /rɪˈlein/  57
refund  /rɪˈfʌnd/  18
release  /rɪˈflez/  74
regards as in kind regards
/ˈrɪɡɑːdz/  78
region  /rɪˈdʒɪn/  29
regret  /rɪˈgret/  8, 74
regularly  /rɪˈɡɜːləli/  76
relate  /rɪˈleɪt/  3
related (= connected) /'reIled/ 3
related (= in the same family) /'reIled/ 9
relation /'ɾeI'liʃn/ 9
relationship as in a relationship /'ɾeI'liʃnʃip/ 8
relative /'relətiv/ 9
release (= set free) /'ɾelɪs/ 40
release x, v (an album) /'ɾelɪs/ 44
relevant /'reləvant/ 2, 72
reliable /'ɾɪ'leəbl/ 8
relief /'ɾɪliəf/ 49
relieved /'ɾɪ'liəvd/ 49
religious /'ɾɪl'ɪdʒəs/ 10
religious ceremony /'ɾɪl'ɪdʒəs 'sɛrəməni/ 10
rely on /'ɾɪl ai ˈpən/ 8, 71
remain unchanged /'ɾɪ'meın ən ˈfændəd/ 55
remind /'ɾɪ'maɪnd/ 74
remote /'ɾɪ'moʊt/ 69
remove /'ɾɪ'mu:v/ 26
rent /'rent/ 22
rep as in sales rep /'rep/ 52
repair /'ɾɪ'pɛə(r)/ 26
repeat /'ɾɪ'pi:t/ 1
repetition /'repə'tʃən/ 1
replace /'ɾɪ'pleɪs/ 26
report /'ɾɪ'pɔ:t/ 36
represent /'repər'zent/ 38
representative /'repər'zentətɪv/ 52
republic /'ɾɪ'pɔblɪk/ 40
reputation /'repjʊˈteʃən/ 56
request /'ɾɪ'kwεst/ 51
require /'ɾɪ'kwεri/ 51
research as in do research /'ɾɪ'sɛtʃ/ , /'ɾɪsɛtʃ/ 57
research as in market research /'ɾɪ'sɛtʃ/ , /'ɾɪsɛtʃ/ 56
rescue /'ɾɛskjuː/ 14
residence as in hall of residence /'reɪzdəns/ 50
resign /'ɾɛzn/ 53
resist /'ɾɪzɛst/ 46
resistance /'ɾɪzəstəns/ 46
resolve /'ɾɪzəlv/ 66
resource /'ɾɪ'sɔrs/ , /'ɾɪzoʊs/ 58
respond /'ɾɪ'spɔnd/ 58
response /'ɾɪ'spaʊns/ 58
responsible /'ɾɪ'spɔnsəbl/ 6, 53, 71
responsibility /'ɾɪ'spɔnsə'bɪləti/ 53
responsible (= sensible) /'ɾɪ'spɔnsəbl/ 6
responsible (= having control) /'ɾɪ'spɔnsəbl/ 53, 71
restless /'restləs/ 19
result as in as a result /'ɾɪ'zʌlt/ 68
retail /'ɾɪ'teɪl/ 52
retain /'ɾɪ'teɪn/ 57
retention /'ɾɪ'tenʃən/ 57
return as in day return /'ɾɪ'tɜːm/ 22
return as in sales revenue /'ɾɪ'venju/ 55
reverse /'ɾɪ'vers/ 21
revise /'ɾɪ'vez/ , /'ɾɪvəz/ 1, 50
revolution /'ɾɪ'veləʃən/ 50
revolve /'ɾɪ'vʌlv/ 11
reward x, v /'ɾɪ'wɔːrd/ 53
rid as in get rid of /'ɾɪd/ 71
ridiculous /'ɾɪ'dɪkələs/ 73
right as in have the right to /'rɪət/ 54
right-hand /'rɪət hænd/ 33
ring /'rɪŋ/ 23
rise /'rɪz/ 13, 55
risk /'rɪsk/ 25, 56
risks /'rɪskz/ 25
rival /'ɾɪvəl/ 56
roast /'ɾoʊst/ 17
rob /'ɾoʊb/ 35
robber /'ɾoʊbər/ 35
robbery /'ɾoʊbərɪ/ 35
rock /'rɒk/ 12
rocket /'ɾoʊkət/ 11
rocks /'rɒks/ 12
role /'rəʊl/ 42
roll of film /'roʊl əv 'fɪlm/ 43
roof /'rɔːf/ 30
roof /'ɾuːp/ 26
rosemary /'ɾoʊzmərɪ/ 16
rough (of a surface) /'rʌf/ 5
rough (of the sea) /'rʌf/ 12
roughly /'rʌflɪ/ 11, 76
round /'raʊnd/ 31
round trip /'raʊnd 'trɪp/ 80
roundabout /'raʊndə'bɔt/ 5
row as in have a row /'raʊ/ 8
royal /'rəʊl/ 9
rub /'rʌb/ 32
rubber /'rʌbə(r)/ 31
rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 77
rude /'rʌd/ 69
rugby player /'ɾʌɡbiˌpleɪz(r)/ 45
ruin /'ɾuɪn/ 66
rule /'rʌl/ 64
run out /'rʌn 'aʊt/ 75
running water /'rʌnɪŋ ˈwɔtə(r)/ 20
rural /'rʊrəl/ 69
rush /'ɾʌʃ/ 29
rush as in a rush /'ɾʌʃ/ 71
rush hour /'ɾʌʃ ˌhəʊr/ 22
sack x, v /sæk/ 53
safety helmet /'sɛfɪtɪˌheləmt/ 57
sales as in the sales /'sɛlz/ 18
sales rep /'sɛlz ˌrep/ 52
sales representative /'sɛlz ˌreprɪˌzentətɪv/ 52
sales revenue /'sɛlz ˌrevənju/ 55
salmon /'sæmən/ 16
salty /'sɔlti/ 32
same as in all the same /'sɛm/ 68
sand /'sænd/ 12
sandy /'sændi/ 12
satellite /'sætəlɪt/ 11
satisfaction /'sætɪfɪkʃən/ 66
satisfied /'sætɪfaɪd/ 69
satisfying /'sætɪfaɪŋ/ 69
saucepan /'sɔsˈpæn/ 17
save /'sev/ 14
saxophone /'sɛksəˈfɒn/ 44
saxophonist /'sɛksoʊˈfonɪst/ 44
say /'sɛi/ 61
scan /'skæn/ 25
scar /'skær/ 5
scare /'skɛə(r)/ 41
scared stiff /'skɛəd 'stɪf/ 7
scene /'sɛn/ 33
scholarship /'skɔlərʃɪp/ 50
science /'saɪəns/ 11
science fiction /'saɪəns 'fɪkʃən/ 47
scientific /'saɪəntɪfɪk/ 11
scientist /'saɪəntɪst/ 11
scissors /'sɪsəz/ 26, 28
sci-fi /'saɪ'feɪ/ 47
scratch n /skrætʃ/ 18
scratch v /skrætʃ/ 34
scream /skriːm/ 34
screw /skrʊː/ 26
screwdriver /'skrʊdrɪvr/ 26
sea bass /ˈsiː ˈbæs/ 16
section /'sɛkʃən/ 41
sector /'sɛktə(r)/ 52, 58
secure /skjə(r)/ 72
see (with your eyes) /si:/ 32
see (in your mind) /si:/ 6
seek /sik/ 67
seem as in it seems to me /sɪm/ 63
seldom /'seldəm/ 76
select /sɛlˈktekt/ 3
selection /sɛlˈkekʃn/ 3
defident /ˈsɛlf ˈkɒnˈfɪdənt/ 6
sellotape /ˈsɛltəti/ 26
semicolon /ˌsemiˈkoʊlan/ 4
dem-detached /ˌsemiˈdɛkˈtætʃt/ 30
sem-final /ˌsemiˈfænəl/ 46
seminar /ˌsemaˈnɑːr/ 50
sense /sens/ 33
sense of humour /ˈsens əv ˈhjuːˈmə(r)/ 6
sensible /ˈsɛnsəbl/ 63
sensitive /ˈsɛnsətɪv/ 36
sentence n, v /ˈsentəns/ 36
separate adj /ˈseprət/ 30
separate v /ˈseprət/ 4
serious /ˈseriəs/ 22, 35
seriously /ˈseriəsli/ 76
servant as in civil servant /ˈsɜːvənt/ 52
service as in civil service /ˈsɜːvɪs/ 52
services as in emergency /ˈsɜːvɪsɪz/ 22
set the alarm /ˈset əl ˈæləm/ 19
set up a business /ˈset ʌp ə ˈbɪznəs/ 56
settle /ˈsetl/ 66
settlement as in peace /ˈsetlmənt/ 39
several /ˈsevrəl/ 41
severe /ˈsiːvrə(r)/ 52
sew /sɔː/ 26
sex /sɛks/ 5
shade /ʃeɪd/ 33
shadow /ˈʃeɪdəʊ/ 33
shake /ʃeɪk/ 34
shall /ʃəl, ʃəl/ 51
shallow /ʃəˈloʊ/ 12
shAME /ʃeɪm/ 29
shape /ʃeɪp/ 31
shape as in in good/bad shape /ʃeɪp/ 5
-shaped /ʃeɪpt/ 31
share /ʃeə(r)/ 56
shares /ʃeəz/ 56
shark /ʃɑːk/ 15
sharp /ʃɑːp/ 55
sharply /ʃɑːrˈpleɪ/ 55, 76
shell /ʃel/ 16
shift work /ʃɪft ˈwɜːk/ 54
ship /ʃip/ 12
shirt /ʃɜːt/ 23
shocked /ʃɔkt/ 69
shocking /ˈʃɔkɪŋ/ 69
shockproof /ˈʃɔkpraʊf/ 73
shoe /ʃu/ 23
shoelace /ʃuˈleɪs/ 72
shoob /ʃuˈb/ 35
shooting /ʃuˈtʃɪŋ/ 46
shoplifter /ˈʃɒplɪftə(r)/ 35
shoplifting /ˈʃɒplɪftɪŋ/ 35
shopping list /ˈʃɒpɪŋ ˈlɪst/ 4
shopping mall /ˈʃɒpɪŋ ˈmɑːl, ˈmæl/ 80
shore /ʃɔː(r)/ 12
short sleeves /ʃɔrt ˈslɪvz/ 23
shoulder /ʃəʊldə(r)/ 5
shout /ʃaʊt/ 34
show as in on show /ʃəʊ/ 43
show your feelings /ʃəʊ jəʊ ˈfɪlməŋz/ 7
shutters /ˈʃʌtəz/ 30
sick pay /sɪk ˈpiː/ 54
side as in left/right-hand side /ˈsaɪd/ 33
side (in a war) /ˈsaɪd/ 39
sidewalk /ˈsaɪdwalk/ 80
 sigh /saɪr/ 34
sight /saɪt/ 37
sign a contract /ˈsaɪn ə kəntrəkt/ 57
significant /ˈsɪgəntɪkənt/ 55
significantly /ˈsɪgəntɪkəntli/ 55
silence /ˈsaɪləns/ 34
silent /ˈsaɪlənt/ 34
silk /sɪlk/ 23
silly /ˈsɪli/ 63
silver /ˈsɪlvə(r)/ 31
similar /ˈsɪmələr/ 60
similarity /ˈsɪmələrɪtɪ/ 60
simple /ˈsɪmpl/ 69
since /sɪns/ 68
sincerely as in yours sincerely /ˈsɪnərəli əs ɪn ˈhjuːz sɪnərəli/ 78
singer as in lead singer /ˈsɪŋə(r)/ 45
single parent /ˈsɪŋgl pərˈeənt/ 9
sink /sɪŋk/ 12
Sir /sə(r)/ 78
skid /skid/ 21, 22
skier /ˈskiə(r)/ 45
skilful /ˈskɪfl/ 58
skill /skil/ 58
skilled /skɪld/ 43, 58
skim /skɪm/ 47
skin /skɪn/ 5
skinned as in dark/light/pale-skinned /ˈskɪnd/ 5
skinny /ˈskɪni/ 5
slang /ˈslæŋ/ 3
slash /slɛʃ/ 4
sleep on v /ˈslɪp/ 19
sleep like a log /ˈslɪp ˌlark əˈlɔːɡ/ 19
sleepy /ˈslɪpi/ 19
sleeve /ˈslɛv/ 23
slender /ˈslɛnə(r)/ 5
slight /slɪt/ 55
slightly /ˈslɪtli/ 55
slim /slɪm/ 5
slip /ˈslɪp/ 23
slipped /ˈslɪpt/ 20
slow down /ˈsləʊ ˈdəʊn/ 21
small letters /ˈsmɔl ˈletəz/ 4
smash /ˈsmɑʃ/ 34
smell /smel/ 32
smooth /smɔːθ/ 5
smoothly as in go smoothly /ˈsmɔːθli/ 65
snack /ˈsnæk/ 17
snake /ˈsnkeɪk/ 15
sneeze /ˈsniz/ 34
snore /ˈsnɔ(r)/ 19
so /soʊ/ 68
so that /ˈsoʊ ˈðət/ 68
soaked /ˈsəʊkət/ 13
soaking wet /ˈsoʊkɪŋ ˈwɛt/ 13
sociable /ˈsəʊʃəbl/ 8
social worker /ˈsəʊʃəl ˈwɜːkə(r)/ 52
soft /sɔft/ 69
solar system /ˈsəʊlər ˈsɪstəm/ 11
soldier /ˈsɔldə(r)/ 39
solid /ˈsəʊld/ 13
solo artist /ˈsəʊlo əˈstɜːtr/ 44
solution /ˈsəʊljuˈʃən/ 53
solve a problem /ˈsəlv ə ˈprɔbləm/ 53
songwriter /ˈsɔŋwraɪtə(r)/ 44
sorry to bother you /ˈsɔrɪ təˈboʊər ju/ 66
sort /sɔrt/ 43
sort of /ˈsɔrt əv/ 77
sort out /ˌsɔrt əˈaut/ 65
sound like /sɔʊnd ˈlaɪk/ 32
space (= area round planets) /ˈspiːs/ 11
space (= area that is empty) /ˈspiːs/ 29
spacious /ˈspeɪʃəs/ 30, 69
specialist /ˈspeɪʃlist/ 25
specialized /ˈspeɪʃlaɪzd/ 2
spectacular /ˈspɛktəkjuːlər/ 48
spectators /ˈspektətəz/ 45
speak as in make a speech
/ˈspiːt/ 10
speed /ˈspɪd/ 79
speed limit /ˈspɪdˌlɪmɪt/ 21
speedometer /ˈspiːdəmətər/ 21
spicy /ˈspɪsi/ 73
spider /ˈspɪdər/ 15
spinach /ˈspɪnətʃ/ 46
spite as in spite of /ˈspɪt/ 68
split up /ˈspɪt ap/ 8
spoil /ˈspɔɪl/ 66
spot /ˈspɒt/ 59
spots /ˈspɒts/ 15
spray /ˈspreɪ/ 34
spread /ˈspred/ 13
square adj. n /ˈskweə(r)/ 31
squeeze /ˈskwiːz/ 34
squid /ˈskwɪd/ 16
stab /ˈstæb/ 35
stability /ˈstæstɪbəlɪtɪ/ 55
stable /ˈstæbl/ 55
stadium /ˈstɛdɪəm/ 45
stain /ˈstɛn/ 26
staircase /ˈstreɪkəs/ 30
stand as in can't stand
/ˈstænd/ 62
stand for
/ˈstænd fa(r)/, fo(r)/ 79
standard /ˈstændəd/ 45
star /ˈstɑː(r)/ 32
starfish /ˈstɑːrfish/ 57
starve /ˈstɑːvr/ 14
starve to death
/stɑːv tə ðeθ/ 14
stay the same
/ˈsteɪ də ˈsem/ 55
steadily /ˈstedɪli/ 55
steady /ˈstɛdi/ 55
steal /ˈstɛl/ 35
steel /ˈstɛl/ 31
sleep /ˈsliːp/ 12
steer /ˈstɪə(r)/ 21
steering wheel
/ˈstɪərɪŋ ˈwɪl/ 21
stepbrother /ˈstepbrəðə(r)/ 9
stepdaughter /ˈstepdɔːtə(r)/ 9
stepfather /ˈstepfaːðə(r)/ 9
stepmother /ˈstepmʌðə(r)/ 9
stepsister /ˈstɛpstaɪðə(r)/ 9
stepson /ˈstɛpsɔn/ 9
stick /ˈstɪk/ 26
stick together
/ˈstɪk təˈgɛðə(r)/ 26
still as in scared stiff /ˈstɪl/ 7
still /ˈstɪl/ 68
still life /ˈstɪl ləf/ 43
sting /ˈstɪŋ/ 15
stink /ˈstɪŋk/ 32
stir /ˈstɜː(r)/ 17
stock /ˈstɒk/ 55
stocky /ˈstɒki/ 5
stone (= seed of a fruit)
/ˈstoʊn/ 16
stone (= building material)
/ˈstoʊn/ 30
stop as in full stop /ˈstop/ 4
stop off /ˈstop ˈɒf/ 22
storage /ˈstɔːrɪdʒ/ 30
store n /ˈstɔːr/ 80
store v /ˈstɔːr/ 30
straight /ˈstreɪt/ 31
straightaway /ˈstreɪtəˈweɪ/ 25
stranger /ˈstreɪndʒə(r)/ 78
strategy /ˈstrætɪˌdʒi/ 58
stream /ˈstrɪm/ 12
strength /ˈstreŋθ/ 58
stress (= emphasis) /ˈstres/ 3
stress (= anxious state)
/ˈstres/ 54
stressful /ˈstresfl/ 54
strict /ˈstrɪkt/ 64
strike /ˈstrɪk/ 14
striking /ˈstrɪkɪŋ/ 48
string /ˈstrɪŋ/ 26
strip /ˈstrɪp/ 15
stroke /ˈstrɔːk/ 37
strongly /ˈstrɒŋli/ 76
struggle n, v /ˈstrægl/ 56
stubble /ˈstʌbl/ 5
stuck /ˈstʌk/ 22
studio /ˈstʌdɪəʊ/ 43
stuff /ˈstʌf/ 77
stupid /ˈstjuːpɪd/ 6
style (in fashion) /ˈstel/ 23
style (= way sth is written or drawn) /ˈstel/ 3, 43
stylish /ˈstɪliʃ/ 23
subject to /ˈsʌbdʒɪkt tə/ 51
substantial /ˈsʌbˈstæntʃəl/ 30
suburb /ˈsʌbɜːb/ 29
subway (= path under a road/railway) /ˈsʌbweɪ/ 29
subway (= underground railway) /ˈsʌbweɪ/ 80
succeed /ˈsuːkəd/ 49
success /ˈsəkəs/ 49
successful /ˈsəkəsfl/ 25
such as /ˈsʌtʃ əz/ 4
sudden /ˈsʌdən/ 14
suddenly /ˈsʌdənli/ 14
suede /ˈswiːd/ 23
suffer from /ˈsʌfər frəm/ 19
suit /ˈsuːt/ 23
suitable /ˈsuːtəbəl/ 42
sun /ˈsʌn/ 11
supplier /ˈsəʊˈplɔːr/ 56
supply n /ˈsəʊˈplɔːr/ 14
supply v /ˈsəʊˈplɔːr/ 56
support n, v (= agreement/agree) /ˈsəpɔːrt/ 63
support v (= help) /ˈsəpɔːrt/ 9
support v (= follow a team) /ˈsəpɔːrt/ 45
supporters /ˈsəpɔːtərz/ 45
supporting role
/ˈsəpɔːrtɪŋ rəʊl/ 42
supportive /ˈsəpɔːrtɪv/ 7
suppose as I suppose so
/ˈsəpɔːz/ 65
supposed as in be supposed to
/ˈsəpɔːzd/ 61
sure as in make sure
/ˈʃʊə(r)/ 53, 66
surface /ˈsɜːfɪs/ 12
surfer /ˈsɜːfə(r)/ 57
surgeon /ˈsɜːdʒən/ 25
surgery /ˈsɜːdʒəri/ 24
surrender /ˈsərəndə(r)/ 39
surrounded by
/ˈsəʊrəndid ˈbau/ 29
surrounding adj
/ˈsəʊrəndɪŋ/ 14
surroundings n
/ˈsəʊrəndɪŋz/ 14
survival /ˈsɜːrvəl/ 15, 56
survive /ˈsɜːrvv/ 15, 56
suspect /ˈsəspekt/ 36
suspicious /ˈsəspjəs/ 69
swallow /ˈswɔːləʊ/ 67
sweat /ˈswɛt/ 42
sweating /ˈswɛtrɪŋ/ 42
sweater /ˈswetə(r)/ 23
sweat /ˈswɛt/ 27
sweetcorn /ˈswiːtkɔrn/ 16
sweets /ˈswɛts/ 80
swimmer /ˈswɪmə(r)/ 45

250 WORD LIST
Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

- International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
- Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain
- English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
- English Centre, Valencia, Spain
- Tti School of English, London, UK
- Bell International, London, UK
- Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd, and the students at International House, Bath, UK
- Małgorzata Salomądy, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk, and Iza Al germissen in Poland

They would also like to thank:

- Theresa Clementson, Sian Morgan, Carol Tabor, and Scott Thornbury for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text.
- The actors Nigel Greaves and Joanna Hall and The Soundhouse Ltd for the listening material.
- Daniel Bleyer (Germany); Blanca Gonzalez (Spain); Atena Juszko (Poland); Iliară Mihăilă (Italy); Claire Ransom (Britain); Sadako Shokatsu (Japan); Maurizio Tinirello (Colombia); and Nina Weirum (Norway) for ABOUT YOU answers.
- Suzanne Williams for picture research.
- Pippa Mayfield for phonetic transcriptions.
Oxford Word Skills
Learn and practise English vocabulary
Intermediate for intermediate and upper-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you’ve learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams

Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.

It’s easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to ‘cover and check’.

Ruth Garrus and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills